

# Astro Gold MacOS 6 User Guide

© 2025 Cosmic Apps Pty Ltd





# Table of Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Screen Areas</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Quick Start</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Astro Gold Menu</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Charts</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Creating, Saving, Opening and Editing charts</b> .....	<b>19</b>
Chart Files and computer Folders .....	37
<b>Working with more than one chart</b> .....	<b>39</b>
<b>Deleting Charts</b> .....	<b>42</b>
<b>Import/Export</b> .....	<b>44</b>
Import from Solar Fire using email .....	47
Transferring charts to/from Solar Fire using iCloud .....	51
Import from Time Cycles Io .....	52
<b>Copying Charts</b> .....	<b>58</b>
<b>Finding Charts</b> .....	<b>61</b>
By only searching for a Name .....	62
Using simple or complex search criteria .....	65
Specifying chart files to search in .....	78
Found Charts - sorting, saving, opening .....	80
<b>Viewing Charts</b> .....	<b>82</b>
<b>Viewing Area</b> .....	<b>89</b>
Wheel .....	90
Grid .....	92
What are Dials? .....	94
Using a Dial .....	109
<b>Chart Explorer</b> .....	<b>111</b>
<b>Clock</b> .....	<b>113</b>
<b>Now</b> .....	<b>116</b>
Stepping through time .....	117
Custom Displayed Points .....	118
<b>Viewing Options (Menu)</b> .....	<b>120</b>
<b>Event Search</b> .....	<b>122</b>
Event Search - Simple .....	123
Event Search - Extended .....	125
<b>Printing</b>	<b>128</b>
Saving PDF files.....	129
Printing a mirror image of a chart or page.....	132
<b>Reports and Special Information</b>	<b>134</b>
Astro Sheets.....	135

Pinned Astro Sheets & Charts .....	152
<b>Listings.....</b>	<b>155</b>
<b>Dynamic Event Information.....</b>	<b>156</b>
Calendar Export .....	162
How to export Dynamic events to a Calendar .....	163
<b>Graphic Ephemeris.....</b>	<b>169</b>
Tutorial .....	177
Eclipses .....	179
<b>Ephemeris Listing.....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>Interpretations.....</b>	<b>186</b>
<b>Astro Locality Maps.....</b>	<b>196</b>
Astro Locality Principles .....	206
Geodectic Equivalents .....	214
<b>Essential Dignities.....</b>	<b>215</b>
<b>Professional Reports.....</b>	<b>217</b>
Predictive Report .....	225
<b>Wheel Editor .....</b>	<b>226</b>
Opening the Wheel Editor.....	226
Opening a Wheel Design.....	227
Wheel Rings and Circles.....	228
Saving, creating New & deleting Wheels.....	236
<b>Preferences .....</b>	<b>237</b>
Home (location).....	237
Displayed Points.....	239
Dwarf Planets .....	245
Aspected Points.....	246
Aspects.....	247
Aspect Set Descriptions .....	251
Wheels.....	253
Terms .....	261
Calculations.....	261
Dynamic Events.....	265
Screen Light / Dark settings.....	274
Information & Support .....	276
<b>Reference Information .....</b>	<b>277</b>
Astro Gold System Files.....	277
Keyboard Shortcuts.....	277
Moving Astro Gold to another Mac.....	278
Technical Details.....	279
Requirements .....	279
Calculation Methods .....	279
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>281</b>

# 1 Introduction

**Astro Gold MacOS is a high quality modern astrology software package for Apple computers.**



Astro Gold is exceptionally easy to use astrology software designed from the ground for up for Apple Macintosh computers. There is a focus on a simple yet intuitive interface providing access to all the basic astrology functionality you would expect from a modern astrology software package. Plus there are additional high-end features that will also suit intermediate and professional astrologers. The result is a reliable and elegant solution for all astrologers. And looking into the future we will continue to add features for the beginner, intermediate and professional astrologer.

Astro Gold uses the Swiss Ephemeris for state of the art precision in astronomical calculations and the very popular ACS Atlas. The chart file format is also fully compatible with our AstroGold program for Apple and Samsung devices, and the Solar Fire and Astro Spark programs for Windows based PCs.

## Getting started

---

Getting started with Astro Gold is very easy, see [Quick Start](#) for how to cast and view a chart in a matter of moments.

## Key Astro Gold features

---

Astro Gold can cast the charts you'll commonly need - you can cast new Mundane and Natal charts. And from those subsidiary charts - any Event (transits), Planet Return or Ingress, Lunar Phase Return (plus mundane lunar phase), Secondary/Tertiary (mean & true)/Minor Progressed, Solar Arc Directed, Composite and Relationship charts, Harmonic & Antiscia charts and Relocated charts.

- You can save charts to file and open charts from file, including instantly re-opening a recently used chart or a chart previously designated as a favorite. Any chart you have created can also subsequently be edited.
- Charts can be displayed in a single Wheel, biWheel, triWheel or quadriWheel - for simultaneously seeing a return, progressions and transits to a natal chart for example, or for seeing the synastry between two natal charts.
- Charts can also be displayed in a Dial for single charts, biDial for two charts, triDial for three charts or a quadriDial for four charts for similar purposes.

- Every chart has an associated grid in which its aspects and declinations are displayed, or for a pair of charts their inter-aspects are displayed. You can switch between the (bi/tri/quadri)Wheel and the Grid with one mouse click. The wheels and grids are crisp with high resolution.
- The Chart Explorer shows a variety of detailed information about any point in a chart that you click on, including transits to it for the current year.

You can view a basic chart listing that shows for each chart point its longitude, declination and house, and you can sort the list using any of these. A chart aspects listing can also be viewed, sortable by chart point or orb. You can also view an Essential Dignities listing sortable by chart point or score.

Dynamic event listings (transits etc) are possible, with many customizable options including which transiting and radix (usually natal) planets to use, which aspects to use and what orb for those aspects to apply if any, planetary stations, house ingresses, sign ingresses, eclipses, and of course the time span. You can generate as many unique Dynamic Listings as you want, for the same and/or different charts, with them all open on the screen at once, or all minimized, or some open and some minimized. This way you can easily compare a great deal of information at a glance.

You can search for a variety of transiting events (aspects/retrograde-direct/sign and house ingresses/zodiac position/returns/new or full moons/solar and lunar eclipses) - either to static (natal, fixed harmonic etc) chart points and cusps, or to other transiting points and cusps.

The Time Graph is a way to view Dynamic transits, progressions, solar arc directions in a different way than a plain tabular listing. It displays the period involved for each dynamic event in a plotted Calendar type of format, visually displaying dynamic events as lines beginning and ending on the relevant calendar dates. This makes it totally easy to see at a glance when any dynamic event (transit etc) starts, peaks and ends. You can also export the generated information to a calendar source or app, or to an iCalendar file.

Astro Sheets combine the above charts and listings into unique pages of information containing a mixture of wheels, tabulations and other informational objects. Look here for specialist information such as planetary nodes, midpoints, fixed stars etc (see Specific Features below).

You can generate a Graphic Ephemeris for a fully visual grasp of transiting planet movement and aspects or transits to a radix (natal or subsidiary) chart, plus Full and New moons, using a range of modulus angles and planet selections.

Create Astro Locality maps to see how moving to other places may influence you.

You can edit and print any chart, and transfer any chart to Astro Gold iOS (for apple devices) or to Solar Fire or Astro Spark on Windows computers.

You can design your own chart wheels in the following ways: types of rings that are in a chart wheel (Cusp Annotation, Zodiac rings, Chart Points, House Cusp Lines, House

Numbering, Aspectarian) and in which order they appear in it; visual appearance of each ring (inner and outer radius of each ring, tick line widths and lengths, positions of items within each ring, various other ring-specific options).

Astro Gold is also very flexible thanks to its highly configurable nature (wheel/sign/point/aspect colors etc).

You can view interpretation reports for natal and progressed charts, transits and the synastry between two people.

Professional reports are optional add-on report types that go beyond the standard interpretations, being generated as graphically illustrated PDF files. These need a license for each report type (which can be easily purchased from within Astro Gold). Once you have a license for a report type you can generate unlimited reports for that report type. Report types include: Birth Chart, Child, Adolescent, The Big Three (Asc, Sun & Moon), Family, Relationship, Predictive, Vocation, Birthday (Solar Return), Lunar Return, My Pet.

## Specific Features

- The entire app background can be set to a light or dark tone; set different colors for the planets and signs and fill each sign's zodiac section with its own color. Tint all wheel rings with a chosen color of various intensity, or let Astro Gold tint rings with a color based on what type of chart is displayed in each ring.
- Many different options for wheel and dial displays - chart point and sign colors; 7 uniWheel, 6 biWheel, 5 triWheel, 5 quadriWheel; 1 uniDial, 2 biDial, 2 triDial and 2 quadriDial styles. Set the degree basis for each dial (22.5, 30, 45, 60, 90, 120, 180 & 360), and the max orb for a dial; proportional houses, aspect lines and glyphs, and shadowed glyphs can be turned on or off.
- Many chart points - 44 standard points available for display. (Save and re-select sets of these standard points to be used in varying contexts (natal/return etc type charts and listings/transit chart and listings/progressed chart and listings/arc directed chart and listings). Planetary stations and retrograde motion symbols displayed in the chart wheels designed to do that.
- Plus a huge number of varying types of "Extra Points" can additionally be displayed in charts as well as the 44 standard points. You can add any midpoint, minor bodies, arabian parts (lots), Fixed Stars, any specified fixed zodiac position and planetary nodes/apsides (geo and helio distances to planets/helio closest and furthest zodiac points for planetary orbits) .
- Aspected chart points - any point (standard or extra) can be switched on or off for receiving aspects. Save and re-select sets of Aspected Points to be the currently active set.

- 26 built in aspects that can be selectively included as you wish within 12 editable Aspect Sets. Within each Aspect Set each individual aspect can have its own unique applying and separating settings for the main two different orb types (aspects involving a luminary, and all other aspects). You can also create your own new Aspect Sets, starting either from a copy of an existing Aspect Set, or from scratch, and specify advanced aspecting options.
- Apply two aspect highlighting options to make visually clear in a chart's central aspect lines how closely aspects are in orb.
- Display the majority of aspect patterns in a chart.
- An extensive range of subsidiary charts can be created for any radix chart(s): transits/progs/directions; planet return or ingress; lunar phase return; composite/relationship chart (Midpoints, Davidson); harmonic or antiscia (fixed, age, contra/antiscia, duads); relocation
- A multi-chart window capability means you can have as many different chart windows open as you want, each with different information e.g. one with a biWheel, another with Midpoint Trees for a different chart altogether, another with a fourth chart's Dynamic listing etc. Each window can also have independent settings (point, aspect etc). These windows stay open across Astro Gold sessions until closed.
- Data for 131 selected asteroids plus minor planets, with glyphs - includes a listing of basic positions in the chart as well as nearest aspects to other points in a chart. Pop-up interpretations available for many.
- Fixed Star listings. Pop-up interpretations available for many.
- Astro Locality Maps, with world and country maps showing on any map - zodiacal (MC/IC/ASC/DESC) and in mundo (Culminate/AntiCulminate/Rise/Setting) lines; planetary directions; the ecliptic, lines showing the sign on the MC and the ASC; the equator and the tropics; geodetic lines (mapping zodiac signs to mundane locations); parans; aspect lines; and the effect on all lines on the displayed map when the map's date/time is automatically stepped through user defined intervals of time. Plus relocation reports can be generated and exported.
- Detailed information on syzgy and eclipses; progressed lunar phases; life time arcs; sun sign wheels; essential dignities; house dignities; planetary sects; horary data; firdaria; profectio; zodiacal releasings; lunar mansions; midpoints and star parans; midpoint lists and trees; asteroid lists and aspects; arabic lots lists, and aspects; fixed star aspects and parans; planetary nodes and apsides, synastry information.
- Many chart calculation options - 10 Zodiac Types; 30 House Systems; Lunar Node type; Part of Fortune type; Lunar Parallax correction; Black Moon type; Angle Progression type; Dignity term and triplicity type; inclusion of Mutual Receptions in dignity scoring; Firdaria type, Composite House angle anchor (1st, 10th or Auto) and Home Location (for transits charts).

- 
- An ephemeris range from 1200 BC to 2400 AD, plus you can lookup 255,000+ locations from around the world including comprehensive world timezone/daylight savings history.

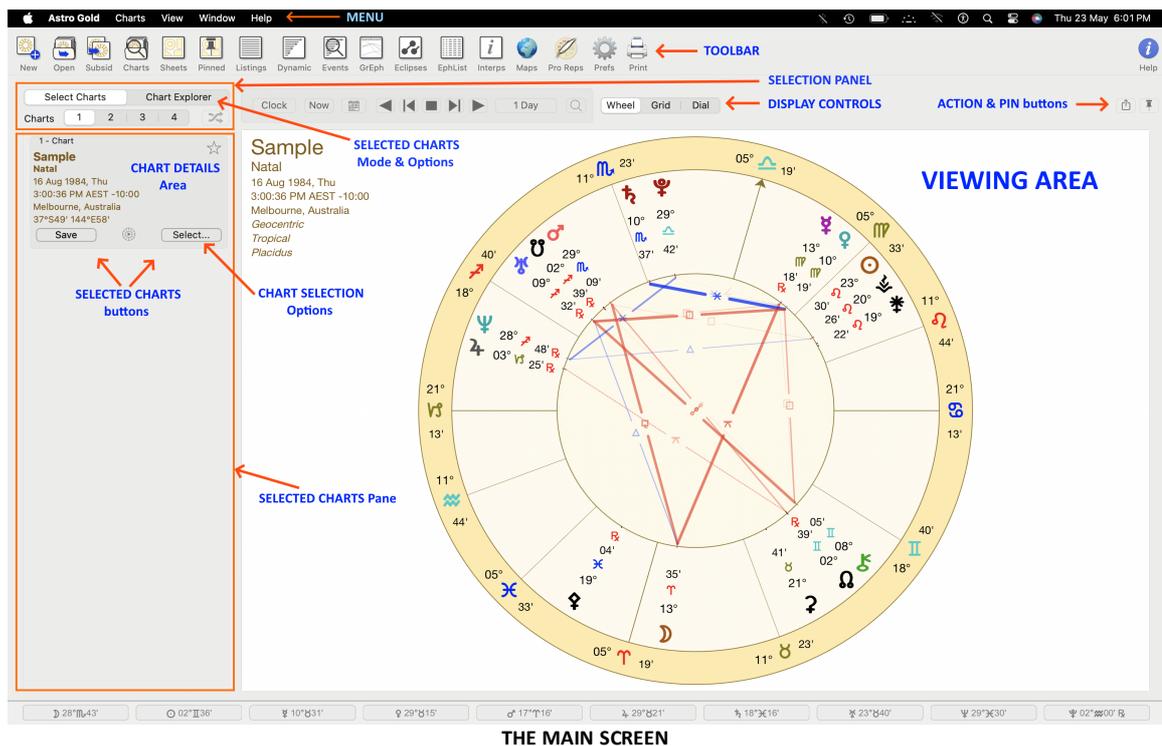
## 2 Screen Areas

When you start AstroGold the Main Screen is displayed. Visible in the Main Screen are the Astro Gold "Menu" and "Toolbar", the "Selection Panel" and "Selected Charts pane" for selecting and manipulating charts, and the "Viewing Area" for displaying either one to four charts in a single Wheel or bi/tri/quadriWheel, or in a single Dial or bi/tri/quadriDial, or in an Aspect Grid.

When you start AstroGold up, or whenever there are no user-selected charts, the current transits will be displayed in a chart wheel in the "Viewing Area".

The "Viewing Area" occupies the bulk of the screen except for a section at the top (the **Display Controls** immediately above it, then the **Toolbar** and **Menu** above that) and the "**Selected Charts**" pane and "**Selection Panel**" to the left.

All these different areas combined represent the entire Main Screen.



### ➤ Altering the size of Astro Gold windows

#### 1. Entering Fullscreen mode:

To put the Astro Gold Main Screen (or any other window) into Fullscreen mode click on the small green **maximize** system button in the top left of the window . This will put the Astro Gold Main Screen into Fullscreen mode, which will also hide the system controls (red, orange and green buttons) and the Astro Gold "Menu".



To temporarily display the "Menu" hover the mouse pointer right up to the top of the screen, so the tip of the pointer is bumping up against the top edge of the screen. This will cause the menu to drop down. Without moving the mouse away from the menu bar select the menu you need, then the menu item on that menu that you want. To hide the "Menu" again move the mouse pointer downwards away from the menu bar or away from the top edge of the screen.



## 2. Exiting Fullscreen mode:

Click on the **Window** menu (do that using the technique described just above), then click on **Exit Full Screen**.

This will shrink the Main Screen (or whatever window you are working with) back to whatever size it was originally. When not maximized in Fullscreen mode (click on the small orange "restore" system button in the top left of the window to come out of Fullscreen mode) you can also alter the size of any Astro Gold window - see below.

## 3. Resizing the Astro Gold window:

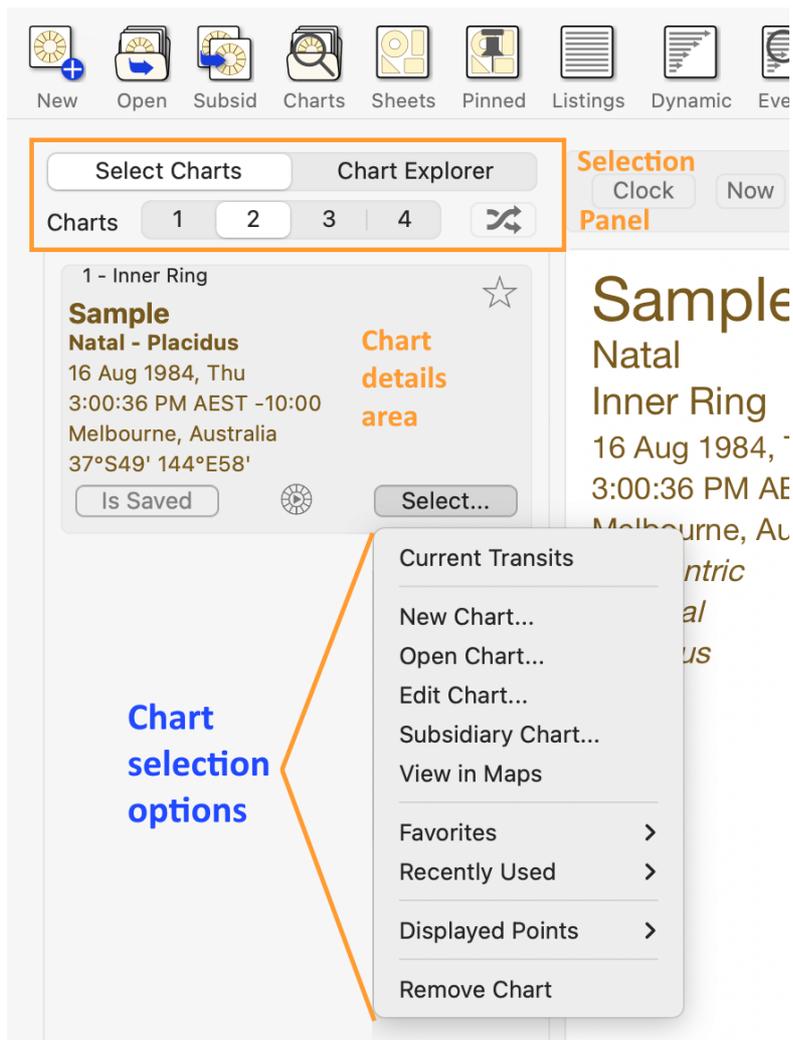
When Astro Gold is not in Fullscreen mode, you can alter the size of its window.

- a) hover the mouse over one edge of the window until the mouse shape changes into an arrow

- b) press the mouse button down, and then while holding it down, drag the window edge inwards or outwards to where you want it to be, then release the mouse button
- c) repeat this for any of the other window edges that you need to change
- d) when not in Fullscreen mode the Astro Gold window will remain this size for the remainder of the session.

### 3 Quick Start

1. Click on the **Charts 1** button in the top of the "Selected Charts" pane.
2. To create a new chart: in the "Selected Charts" pane in the Chart Details area click on the **Select** button . A menu will drop down with Chart Selection options => select **New Chart...**



Creating a new natal chart - step 2

2. In the "New Natal Chart" dialog box give the chart a name and alter the other details if necessary e.g. date, time and place, and chart type. Optionally add some comments. To cast the chart click on the **Calculate** button.

The screenshot shows a 'New Natal Chart' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Name: Sample
- Date: 23 Oct 1974
- Time: 2:54 AM
- Place: Melbourne
- Ctry/State: Australia
- Latitude: 37°S49'
- Longitude: 144°E58'
- Timezone: AEST -10:00
- Type: Unspecified
- Zodiac: Tropical
- Houses: Placidus
- Coords: Geocentric

Buttons include 'Now', 'Cancel', and 'Calculate'. A 'Comments' text area is also present.

Creating a new natal or event chart - step 3

3. A Wheel will be displayed in the "Viewing Area" on the Main Screen. Alternatively you can view the chart in a dial by clicking on the **Dial** button in the Display controls at the top of the "Viewing Area" (above the wheel) - click on the **Wheel** button to see it as a wheel again. Similarly at any point you can also click the **Grid** button to see the chart as an aspect grid.



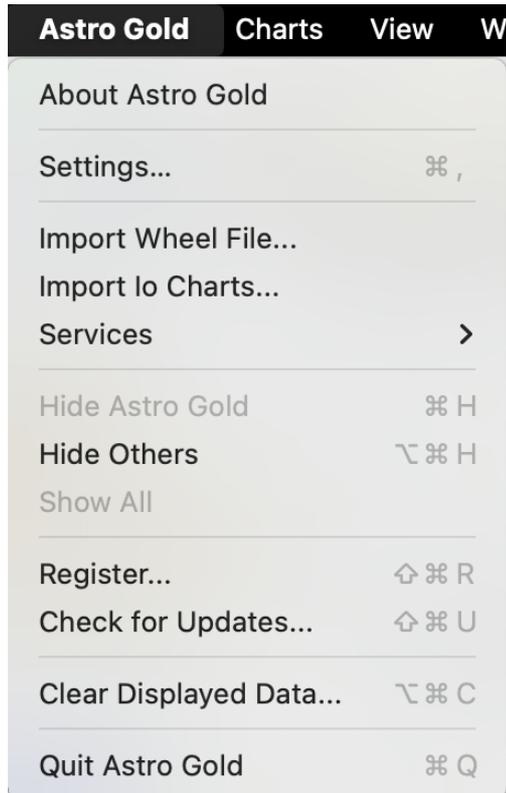
#### NOTES:

- 1) Before going any further you might like to set the "Home Location", as this is used as the default location for all transits charts. See [Home Location](#).
- 2) You can copy *any* screen to the clipboard using **⌘+C**, and then paste that copied image into other applications.

## 4 Astro Gold Menu

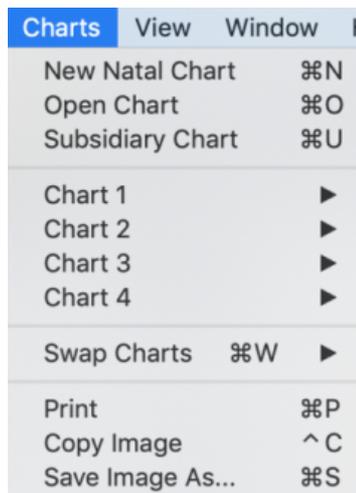
The Astro Gold menu itself gives you access to high level functionality concerning Astro Gold.

- The "About Astro Gold" menu item has details about the current App, Swiss Ephemeris & ACS versions.
- The "Preferences" menu item gives access to all the settings in the program.
- Use "Import Io Charts" if you created charts in Io, which is no longer an actively supported application, and want to use those charts in Astro Gold (see [Import from Time Cycles Io](#) for full instructions).
- "Services" lets you view and change the MacOS System Preferences.
- For screen management the "Hide ..." menu items relate to hiding or making visible the Astro Gold window itself and/or all the other app windows you may have open at any point in time.
- If you have been running a demo version of Astro Gold but now have a license, you can enter the license name and number using the "Register..." menu item, and so unlock the full potential of Astro Gold.
- Use "Check for Updates" to make sure you're running the latest version.
- "Clear Displayed Data" is intended to help you maintain client name and chart confidentiality, by clearing many lists still displaying data from the current and previous sessions.



## 5 Charts

The "Charts" menu is where you can access all basic chart functionality. You can create/open up to four charts to work with at any one time, swapping their display positions in wheels, dials and grids as needed.



You can:

- create new natal and event charts
- save charts
- create subsidiary charts for natal and event charts
- open and edit saved charts
- print charts and reports
- copy chart images for pasting directly into other documents
- save charts as graphic files
- remove a currently selected chart (as long as it isn't the only selected chart)

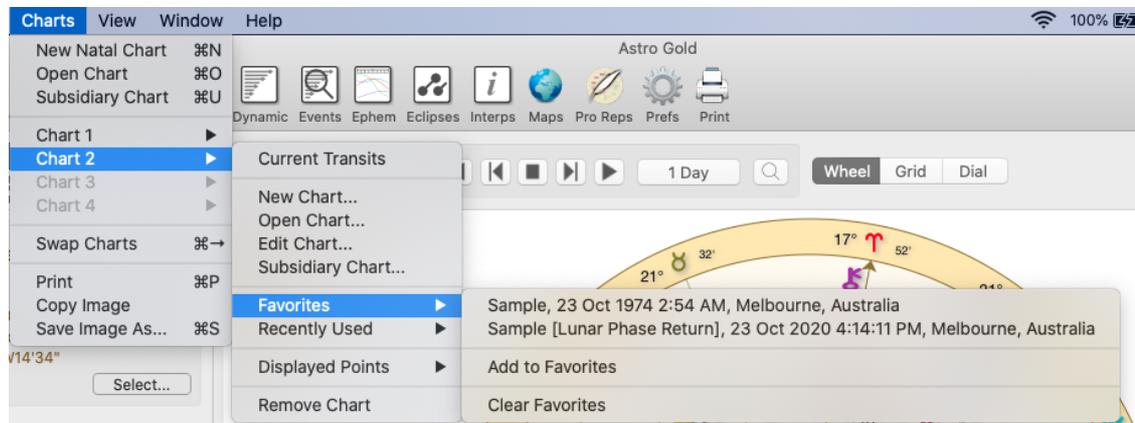
For all the details on creating and using charts see [Creating, Saving, Opening and Editing charts](#).

### Favorite charts

At any time you can designate any chart you've previously saved and are working with to be a *favorite* chart.

Say you regularly like to work with three charts - your natal chart at the center of a triWheel, your current progressed chart in the middle wheel, and the current transits in the outer wheel. After you have created and saved these three charts, you can then designate each to be a 'favorite' chart. Then whenever you start a new Astro Gold session

for each chart position you can quickly go to its "Favorites" menu option and select the relevant chart for that position from the charts listed there.



**NOTE:** This sub-menu for each chart (shown above for Chart 2) is also accessible in the "Selection Charts Pane" via each chart's "Select" button. For details see the next topic [Creating, Saving, Opening and Editing charts](#).

**TIP:** Another way to designate a chart to be a favorite is to click on the star in the chart's details area in the "Selected Charts" pane. After you click on the star it becomes a gold color to show it's selected as a favorite chart. If you click on it again it loses its status as a 'favorite chart'.

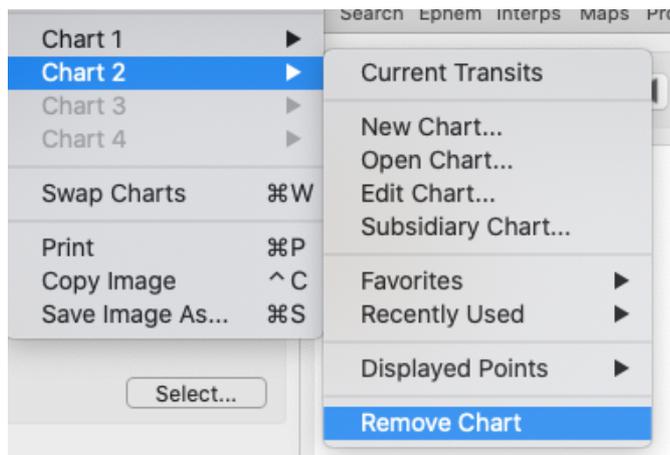


A chart selected as a Favorite (has a gold star)

## Remove chart

If you are working with more than one chart a handy feature is the ability to remove one of the charts from the Selected Charts pane. This is especially so if the chart was in one of the middle rings, as previously the only way to remove it was to move all the charts in more outer rings in a ring, one at a time (by reselecting them all), then reduce the number of selected charts by one.

You can do this from the "Charts" menu by selecting the sub-menu for the chart you want to remove, then selecting the **Remove** option on the sub-menu.



## 5.1 Creating, Saving, Opening and Editing charts

This topic explains how to create, save, open and edit charts. You can do this using the main Charts menu, or directly in the "Selected Charts" pane (see [Screen Areas](#) for more information about the different areas of the screen, such as the "Selected Charts" pane).

Here we will look at how to accomplish these tasks directly in the "Selected Charts" pane, via its chart selection options.

### >> Using the "Selection Panel"

Before you can create, save, open or edit a chart you need to use the "Selection Panel", which is the area at the top of the "Selected Charts" pane (see the graphic below), to set the relevant settings for that pane.

1. Click on the **Select Charts** button to put the "Selected Charts" pane into *Select Charts* mode.
2. Click on the number of charts you want to work with: **1, 2, 3** or **4**.

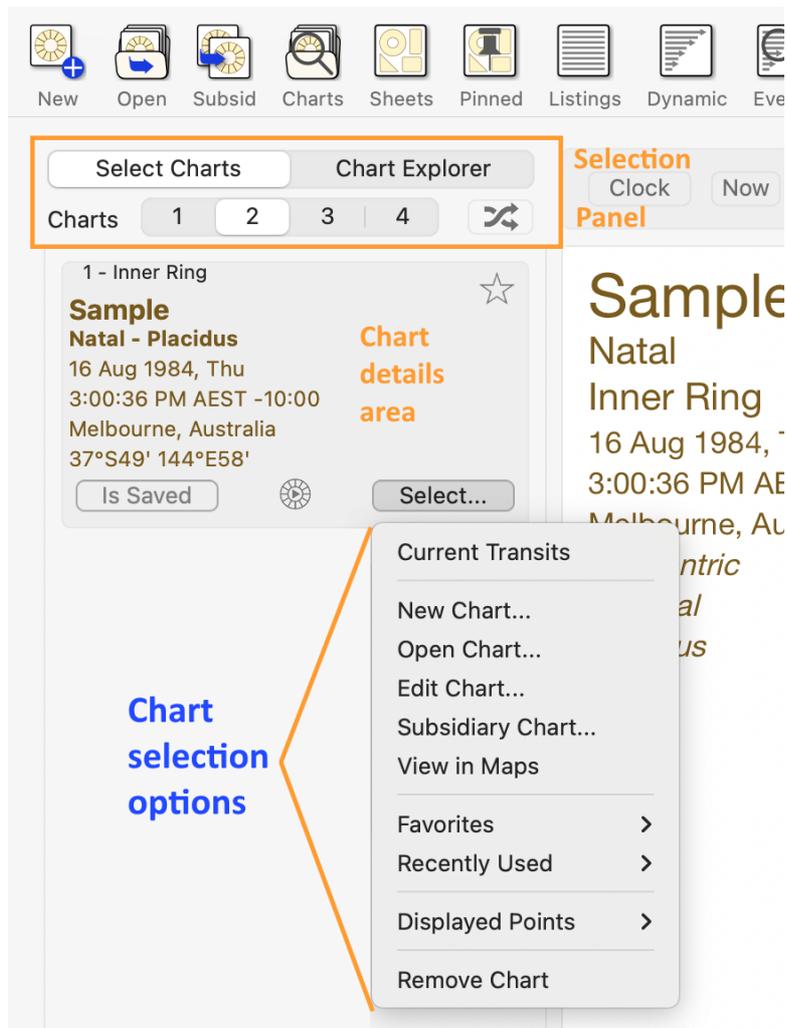
**NOTE:** The same functionality can be accessed on the "View" menu, with the "Selected Chart Count" menu option.

### >> Displaying the Chart Selection options

While you can have up to four charts open simultaneously, the basic process of creating, saving, opening and editing charts is the same no matter how many charts you are working with.

You just click on the "Select" button in the "chart details" area of the particular chart (1, 2, 3 or 4) that you are concerned with, and it opens up a menu that is the same for any of the charts. This menu is shown in the graphic below (in this case for Chart 1).

- Click on the **Select...** button in the chart details area for a chart, and a menu will drop down displaying the options for selecting that particular chart. Once you have selected the chart to be used it will be displayed in the "Viewing Area" of the Main Screen. Alternatively to cancel selecting a chart press the **Escape key** on the keyboard, or click on any **blank space** on the screen.



## >> To create a new natal or event chart

To create a new natal, event or transits chart select either:

- **Current Transits (Here and Now)**

Once the "Select" button in the chart details area has been clicked, clicking on the **Current Transits** item in the dropdown menu creates a chart for the Home Location for the current time. This chart will by default be an "Event" type of chart.

- **New Chart**

Once the "Select" button in the "chart details" area has been clicked, clicking on the **New Chart** item in the dropdown menu opens the "New Natal Chart" dialog.

- 1) Values for the fields are automatically pre-selected so creating a new chart is potentially fast and super easy. The pre-selections are simply the same values used in each field for the last chart that was created. You can overwrite these pre-selected values if you need to - just **type in** something different. You can also give the chart a type – either "Male", "Female", "Event", or "Horary" or just leave it as "Unspecified" (the default).
- 2) See below for more information on entering the chart's details.
- 3) You can freely type in the **Comments** box - and just like in a word processor, press the **Enter** key to create a new line.
- 4) When you've finished entering the details for the new chart, click on the **Calculate** button in the bottom right corner of the dialog, which will close the dialog box and display the chart in the "Viewing Area".

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Chart' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- Name: Sample
- Date: 23 Oct 1974
- Time: 2:54 AM
- Place: Melbourne
- Ctry/State: Australia
- Latitude: 37°S49'
- Longitude: 144°E58'
- Timezone: AEST -10:00
- Type: Male
- Zodiac: Tropical
- Houses: Placidus
- Coords: Geocentric

There is also a 'Comments' text area with the placeholder text "[Optionally enter chart comments here]". The 'Calculate' button is highlighted in the bottom right corner.

Creating a chart

### Date

For the date you may optionally enter "NS" or "OS" as a suffix to the date to force date period recognition. If you don't do this Astro Gold assumes that the dates that you enter...

- on or before 14th October 1582 are in the old style (OS / Julian) calendar.
- on or after 15th October 1582 are in the new style (NS / Gregorian) calendar.

The Gregorian calendar was not adopted everywhere at the same time. Sometimes dates after 15th October 1582 are given in terms of the old style calendar (often

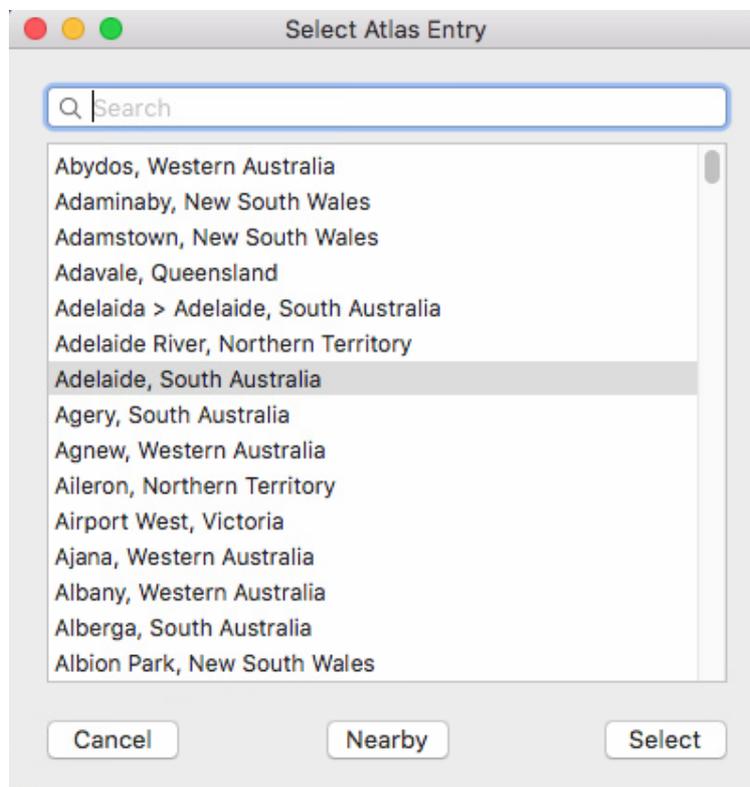
followed by the initials "OS"). Also, some sources convert pre 1582 dates to new style dates (often followed by the initials NS).

### >> To enter calendar dates expressed out of period

- If you wish to enter a date on or after the 15th October 1582 which is expressed as an old style date, then add the suffix "OS" to the entered date (e.g. 17 Dec 1723 OS). This will be autocorrected to display the corresponding date in the new style calendar.
- If you wish to enter a date before the 15th October 1582 which is expressed as a new style date, then add the suffix "NS" to the entered date (e.g. 7 Jan 1503 NS). This will be autocorrected to display the corresponding date in the old style calendar.

### Country & Place

- For "Ctry/State" and "Place" you can also click on the  icon at the right of either field which opens the "**Select Atlas Entry**" dialog box. In this dialog you can select a country/state or place off a list, or alternatively search for what you want, by typing a full or partial country name into the Search field, for example "Aust" would jump to Australia, Austria etc. If the place you are looking for is shown select it then click the **Select** button.

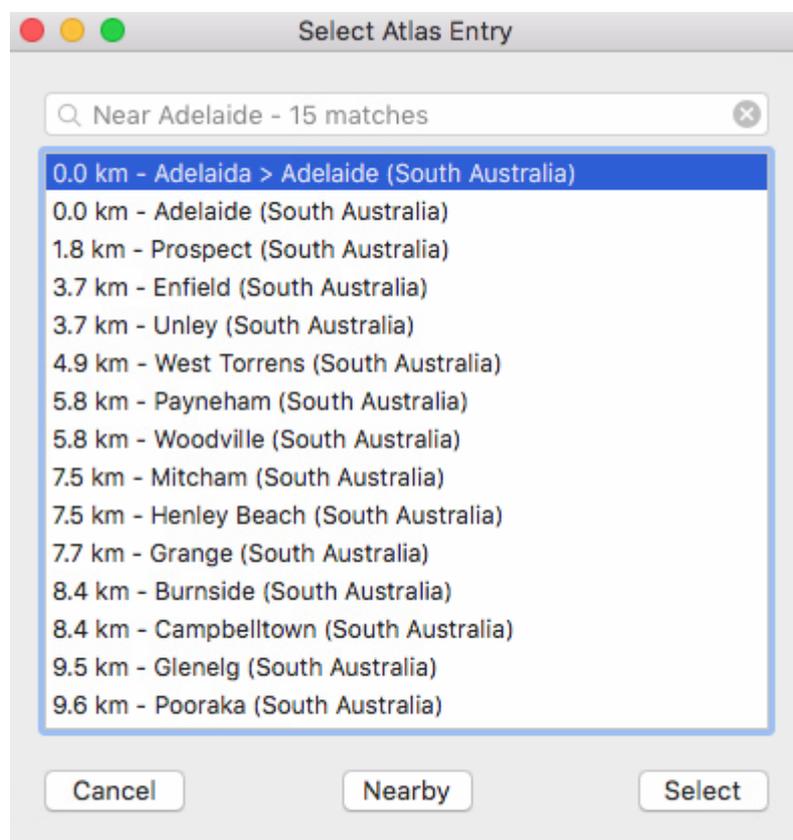


Search for and Select a state or country

Alternatively if you know the place you are looking for is close to another place that is shown (place2) then click on that other place (place2) to highlight it.

Then click on the **Nearby** button to search for places that are in the local vicinity of the place (place2) you have selected in the list. If any are found they will replace the original places in the Select Atlas Entry window.

If the place you are looking for is in this list click on the **Select** button to use it. If not, you can continue this process of drilling down by clicking on a place in this secondary list that is close to the one you want, then clicking on the **Nearby** button again. You can continue to search in this way until no more places are found. Once you eventually find the place you want to use click on the **Select** button.



### *Duplicate Names*

Atlas lookups now detect places with duplicate names and if so then Astro Gold prompts you to choose which one.

### *Using State Abbreviations*

In the Search field, if relevant you can enter a Place followed by a comma then a State abbreviation e.g. "Sydney, NSW". In a country that has states this may be helpful if two places in different states have identical names. However if the state abbreviation entered clashes with any country name or abbreviation in the main atlas, then this will take precedence. So for example, "Adelaide, SA" searches in Saudi Arabia, and

you would have to choose "Adelaide, Australia" to find it in the Australian state of South Australia (SA).

### *Georgia*

GE is Georgia the Country.

GA (or Georgia) is the State in the USA.

### Quick Place Selection

A shortcut method of selecting a place can be accessed by clicking on the **Place** button. When you do this a menu pops up allowing you to:

- Add the current Place to a list of "Favorite" places
- Select a Place off the list of "Favorite" places
- Select a Place off a list of "Recently Used" places
- Select the Home place (set in Preferences, Home tab)

**NOTE:** This shortcut menu is available wherever you need to enter a place, although the button may be named differently. For example in Subsidiary Charts, for Secondary Progressions using the "Other" Location the button is labeled "Select".

### Timezone

When creating or editing a chart usually the timezone is entered automatically for you, based on the country/state and place you've selected, but if you wish you can enter a different timezone in this field.

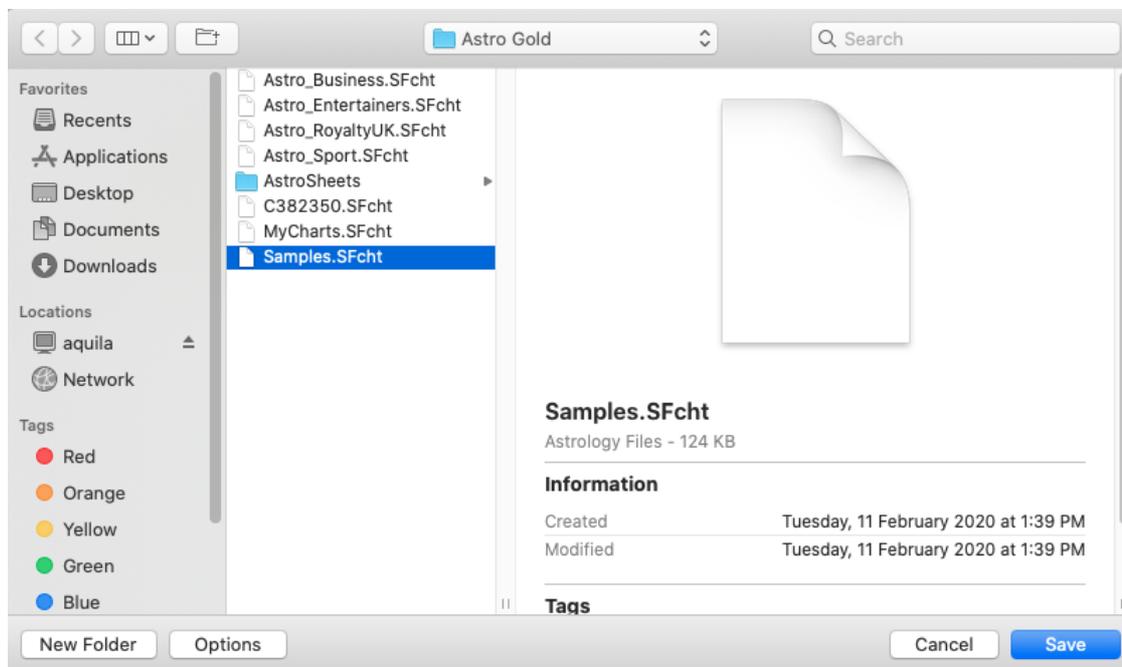
## >> To save a chart

- In the "Selected Charts" pane click on the **Save** button for the chart you want to save - see below.



This will bring up a dialog box where all the available chart files are displayed inside the Astro Gold folder. All chart files end in the file extension .SFcht (see below).

[see [Chart Files and computer Folders](#) for detailed information on what chart files and computer folders are, how they are related, and how they work together]



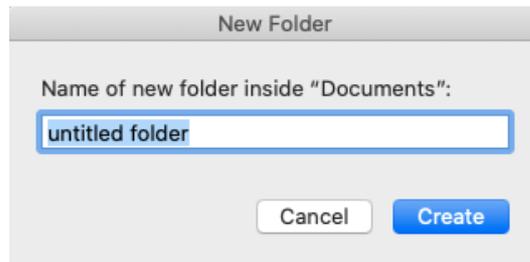
Saving a Chart into a chart file

*Finding (or creating) the folder where the chart file is*

- 1) If the chart file you want to save the chart to, is in the available chart files that are displayed in the dialog above, **go to step 3.**
- 2) If instead you want to save the chart to file in a *different folder* other than the Astro Gold folder, then use the **drop down box** in the middle of the top of the dialog, to select any folder on the hard drive to save the chart to. Any chart files in the newly selected folder will be then be displayed similar to above. You can no **go to step 3.**

-OR-

If you want to create a *new folder* inside the Astro Gold folder, then click on the **New Folder** button in the bottom left of the dialog. Another dialog box will be displayed in which you can type the new folder name. Once you have created the new folder click on the **Save** button again, and the folder will now be listed with the charts (and any other folders) in the main Astro Gold folder.



*Finding (or creating) the chart file to save the chart to*

- 3) Now that you are located in the folder where you want to save your chart either:
  - a) Click on the **chart file** you want to save the chart to, which will select it (the file name will become highlighted).
  - OR-
  - b) Create a new chart file by clicking on the **Options** button in the bottom left corner of the dialog. This will display a button called **Create New Chart File**, which you can click on. Another dialog box will pop-up in which you can enter a name for the new chart file. Clicking on the **Create** button will create a new empty chart file in the currently selected folder. Click on this new **chart file** to select (highlight) it.

## >> To Open a Chart

Once the [Select](#) button in the "Chart Details" area has been clicked to display the [chart selection options](#) click on one of the following:

- **Recently Used**

Clicking on the "Recently Used" item in the dropdown menu opens a sub-menu of the most recently used charts in the current session.

- Click on a **chart** in this list to open it.

- **Favorites**

Clicking on the "Favorites" item in the dropdown menu opens a sub-menu of all the charts you have designated as a 'favorite' chart.

- Click on a **chart** in this list to open it.

- **Open Chart**

Clicking on the "Open Chart" item in the resulting dropdown menu opens the "Saved Charts" dialog box listing all the charts in the current chart file. The name of the current chart file is displayed above the list of charts, and to the right of that the number of charts in the file is shown along with the chart file's description.

The screenshot shows the 'Saved Charts' application interface. On the left, there is a list of charts with columns for Name, Date, and Type. The chart for Queen Victoria is highlighted. On the right, a large circular chart is displayed, titled 'Queen Victoria'. The chart shows various astrological symbols and lines, indicating a complex chart. The chart is set to 'Wheel' view and 'Comments' are visible. The chart details include: Queen Victoria, Female, 24 May 1819, Mon, 4:15 AM LMT +0:00:40, London, UK, Geocentric, Tropical, Equal.

Name	Date	Type
Martin Luther King	15 Jan 1929	Male
Martina Navratilova	18 Oct 1956	Female
Maximilien Robespierre	6 May 1758	Male
Meryl Streep	22 Jun 1949	Female
Michelangelo	6 Mar 1475	Male
Muhammad Ali	17 Jan 1942	Male
Neil Armstrong	5 Aug 1930	Male
Neil Young	12 Nov 1945	Male
Nostradamus	14 Dec 1503	Male
Otto von Bismarck	1 Apr 1815	Male
Pablo Picasso	25 Oct 1881	Male
Paul McCartney	18 Jun 1942	Male
Phil Spector	26 Dec 1939	Male
Pope Francis	17 Dec 1936	Male
Prince William	21 Jun 1982	Male
<b>Queen Victoria</b>	<b>24 May 1819</b>	<b>Female</b>
Richard Branson	18 Jul 1950	Male
Robbie Williams	13 Feb 1974	Male
Roger Federer	8 Aug 1981	Male
Rupert Murdoch	11 Mar 1931	Male
Salvador Dali	11 May 1904	Male
Sigmund Freud	6 May 1856	Male
Steven Spielberg	18 Dec 1946	Male
Stonewall Jackson	20 Jan 1824	Male
Tom Hanks	9 Jul 1956	Male
Venus Williams	17 Jun 1980	Female
Vincent VanGogh	30 Mar 1853	Male
Vivien Leigh	5 Nov 1913	Female
Walt Disney	5 Dec 1901	Male

Creating a subsidiary chart

1. If you want to see what the chart looks like before opening it, make sure the **Wheel** option above the square viewing area is selected (highlighted) by clicking on it.
2. To see the charts in the list as last name followed by the first name click on the **Reverse Names** checkbox until the box is ticked. Alternatively to see the names as first name followed by last name click on it until the checkbox is *unticked*.

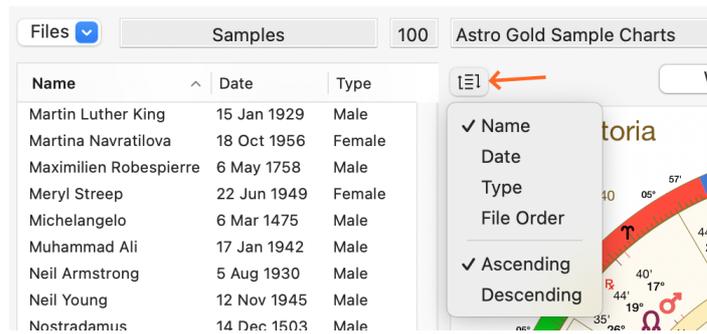
### >> To sort the charts

You can sort the charts in a couple of ways:

- In the "Saved Charts" dialog click on the **Name** or **Date** column header for the list of charts to reverse the current sort order, either from ascending to descending or vice versa.

The caret in the column header indicates which column was last sorted and whether the list is sorted ascending (pointing upwards) or descending (pointing downwards)

- Click on the **Sort** icon to the right hand side of the charts list header, and a menu appears beneath it. Additional options to sort the charts by via this menu are "Type" and "File Order". File Order is the original order the charts were added to the file. Clicking anywhere away from the menu closes it.



### >> To add comments to charts

- Click on the **Comments** button, above the chart. If the chart doesn't have any comments you'll see the faint gray letters [No Comments]. Just start typing over these.
  - If the currently selected chart already has some comments there will be a bullet (in the system accent color, or blue for user on macOS prior to 10.14) on the right hand side of the "Comments" button Comments •.
3. Click on the chart you want which will select it. Alternatively, If the chart you want isn't in the current chart file then you can select another chart file ...
- a) Click on the **File** dropdown File ▾ in the top left of the screen. A menu will drop down and below the menu options a list of all the recently used chart files will be displayed.
  - b) Click on a **filename** in the list in which case that file will be opened and you will be returned to the "Saved Charts" dialog where all the charts in that chart file will be displayed.
- OR
- c) Click on **Open** and the "Open" dialog box will display the other chart files in your Astro Gold folder, or any sub-folders you have created. Click on one to select it then click on the **Open** button and it's charts will be listed in the Saved Charts dialog.
- OR
- d) Click on **New** and the "Create new chart file" dialog box will open so you can create a new file to store charts in. In the "Save As" text field give your new chart file a name e.g. "My Charts". Clicking in the "Tags" field drops down a list where you can select a color to tag your file with. In the "Where" field the "Astro Gold" folder is pre-selected as a default, but you can click on the arrows to the right of it to select a different folder if you wish. Finally click on the **Create** button and the new chart file will be created and you will be returned to the Saved Charts dialog.

4. If the list is very long or you cannot find the chart in the list of charts you can search for the chart - see [Finding Charts](#).
5. To change the chart's description, which is displayed in the text field above the chart, click on the button with 3 dots on it to the right of the description, and then you can edit it.
6. When you have the chart you want to open selected (highlighted) in the list, click on the **Select** button in the bottom right corner of the dialog to open the chart and return to the Main Screen, where it will be displayed in the "Viewing Area".

### >> To Edit a Chart

Once the [Select](#) button in the "Chart Details" area has been clicked to display the [chart selection options](#), clicking on the **Edit Chart** item in the dropdown menu opens the "Edit Chart" dialog box, where you can edit the chart's details. It functions in a very similar way to the "New Chart" dialog described above.

Once you have made your changes click on the **Calculate** button. If the chart had previously been saved you will be asked if you want to update the saved version with the new edits, or create a new chart entirely using the edited data. Finally you will be returned to the Main Screen with the edited or new chart now displayed.

Alternatively, if you decide you don't want to edit the chart after all then click on the **Cancel** button in the bottom left corner of the dialog, which will return you to the Main Screen without saving any changes you had made.

### >> To create a Subsidiary Chart

Once the [Select](#) button in the "Chart Details" area has been clicked to display the [chart selection options](#), clicking on the **Subsidiary Chart** item in the dropdown menu opens the "Subsidiary Chart" dialog box where you can create a new chart that is derived from *any* of the currently selected charts. The selected chart that the subsidiary chart is derived from is called the Base Chart. The *default* Base Chart is always the first natal type chart in the "Selected Charts" pane.

The different methods available for casting subsidiary charts are listed in the dialog box. Click on a method to select it. The new subsidiary chart will be given a chart type reflecting the kind of method used to create it e.g. for a solar return chart the subsidiary chart type will be "Solar Return".

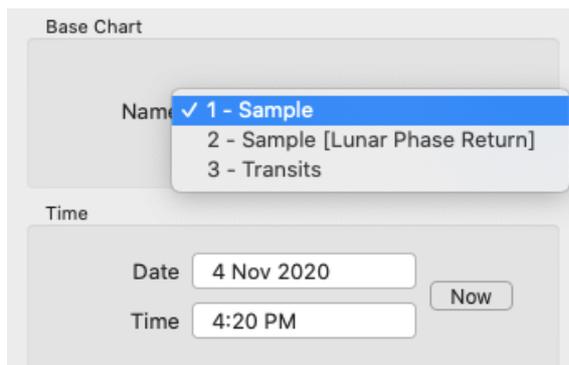
Once you have entered the **Time** and **Location** details click on the **Calculate** button in the bottom right corner of the dialog to cast the subsidiary chart (using default values for any options associated with that method), and you will be returned to the Main Screen with the subsidiary chart displayed. For more detailed information on using each method and selecting its options see the instructions below.

To quit from the "Subsidiary Chart" dialog without creating a chart click on the **Cancel** button in the bottom left corner of the dialog.

**NOTE:** This section describes how to create subsidiary charts manually. Once you are familiar with what how to do this, see [here](#) if you are interested in automating this process.

Creating a subsidiary chart

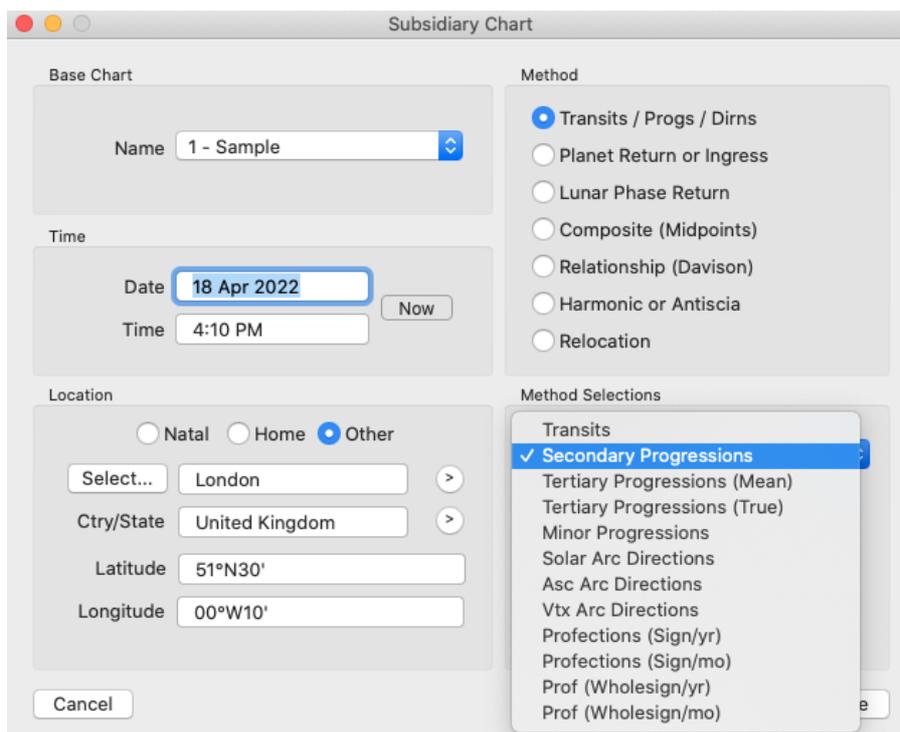
If there is more than one chart selected in the "Selected Charts" pane the Base Chart (from which the subsidiary chart will be derived) can be chosen from any of these selected charts by clicking on the  icon at the end of the Name textbox. However, regardless of which chart is chosen to be the base chart, the newly cast subsidiary chart always replaces the chart in the chart position (1, 2, 3 or 4) for which it was selected.



Selecting a subsidiary base chart

## Transits / Progs / Dirns

1. Select which dynamic method you want to use from the list in "Method Selections".



2. Enter the **Date** and **Time** for the dynamic chart.
3. Select the Location type - Natal, Home or Other.
  - a) If you select **Natal** the natal country and place will be automatically used.
  - b) If you select **Home** the location fields will be automatically filled in with the country and place defined for your [home](#) in "Preferences".
  - c) Otherwise select **Other** and type in the country/state and place and if Astro Gold can find them in the Atlas the latitude and longitude will be

automatically filled in. Alternatively click on the  to the right of these fields and select the country/state and place from the Atlas yourself.

4. Click the **Calculate** button in the bottom right corner of the dialog to cast the transits chart, and then you be returned to the Main Window.

**NOTE:** Many people may be familiar with the use of Progressions and Directions when creating subsidiary charts for a radix chart, but using Profecions may be new to most. See [Astro Sheets](#) to learn more about what profecions are and how they work.

### Planet Return or Ingress

1. Enter the **Date** and **Time** for the planet/point's Return or Ingress. You can click on the **Now** button to automatically update these fields to the current date and time.
2. Select the Location in the same way as for Dynamic Method above.
3. In the "Return Selections" section, from the **Point** list, select a transiting point to calculate as returning
4. For the point chosen above, in the **To Position** list, select the chart position you want to calculate the point's return to:
  - a) Its own natal position
    - or an Ingress (entry) into one of the following signs:
  - b) Aries
  - c) Taurus
  - d) Gemini
  - e) Cancer
1. Relative to the date and time you entered (above), select which Return or Ingress you want to calculate:
  - a) The current return or ingress i.e. the one that has most previously occurred
  - b) The return or ingress that is nearest to the date and time you entered (that will be either the one that has most previously occurred, or the one that will occur next)
  - c) The one that will occur next
6. Once you have completed the above click on the **Calculate** button in the bottom right corner of the dialog to cast the return or ingress chart, and then you be returned to the Main Window.

### Lunar Phase Return

You can use this option to get differing information, either a lunar phase return for the natal or event chart, or general information about the moon, both for any point in time

The lunar phase is the distance in degrees and minutes between the Sun and Moon in the natal or event chart, starting the counting from the position of the Sun. A lunar phase return occurs whenever the Sun and Moon are the same distance apart in the zodiac at any other point in time; this will occur once a month. This subsidiary option searches for this specific phase between the transiting Sun and Moon when it is in the particular relation (current, nearest or next) to the date and time you enter.

The general information you can obtain is when the Sun and Moon are in various other phases (not necessarily the same as the phase in the natal or event chart). For instance you can search for when the Sun and Moon are in a New, 1st Quarter, Full or 3rd Quarter moon phase, or for a phase angle that you specify.

1. Enter the **Date** and **Time** for the Lunar Phase (Return) chart. You can click on the **Now** button to automatically update these fields to the current date and time.
2. Select the **Location** in the same way as for Dynamic Method above.
3. In the "To Phase Angle" dropdown box, select from one of the following:
  - a) Return to Natal
  - b) New Moon
  - c) 1st Q Moon
  - d) Full Moon
  - e) 3rd Q Moon
  - f) Alternatively select [Enter Phase Angle here] and then delete that text entirely and type in the phase angle you are interested in e.g. **34**
4. Once you have completed the above click on the **Calculate** button in the bottom right corner of the dialog to search for the radix lunar phase return, or mundane lunar phase, and be returned to the Main Screen.

## Combined

If you have selected two natal charts then combining them is possible.

Two methods for combining charts are offered: the **Composite** method or the **Relationship** method.

NOTE: All combined charts are sometimes referred to as "composite" charts but as explained above this is simply one of the methods of creating a combined chart.

### Composite (Midpoints)

This method uses the midpoint of the shortest arc joining each chart point, angle and house cusp within the two base charts. This then becomes the position of that point in the new chart.

When calculating any type of combined charts, Astro Gold first determines the composite longitudes, and then determines the composite right ascensions separately. Thus any right ascensions for a composite chart in Astro Gold are true composite right ascensions rather than right ascensions of composite longitudes.

### Relationship (Davison)

This method calculates a new chart as if it was a natal chart for the midpoint in time, latitude and longitude of the two base charts.

1. Select the combining method you want to use (**Composite** or **Relationship**).
2. Select the **Base chart** and the **Additional chart**.
3. Click the **Calculate** button to cast the combined chart and return to the Main Screen with it displayed in the Viewing Area.

(The combined chart will replace the currently selected chart, it doesn't become an additional selected chart.)

### **Harmonic or Antiscia**

1. After having clicked on the "Harmonic or Antiscia" method, decide what type of transformation to perform on the Base chart by making a selection off the **Transform Type** dropdown list.
  - a) Fixed Harmonic
  - b) Age Harmonic
  - c) Age+1 Harmonic
  - d) Antiscia
  - e) Contra-Antiscia
  - f) Duads (Portman)

Duads (or Dwads) take astrological precision to a whole new level by dividing each zodiac sign into 12 mini-sections within each house, each ruled by a different sign. This ancient yet powerful technique offers a finer lens on personality traits, strengths, and challenges—allowing you to uncover hidden nuances and gain deeper astrological insight

- i. This uses the same calculation as the Vedic D12 Dwadashamsha, also sometimes called Dodecatemoria.
  - ii. Duads allows any user-selected equal house system (such as whole sign houses) to be inherited from the base chart. If the base chart does not already use an equal house system, then the standard equal house system is automatically applied instead.
2. If you selected the 'Fixed Harmonic' type of transformation, select the harmonic required off the **Harmonic Number** dropdown list.
  3. Once you have completed the above click on the **Calculate** button in the bottom right corner of the dialog to cast the Harmonic or Antiscia chart, and be returned to the Main Screen.

**NOTE:** Any user-selected equal house system (such as whole sign houses) will be inherited from the base chart. If the base chart does not already use an equal house system, then the standard equal house system is automatically applied instead

## Relocation

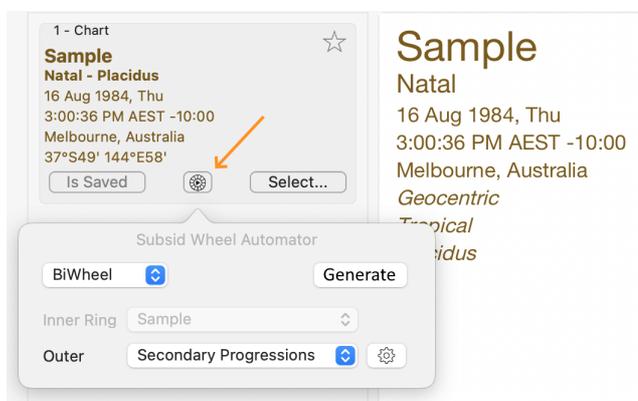
1. If more than one chart has been selected, in the **Name** list choose the chart to be relocated.
2. In the "Location" section, enter the new **location** to relocate the chart to.
3. Click on the **Calculate** button.

## >> Automated Subsidiary Chart creation

It's possible to fully automate the generation of subsidiary charts for a radix (natal or event) chart in the Chart 1 position. Rather than populating Charts 2, and/or 3, and/or 4 with subsidiary charts manually, as described above, you can tell Astro Gold how you would always like it done, then at the click of a button have it automatically done whenever you want.

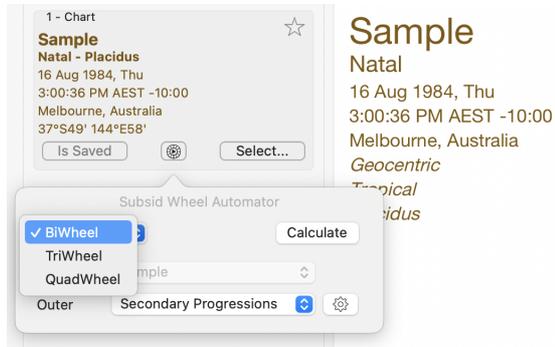
This functionality can only be accessed in the Chart 1 position via the "SubSid Wheel Automator" button, which is between the "Saved" and "Select" buttons in the Chart Details area within the Selected Charts pane, on the Main Screen (see [Screen Areas](#) for more info).

The dialog that drops down the first time you click on the **SubSid Wheel Automator** button is shown below.



- 1) Decide which wheels you want to display subsidiary charts in by selecting an option from the **top left dropdown**.
  - a. To display the radix (natal or event) chart and one subsidiary chart, in the Chart 2 position (i.e. the first two wheels are used) - choose **BiWheel**. This is the default pre-selected option when you first use the Subsid Wheel Automator (as shown in the graphic above).
  - b. To display the radix (natal or event) chart and two subsidiary charts, in the Chart 2 and 3 positions (i.e. the first three wheels are used) - choose **TriWheel**.

- c. To display the radix (natal or event) chart and three subsidiary chart in the Chart 2 , 3 and 4 positions (i.e. the all four wheels are used) - choose **QuadriWheel**.

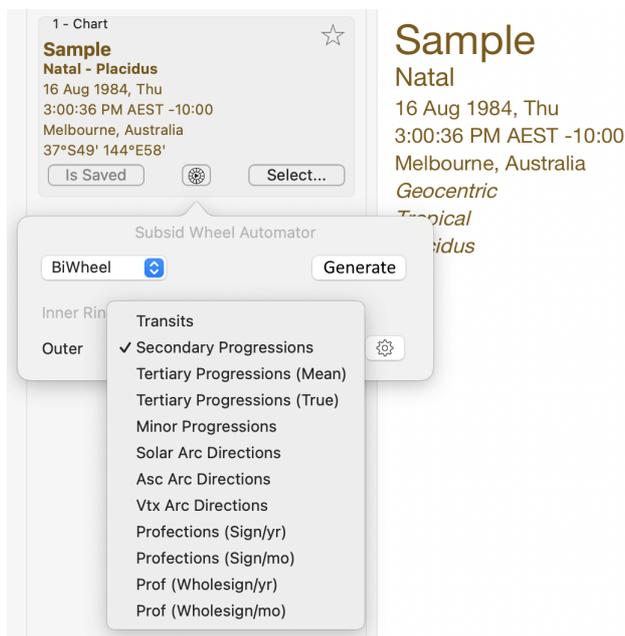


- 2) Once you have chosen BiWheel, TriWheel or QuadriWheel you can select what kind of subsidiary chart you want in each wheel.

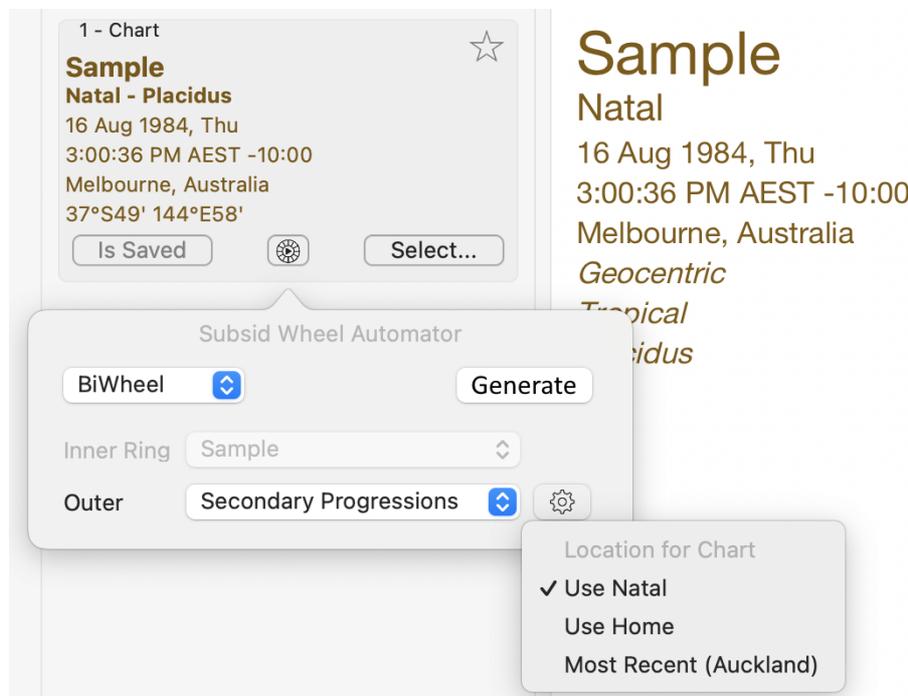
A *Ring* dropdown will be displayed for each wheel that will have a subsidiary chart in it:

- A BiWheel will have an "Outer" dropdown
- A TriWheel will have "Middle" and "Outer" dropdowns
- A QuadriWheel will have "Mid-Inner", "Mid-Outer" and "Outer" dropdowns.

The subsidiary chart options are displayed when you click on any of the *Ring* dropdowns ("Mid-Inner", "Mid-Outer", "Middle" or "Outer"). Select the subsidiary chart type for that ring.



- 3) Then choose the location to base each subsidiary chart on. You can do this using the Gear icon  to the right of each *Ring* dropdown, as shown below:



- 4) Finally, click on the **Generate** button to display the subsidiary chart(s).
- 5) If you don't subsequently want to change the type of chart used or the location option for any of the rings, then you can go straight to the **Generate** button, and click on it to immediately display the current subsidiary charts for whatever natal or event chart is selected in the Chart 1 position.

### 5.1.1 Chart Files and computer Folders

#### Chart Files

A computer chart file is like a document.

Documents consist of one or more pages  just like a MS Word document holds a collection of individual pages.

The pages in a specific document are usually all related in some way, the information on them is all about the same topic e.g travel and camping todo lists; or recipes; or gardening etc.

So we can easily see what type of information is in each of our documents, we give each document a header or title, for example "Travel & Camping", or "Recipes".

\*\*\*

Similarly, an astrology chart is like a single *page* of a document, with each page having the birth details, chart type etc of a single chart written on it.

It is also convenient to store charts (pages) that are all related in some way in the same chart *file* (document). That's simply because it's handy having charts that are all related being stored in the same place. In this sense a chart file is exactly like a document which contains a collection of pages, except a chart file contains a collection of astrology charts.

And just as we give each document a *header* or *title* to describe the information on the pages contained in it, we give the chart file a *name* - to show how the charts contained in it are all related. What do all these charts have in common? For example they might be all charts of our family members, and if so we would give that chart file the file name of "Family".

If we did this the final chart file name would be **Family.SFcht** as every chart file has a .SFcht extension added onto it. This is so we can tell at a glance it's an Astro Gold astrology chart file, and not for example a spreadsheet or word processor file etc. (The "SF" in the extension refers to it being in the "Solar Fire" chart format, and "cht" refers to "chart". By default AstroGold creates and reads Solar Fire type chart files).

## Folders

A computer *folder* is like a manilla folder .

A folder is used to store one or more documents in it. And just like the individual pages of a document are usually all about the same topic, and so are related in that way, it is common for the individual documents a folder contains to also all be related by a common theme - for example all the documents might have information on various insurance company policies.

And so that we can easily see at a glance what information is contained in all the documents in a folder, usually we write a name describing that information on the front of the folder, for example "INSURANCE POLICIES".

\*\*\*

Similarly a *computer folder* (like a manilla folder) stores one or more *files* (like documents) in it.

It is also convenient to store *files* that are all related in some way in the same *computer folder*. That's simply because it's handy having files that are all related being stored in the same place. And likewise, to easily see what kind of files are stored in a *computer folder*, we give the *computer folder* a name e.g. "ASTRO GOLD".

The Astro Gold *computer folder* contains all the user files (including chart files) shipped with the Astro Gold app, and also created by the user.

## Summary

- The "Astro Gold" computer folder contains all the chart files (as well as other kinds of files needed by Astro Gold).
- Each chart file contains one or more related charts.

- 1) When you are saving a *chart*, you will save the chart to a chart *file*, and the chart *file* will be found inside a computer *folder* (initially the "Astro Gold" folder: see below)
- 2) When you are opening a chart, you will find the chart in a chart file, and the chart file itself will be found inside a computer folder (initially the "Astro Gold" folder: see below)

\*\*\*

Interestingly enough, just like if you really needed to, you could stuff one manilla folder inside another manilla folder, each folder having its own documents ... you can also create a computer folder inside another computer folder, ad infinitum.

Computer folders inside other computer folders are called *subfolders*.

\*\*\*

The **Astro Gold** *computer folder* contains all the chart files (at least initially - unless you, the user, create other folders in which to subsequently store chart files).

The "Astro Gold" computer folder itself also contains the following computer *subfolders* - with each subfolder containing a different kind of astrology based *file*:

- the **Interpretations** subfolder: contains the interpretation files used by Astro Gold
- the **Reports** subfolder: contains the Professional reports generated by the user
- the **Wheel Designs** subfolder: contains the different wheel designs created by the user

## 5.2 Working with more than one chart

In order to do anything with charts, or display chart information, you must first decide whether to work with a single chart - or two, three or even four charts together. This decision is initially made for you however, as by default (unless you change it within a session) Astro Gold is always set to work with a single chart. If you want to change this you do that using the "Selection Panel" which is at the top of the the "Selected Charts" pane.

The "Selected Charts" pane is the column on the left of the screen containing the selected charts and their birth/event details - visible when the Selected Charts pane is in *Select Charts* mode. The "Selection Panel", which is on top of that, allows you to select either one, two, three or four charts at a time (see [Screen Areas](#))

Select one chart to view a single chart wheel or aspect grid, two charts to see a biWheel or synastry aspect Grid, three charts to see a triWheel or 2-chart synastry aspect Grid, or four charts to see a quadriWheel or 2-chart synastry aspect Grid.

### >> To select one chart, two charts, three or four charts

When the "Selected Charts" pane is in Select Charts mode, you can select chart(s) for displaying in the "Viewing Area" of the Main Screen.

1. Make sure "Selected Charts" pane is in *Select Charts* mode, which is the default mode (see [Using the Selection Panel](#)).
2. Click the **Charts 1** button to select one chart, the **Charts 2** button to select two charts, the **Charts 3** button to select three charts or the **Charts 4** button to select four charts.

Each chart you select will have its name and birth/event data displayed in the pane. At the top is the chart name in large characters, and under that in smaller characters is the chart type ("Male", "Female", "Event", "Horary", "Sec Prog", "Directed - Solar Arc", "Point Return", "Lunar Phase Return", "Composite", "Davison", "Harmonic" or "Unspecified"), followed by the remaining birth/event details.

If you have selected two charts the first chart you selected is called the "Inner Ring" chart and its details come first, at the top of the "Selected Charts" pane. It will be in the inside ring of a bi, tri or quadriWheel, and will be the "Across" chart (at the top) of a Grid. The second chart's details are underneath those of the first chart in the "Selected Charts" pane. When a biWheel is displayed it is called the "Outer Ring". If a Grid is being displayed it is the "Down" chart (on the left side) of a Grid.

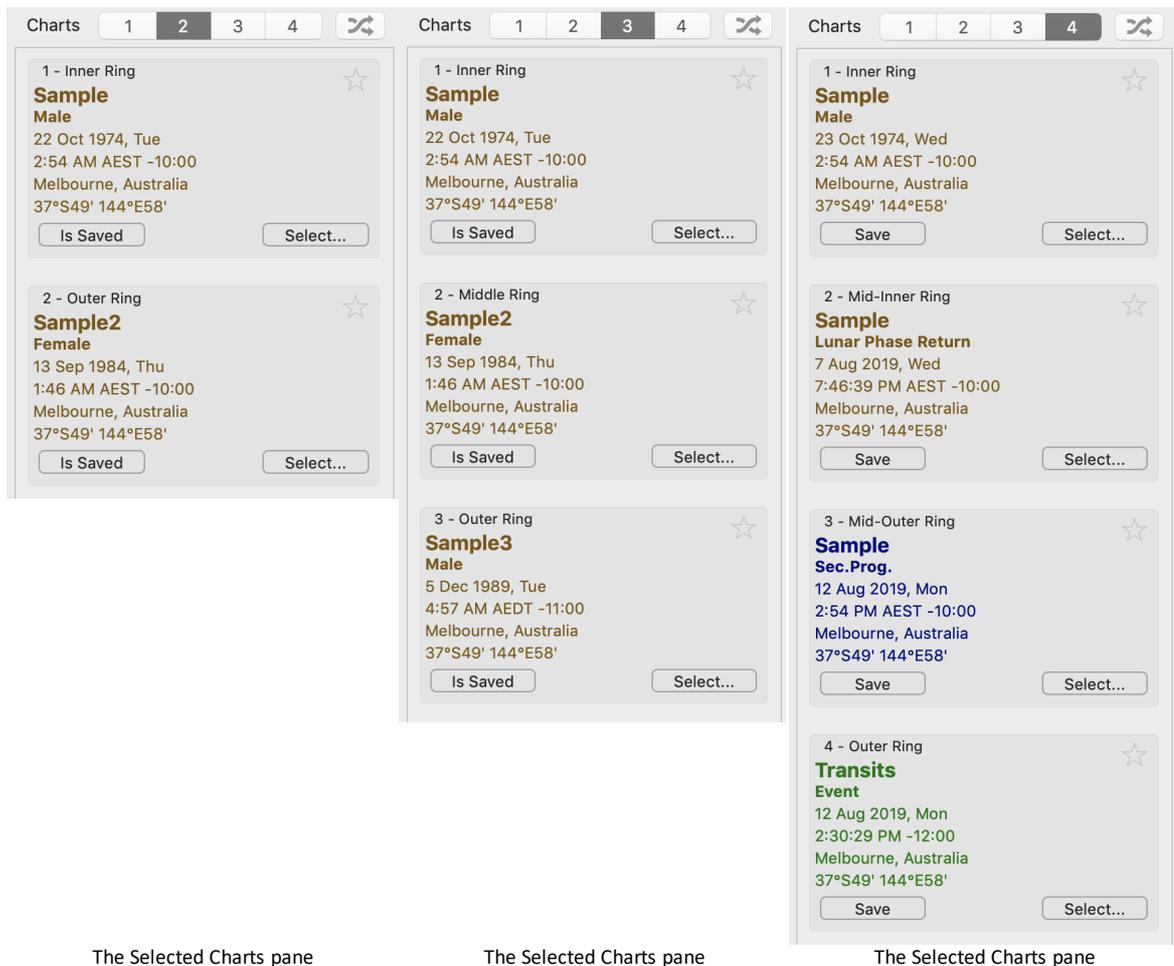
If you selected three charts the second chart's details are underneath those of the first chart in the "Selected Charts" pane. When a triWheel is being displayed it is called the "Middle Ring", as it will be in the middle ring of a triWheel. If a Grid is being displayed its title in the "Selected Charts" pane becomes "Not in Grid" as it is not displayed in the Grid.

The third chart's details are underneath those of the second chart in the "Selected Charts" pane. When a triWheel is being displayed it will be in the outside ring and called the "Outer Ring", and is the "Down" chart (on the left side) of a Grid.

If you selected four charts the second chart's details are underneath those of the first chart in the "Selected Charts" pane. When a quadriWheel is being displayed it is called the "Mid-Inner Ring", as it will be the first of the *middle* charts in a quadriWheel - the middle chart closest to the first inner chart. If a Grid is being displayed its title in the "Selected Charts" pane becomes "Not in Grid" as it is not displayed in the Grid.

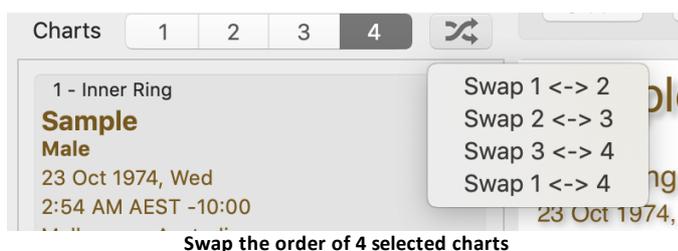
The third chart's details are underneath those of the second chart in the "Selected Charts" pane. When a quadriWheel is being displayed it is called the "Mid-Outer Ring", as it is the *middle* chart closest to the last outer chart. If a Grid is being displayed its title in the "Selected Charts" pane becomes "Not in Grid" as it is not displayed in the Grid.

The fourth chart's details are underneath those of the third chart in the "Selected Charts" pane. When a quadriWheel is being displayed it will be in the outside ring and called the "Outer Ring", and is the "Down" chart (on the left side) of a grid.



## >> To swap the position of each chart

- If you have *two* charts selected, click the **Swap** icon  in the "Selection Panel" to make the charts change places.
- If you have have *three* or *four* charts selected, click the **Swap** icon  in the "Selection Panel" and select how you want the charts to change places.



- Alternatively, if you have more than one chart selected you can drag any chart to a different position. Just hover the mouse over the chart details in the "Selected Charts" pane, click on the mouse button and while holding the mouse button down

drag the chart up or down into its new position, then release the mouse button. The chart you have dragged will then displace the chart that was previously in that position - which will move to a different position in the pane.

### >> To remove a chart

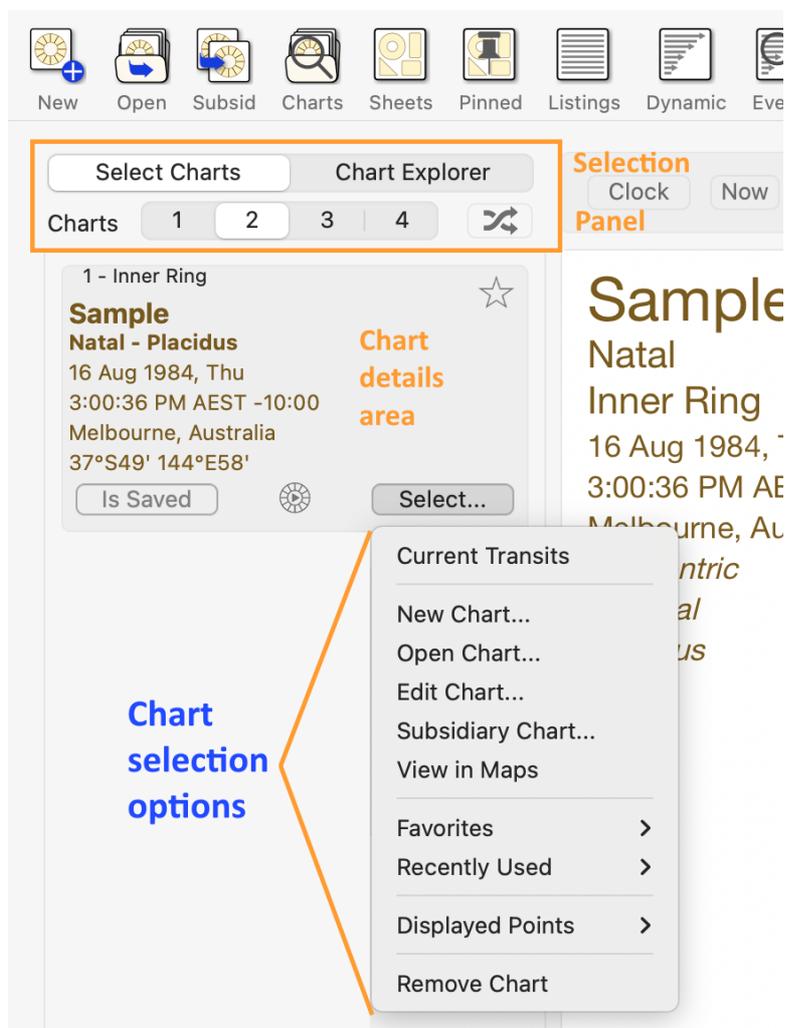
See [Quickly removing a selected chart](#).

## 5.3 Deleting Charts

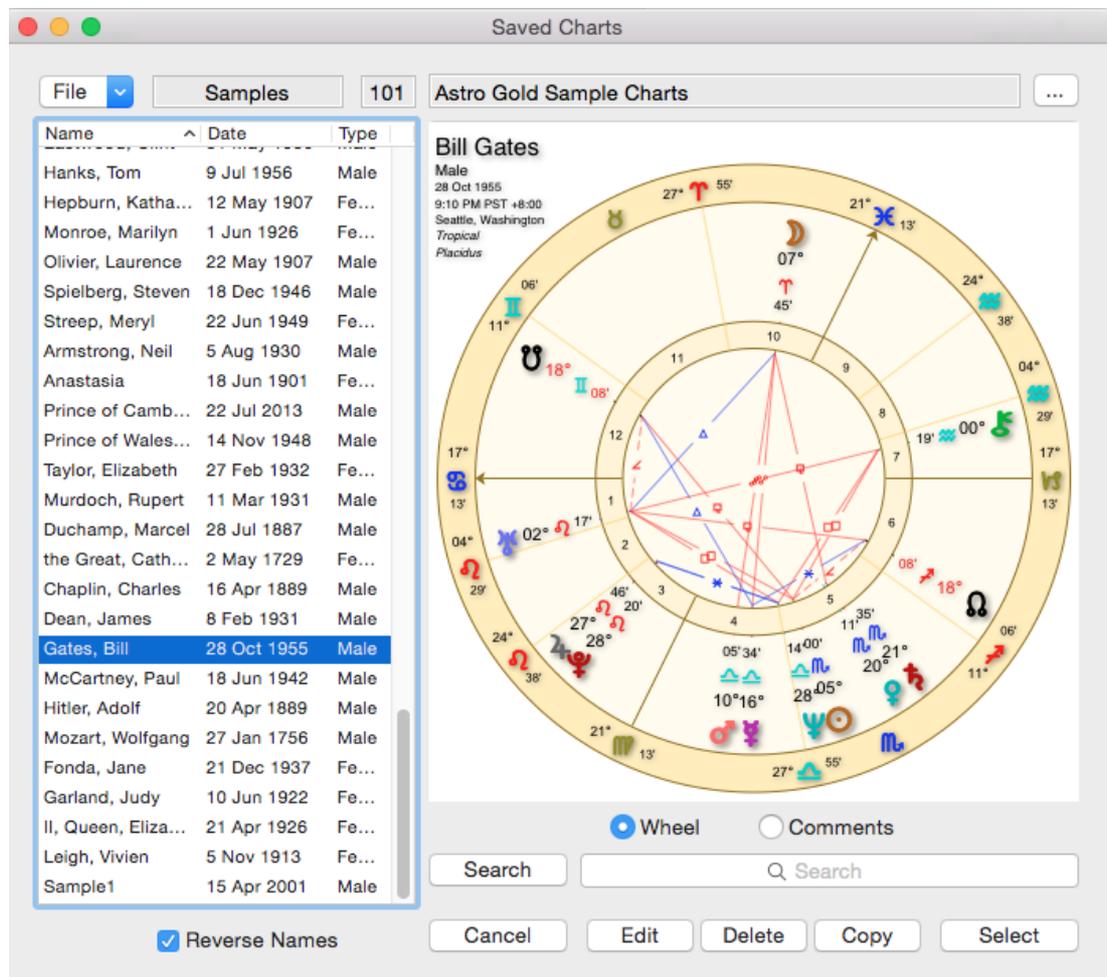
This topic explains how to delete individual charts from within a chart file.

### >> To delete a chart that has been saved in a file

1. First you must open the "Saved Charts" dialog.
  - In the "Selected Charts" pane click on the **Select** button of the particular chart that you want to delete, and a menu will drop down displaying the chart selection options for that chart position.

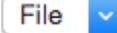


- Click on **Open Chart** to open the "Saved Charts" dialog.



Open Chart dialog

2. Make sure the chart file which is displayed has the charts you want to delete. If the chart(s) you want to delete aren't in the current chart file then you can select another chart file ...

- a) Click on the **File** dropdown  in the top left of the screen. A list of all the recently used chart files will be displayed, plus an option to select a file from any undisplayed chart files if necessary.
- b) Click on a **filename** in the list in which case you will be returned to the "Saved Charts" dialog

OR

- c) Click on **Select** and the "Open" dialog box will display any other chart files available in your Astro Gold folder, or any sub-folders you have created under that. Click on a chart file to select it then click on the **Open** button and it's charts will be listed in the "Saved Charts" dialog.

3. Once you have the chart file containing the charts you want to delete opened, select (highlight by clicking on) the chart(s) you want to delete.
4. Click on the **Delete** button.
5. Click on the **Cancel** button to exit from the "Saved Charts" dialog box and return to the Main Screen.

## 5.4 Import/Export

### Importing charts

You can import charts by directly copying them from a USB stick, or across a network (e.g. your wireless router network) using the MacOS Finder application.

Astro Gold for Mac OS keeps its chart files in the "Documents/Astro Gold" folder, by default. You can use "Finder" to manually copy/move any external chart file (\*.SFcht, \*.dat etc) into this folder if you wish. Charts can be imported for example from Solar Fire, Astro Spark or from the Astro Gold iOS file sharing folder in iTunes. You can also import Time Cycles Io software chart files.

[Import from Solar Fire](#)

[Import from Time Cycles Io](#)

### Exporting charts

1. You can export whole chart files by using Finder to manually copy the chart files from Astro Gold's chart folder (which by default is "Documents/Astro Gold") to your desired destination folder.
2. In Astro Gold's "Saved Charts" dialog (used when [opening or saving charts](#)) you can select *individual charts* to export, and then create or select the destination chart file into which you wish to export (copy) them. Once the charts are selected you do this by then navigating to any folder of your choice (using the **File** dropdown  in the top left of the screen) and accessing (or creating a new) chart file directly in any other folder.  
Then click on the **Copy** button to copy them into the other chart file. For example the other chart file may be one already in your Astro Gold iOS folder. See [Copying Charts](#) for full details
3. You can also attach any chart file to an email to send to someone else in the normal manner.

### Using iCloud

The iCloud Drive is a service for storing files in the cloud, or on the internet in other words. It is a service provided by Apple that you have to sign up for, and when you do you get 5GB of free storage of your computer files on your iOS or MacOS devices (iPhone, iPad, Mac computer etc).

Astro Gold for Mac OS is also able to (optionally) store its charts on the internet in the "iCloud Drive". When you do this all your Apple devices can access the same chart files, which are automatically kept in synch, and remain there even if you delete Astro Gold off your computer or another device.

- You must have iCloud enabled for the device(s) on which you want to use this feature, following each app's prompts to switch to "iCloud Drive". In particular note that you must sign on to the "iCloud Drive" with the identical Apple ID on each device you want to use this feature.
- The first device on which you enable this feature will be the one whose chart files are moved onto iCloud. When you enable this feature on any other devices later on, they will lose access to their own local chart files, and instead link to the chart files moved across to the cloud from the first device that was enabled to store its files on "iCloud Drive".

**IMPORTANT:** After setting up "iCloud Drive" on the first device, before you enable/activate the "iCloud Drive" on a second or subsequent devices, it is a good idea that you check these subsequent devices for any charts that only exist on these devices.

If you have such charts, and want to keep them, first export those charts to the first device (for example, send them as an attachment to an email), and then open them in Astro Gold on the first device. This will then automatically put those charts on the "iCloud Drive", and so you will not lose them when enabling iCloud on these subsequent devices.

## << To set up iCloud Drive to store your charts on it

The first step is to make sure that you have the "iCloud Drive" turned on:

1. Close Astro Gold
2. Click on the Apple menu icon in the upper left corner of your Mac.
3. Click on System Preferences.
4. Click on **iCloud**.
5. Tick the box for "iCloud Drive" to enable it.
6. Once you have enabled it, you can check to make sure it shows up under Favorites.

Now you are ready to tell Astro Gold to use the "iCloud Drive":

1. Open Astro Gold (and it should automatically communicate with the "iCloud Drive").
2. Start off by selecting a chart, by opening one in the normal way (see [Opening charts](#)).
3. As you do, in the "Saved Charts" dialog click on the **File** button. In the window that opens, on the left hand pane in the iCloud section you will see your "iCloud Drive".
4. Click on **it** and in the pane on the right you will see the Astro Gold folder.

5. Click on the **Astro Gold folder**, and your chart files will be displayed on the pane to the right of that.
6. You can then select a chart file and click on the **Open** button.

### << How many charts can be stored on the iCloud Drive?

You can store up to 5GB of data for free on your iCloud Drive. This includes all of your files, not just Astro Gold files.

You may need to pay for extra storage. However each Astro Gold chart takes up only about 200 bytes of storage, so even a chart file with 1000 charts would only take about 0.2MB of storage. Hence in practical terms any extra storage space requirement is much more likely to be prompted by your other file types.

### General information about the iCloud storage service

Any file you put in the iCloud Drive stays in there until you delete it from the iCloud drive.

Apple has hundreds of computers (called "servers") on the internet, all interconnected, which is what makes up the iCloud storage system, and your files are stored on some of those computers.

Your files are not just stored on one computer though - at any one time there will be several copies of your files stored on different computers. Therefore if one computer goes down for some reason, your files aren't lost because there will be copies of them on at least one other computer.

See above for setting up iCloud on your MacOS computer, or see here for setting it up on other devices: [Set up iCloud on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch - Apple Support](#)

Once you have done this you will have an "iCloud Drive" folder on your computer or device that you can store files in. This folder and its files will be replicated (mirrored) on any other devices where you have set-up iCloud, and also in your iCloud account on the internet.

To access your iCloud Drive on your computer/device you can just go to it directly the same way you access any of your folders and files on your computer or that device. For example on Mac computers (they have the MacOS operating system) you can use the "Finder" app to find your folders and files, and in Finder you can clearly see your **iCloud Drive** listed in the left-hand pane. Just **double-click** on it to open it.

\*\*\*\*

To see your iCloud Drive on the internet though, you will need to use a browser (on a Mac computer use the Safari app), and then type in [www.icloud.com](http://www.icloud.com) and press the **Enter** key. You will then have to log in with your Apple ID, and enter your Apple ID password.

Once you are in there you will see several icons, and one of them says **iCloud Drive**. **Double-click on it** to open it, and you will see perhaps several things, but there will be one or more folders called "Astro Gold". If there is only one, double-click on that to see your chart files. If there are more than one Astro Gold folder you may have chart files in more than one.

In any event, if you see your chart files in there, they are safe, no matter what.

### 5.4.1 Import from Solar Fire using email

#### >> To import a chart file from Solar Fire

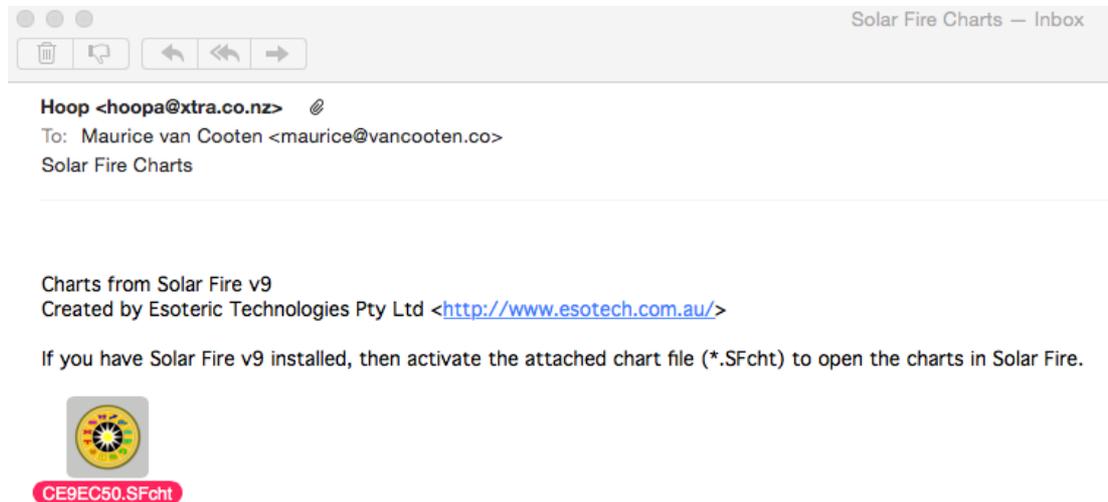
##### First, email the chart file from Solar Fire

1. On the PC computer where Solar Fire is installed open the chart database by navigating back to the Main Screen (if you're not already at it), then press the F3 key on the keyboard to open the Chart Database.
2. If the charts that are displayed in the Chart Database are not from the chart file you want to email, then select the correct chart file...
  - a) Click on the **File** button in the top left corner of the Chart Database dialog box
  - b) Click on the **chart file** you want to email
  - c) Click on the **Select** button which will load the chart file and display all of it's charts in the Chart Database window
3. If you only want some of the charts that are displayed then hold the **Control** key down while you click on the charts you want, which will select them. (To un-select a chart just click on it again).
4. Click on the **Send/Add** button and a small menu pops up.
5. To email all the charts in the chart file click on **Email All Charts** *-otherwise-* to only email the charts you have selected click on **Email "Selected Charts" Only**.
6. In the "Email Charts" dialog box that opens, make sure **Attach chart file to email** is ticked by clicking on it till it is
7. In "Chart File Format" area select **Solar Fire v6 or higher** by clicking on it.
8. Optionally select **Include Chart Comments** by clicking on it until it is ticked, or to not include them, until it is un-ticked.
9. Optionally select **Include Chart Comments** by clicking on it until it is ticked, or to not include them, until it is un-ticked.
10. Click on **Write chart details as text in body of email** until it is un-ticked.
11. Click on the **OK** button
12. A new email will be created and open with the chart file already attached to it.
13. There will be some text in the body which you can leave as is, modify or delete, Add any other text you would like to the email.
14. Leave the subject "Solar Fire Charts" as is, modify or replace it with something else.

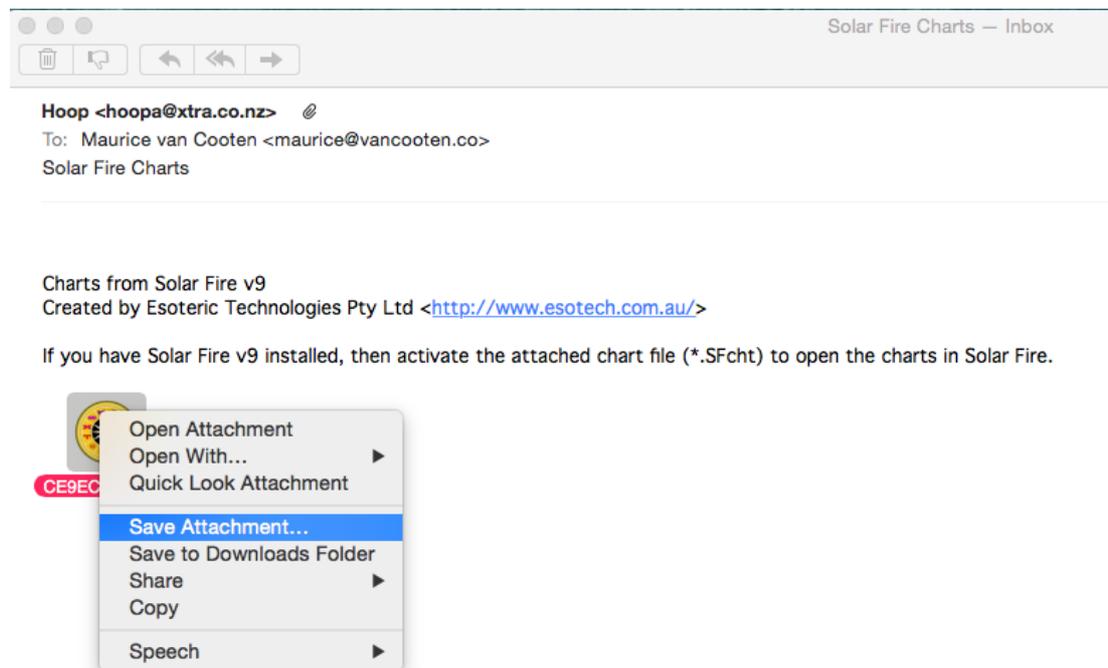
15. Enter one or more recipients and then **Send** the email.

### Next, on the Mac computer ...

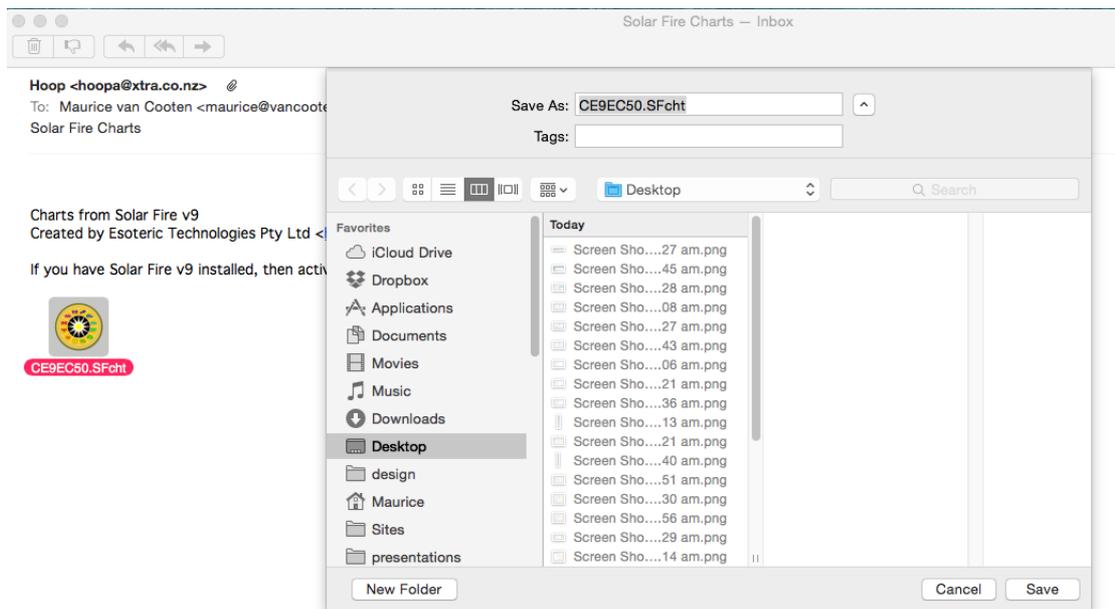
1. Open the email containing the Solar Fire chart file attachment.



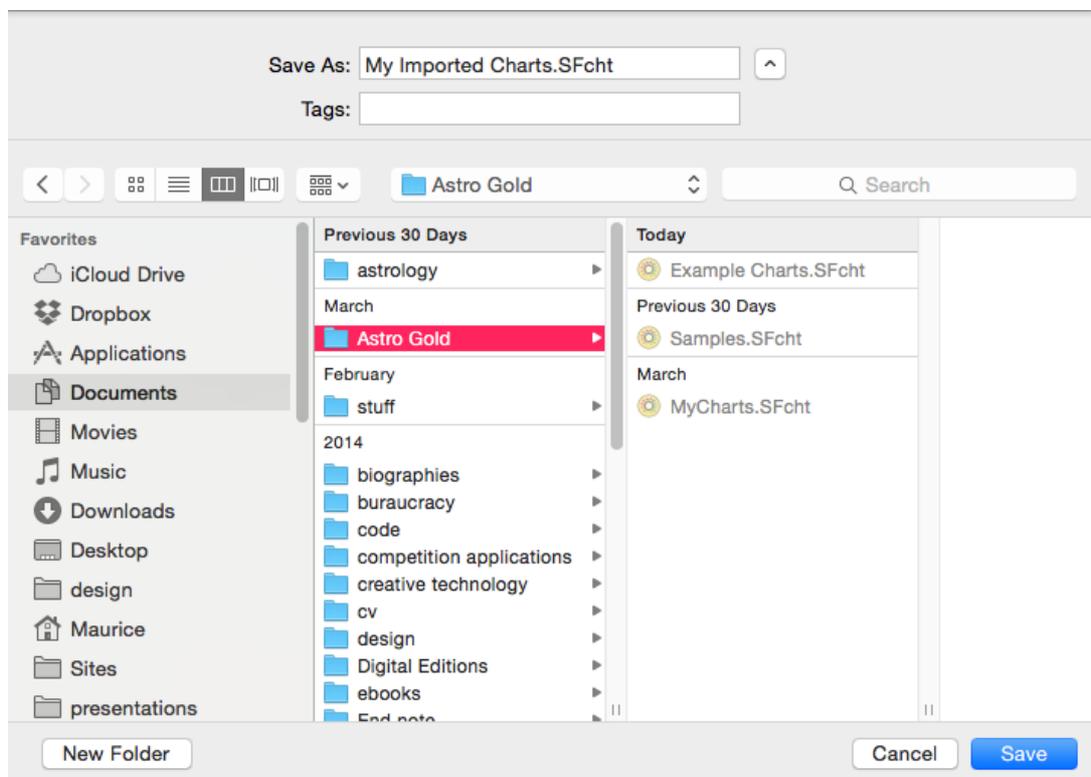
2. Click on the paper-clip icon at the end of the top line in the email. If a floating toolbar pops up click on the paper-clip icon in that. In the menu that pops up click on **Save Attachment**.



3. The "Save As" dialog box will be displayed ...

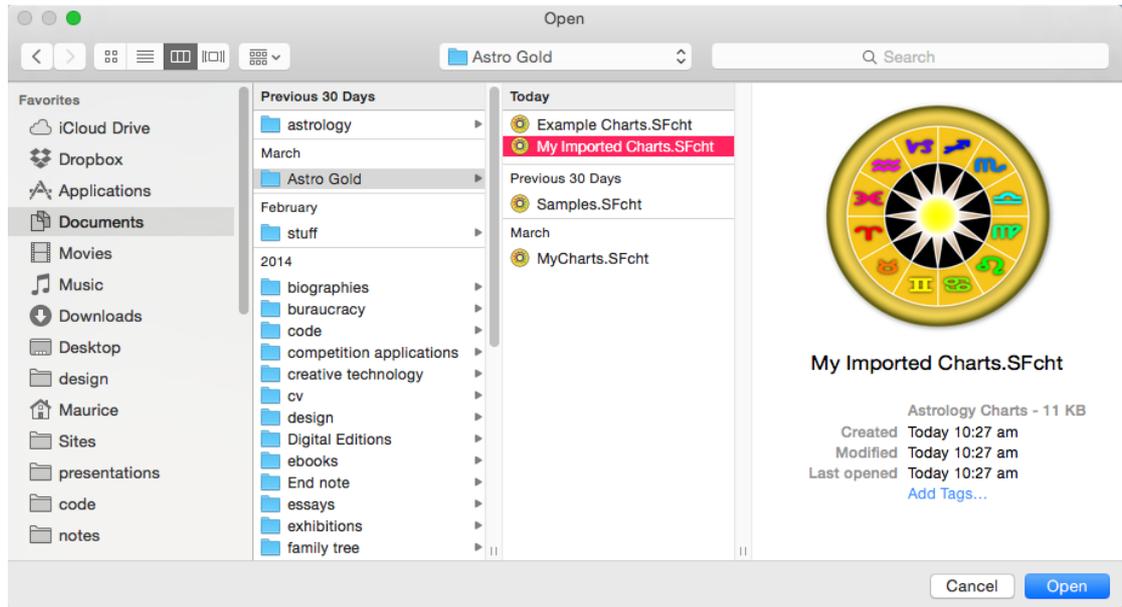


4. Navigate to the **Astro Gold** folder under Documents, and click on the **Save** button.

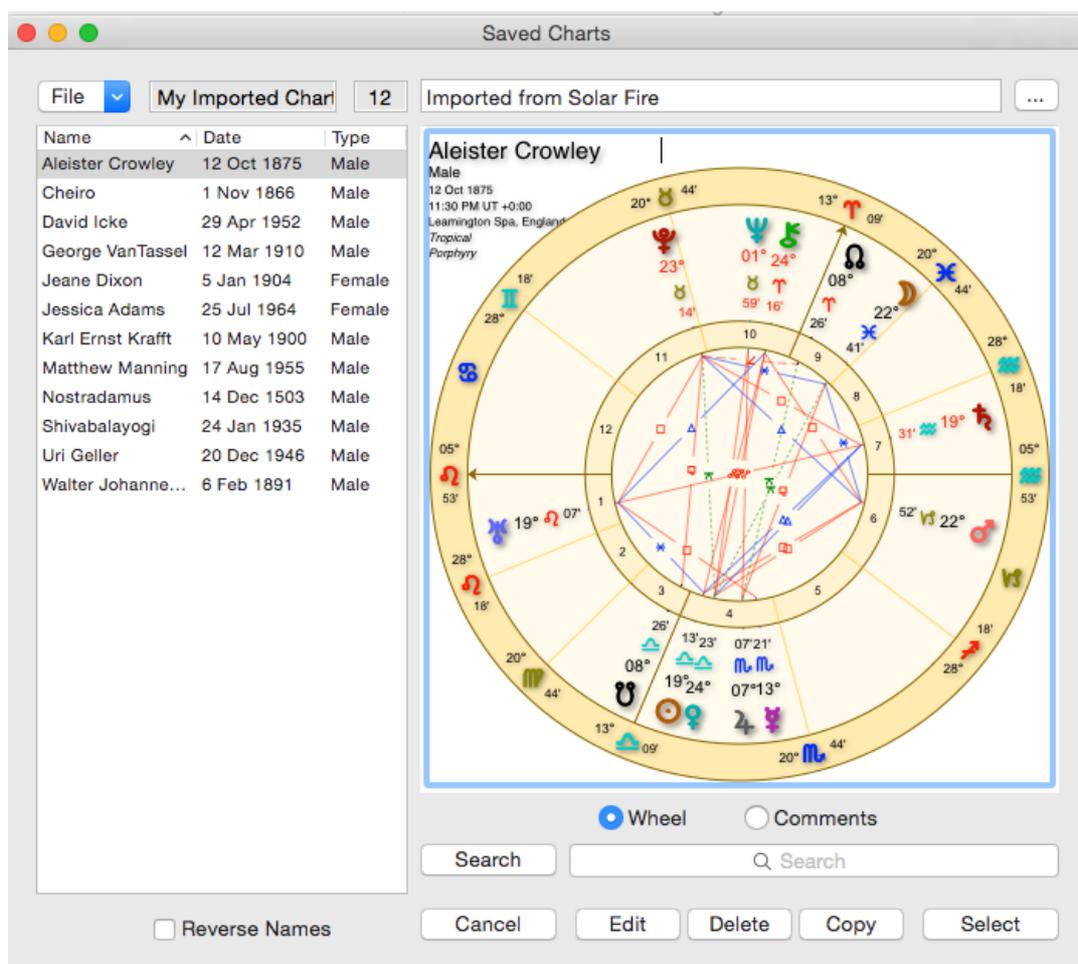


5. Back in Astro Gold [open a chart](#) for any of the Selected Chart positions in the normal way. Once in the "Saved Charts" dialog [open a new chart file](#). Navigate to

the Astro Gold folder and select the chart file that you saved there previously (it may still have the same name as it was when it was emailed to you, or it may have been automatically renamed as part of the process of saving it, or alternatively you may have renamed it yourself at the time). Then click on the **Open** button.



6. Once the chart file that was imported has been opened, you can select any chart from it in the normal way.



**TIP:** A quick shortcut for importing Solar Fire charts:

⇒ when you receive a \*.SFcht chart file as an attachment to an email, then double-clicking on it will open the file directly in Astro Gold's "Saved Charts" dialog box, from where you can copy its charts into another chart file if you wish. See [Copying Charts](#) for full details.

#### 5.4.2 Transferring charts to/from Solar Fire using iCloud

Firstly, save the charts you want to export to Solar Fire in one of your Astro Gold folders in the iCloud Drive (see [Using iCloud](#) for more info).

If you are doing this from a Windows computer, you can copy any file from the Astro Gold folder that says it is a ".SFcht" file from there and get it into Solar Fire on your Windows computer.

##### >> How to transfer files to Solar Fire on a Windows computer

On your Windows computer, using the "File Explorer" application:

1. Open the "Documents" folder

2. Open the "Solar Fire User Files" folder
3. Open the "Charts" folder
4. In the browser window where you have logged into your internet "iCloud Drive", and have also opened the Astro Gold folder in it, copy any .SFcht file from that folder and then paste it into the Charts folder in File Explorer (or you can just drag the files from one to the other if you know how to do that).
5. When you have copied all that you want, you can exit both folders.
6. If Solar Fire was open, close it. Then re-open Solar Fire and you should see all of those charts from the iCloud available to you.

### **>> How to transfer files from Solar Fire on a Windows computer to the iCloud Drive**

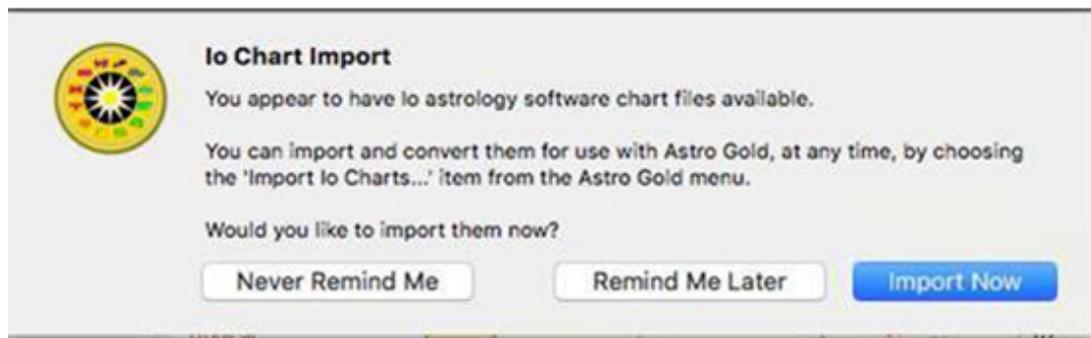
1. On your MacOS computer in the Safari app, log into your internet "iCloud Drive" (see [Using iCloud](#) for more info), and also open the Astro Gold folder in it.
2. On your Windows computer, using the "File Explorer" application
  - a. Open the "Documents" folder
  - b. Open the "Solar Fire User Files" folder
  - c. Open the "Charts" folder
  - d. Copy any .SFcht files you want to transfer to Astro Gold
3. In your iCloud Drive in the browser, paste these copied files into the "Astro Gold" folder - which you already have open.

### **5.4.3 Import from Time Cycles Io**

#### **>> To *start* the process of importing an Io software chart file**

**If Time Cycles Research Io software is already installed on your computer, and Astro Gold is freshly installed (or updated) but not been used since doing that ...**

Once you have installed (or updated to) Astro Gold 3.6.1 or higher, the first time you subsequently start up Astro Gold you will see the following dialog:



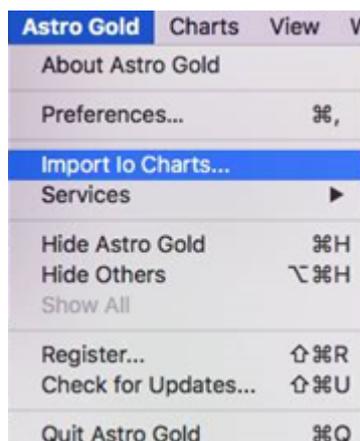
- Click **Import Now** to import your Io chart files. Doing so will only make a copy of these chart files before importing them, the original files will not be affected in any way.

If you click "Remind Me Later" this dialog box will continue to appear each time you start Astro Gold. To stop that happening click on either "Never Remind Me" or "Import Now".

**NOTE:** Once you have successfully imported one or more Io charts the above reminder will not occur anymore.

### If Astro Gold is already started and running on your computer ...

1. Click on the **Astro Gold menu**
2. Click on **Import Io Charts**



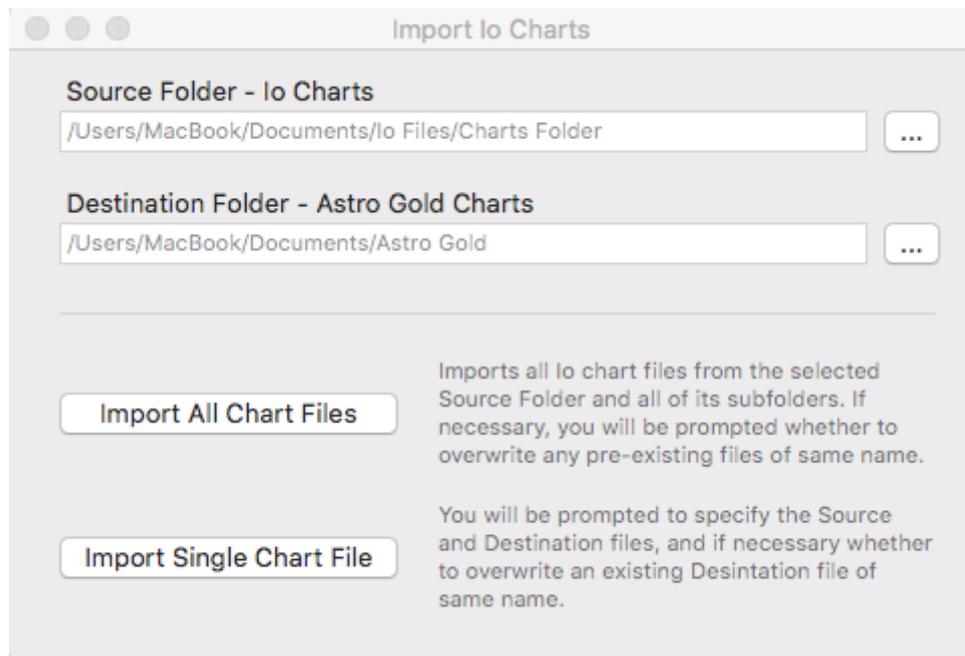
### >> To **complete** the process of importing an Io software chart file

- After you have either:
- responded to Astro Gold's inquiry at start up asking if you want to import Io charts, and clicked "Import Now"

OR

- initiated the lo charts import process via the "Astro Gold" menu  
(see [above](#) for either of these steps)

... the following dialog is displayed:



1. If you just want Astro Gold to take care of the importing of ALL lo chart files on your computer click **Import All Chart Files**

OR

1. If you want to import lo chart files from a different folder to the one specified in "Source Folder" and/or you want to specify a different Destination Folder, then click on the  button to the right of either or both, and select the folder you want for the Source and/or Destination Folder(s).

➤ Then click on:

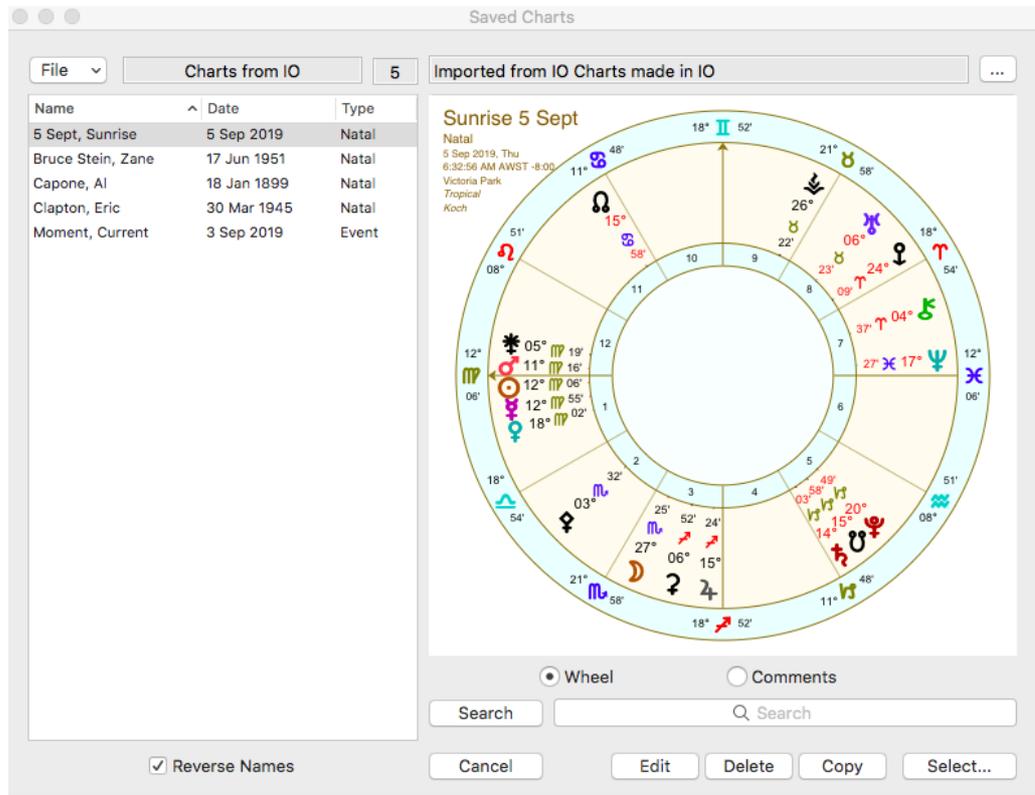
- **Import All Chart Files** to import every chart file found in the Source Folder and its sub-folders to the Destination Folder.

OR

- **Import Single Chart File** to import an individual chart file.

- a) If you select to import a single chart file you will be presented with a dialog that looks similar to the following, with the "Source Folder" opened and the chart files in it listed. (You can change the "Source Folder" at this point if you wish.)

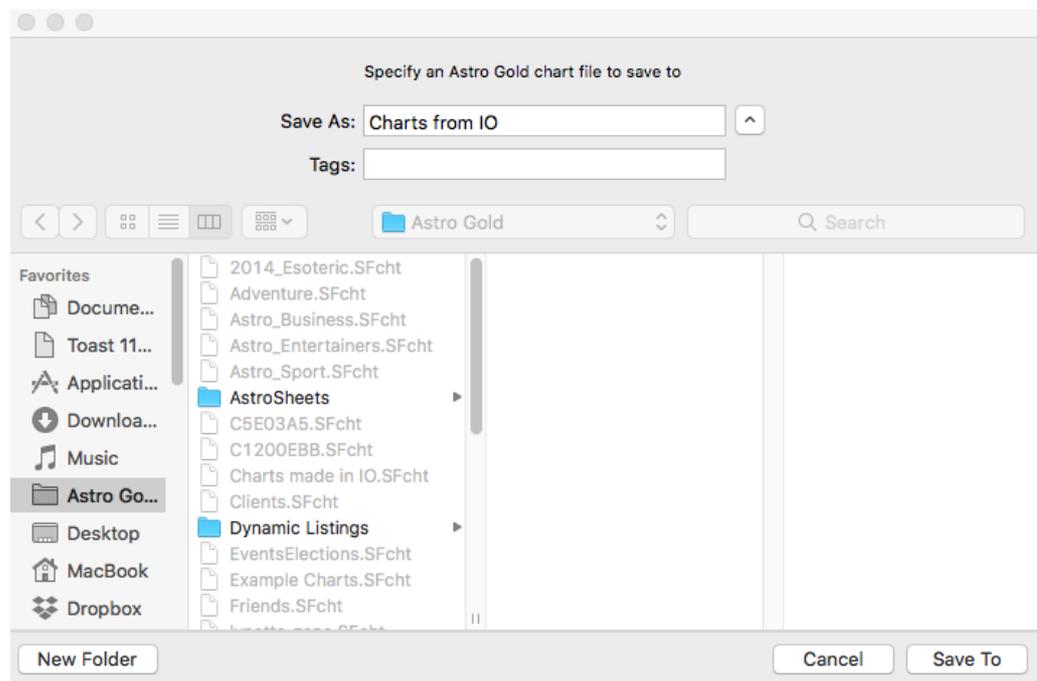
Now select the file you want to import, then click on the **Import** button.



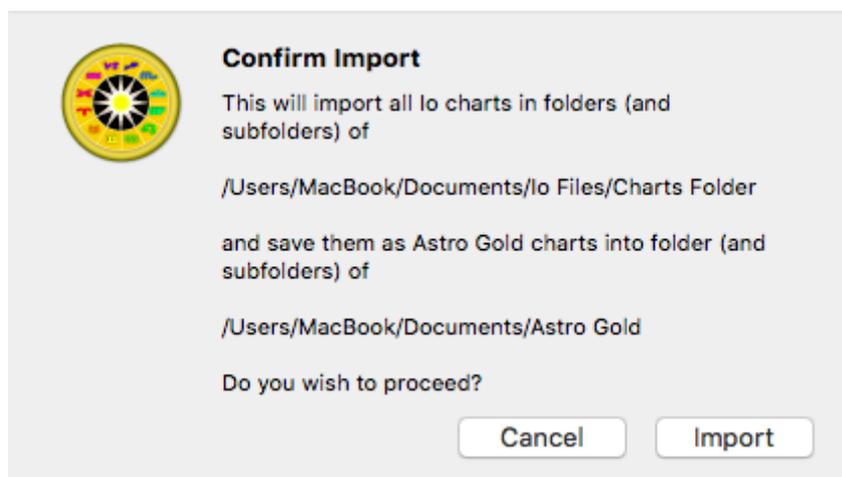
- b) You will then be presented with a dialog that looks similar to the one below, with the "Destination Folder" opened and a filename entered in the "Save As" textbox - being a suggested name for the Astro Gold chart file which will contain the charts that are going to be imported from the lo chart file.

If you want a different filename to be used, delete what is in the **Save As** textbox and **write in the filename you want** instead. (You can also change the "Destination Folder" at this point if you wish.)

When the filename you want for the Astro Gold chart file is in the "Save As" textbox, click on the **Save To** button.

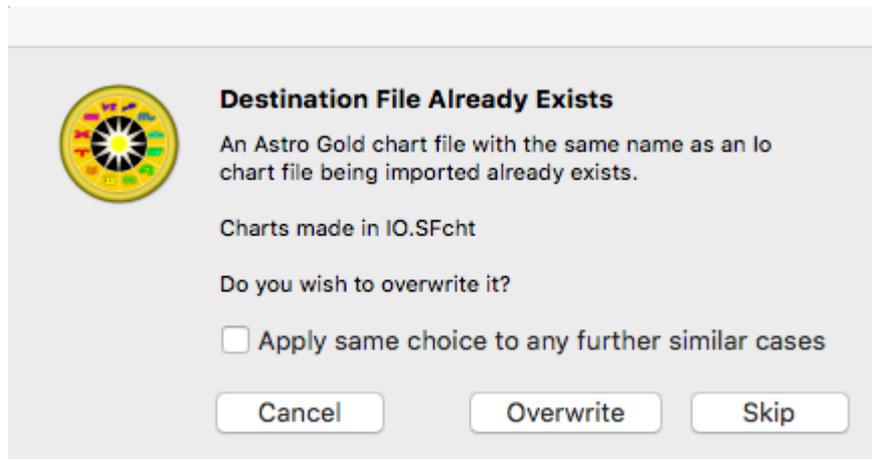


- If you chose to import only a *Single* chart file then *skip to Step 3*. If you chose to import ALL charts you will then see a confirmation window similar to the one below. Click on the **Import** button.



- The importing process will start. Regardless of whether you are importing ALL lo chart files or just a single file, if an Astro Gold chart file exists that has the same name as either ...
  - one of the lo files being imported (when importing ALL the lo chart files)
  - OR
  - the name you specified in the "Save As" textbox (when importing a single chart file)

... you will be asked what to do in a dialog similar to the following, with the relevant Astro Gold chart filename displayed:



## CAUTION !!

If you click on "Overwrite" you will lose all of the charts that were previously existing in that Astro Gold chart file, and they will be replaced by the charts you are importing from the lo chart file.

If that's what you want to happen then click on "Overwrite", but if you don't want that then instead click on...

➤ **Cancel** to abort the import process (if importing a single lo chart file)

OR

➤ **Skip** to move on to importing the next chart file (if importing ALL lo chart files).

4. If the process is successful you will see something similar to one of the following types of messages. Click on the **OK** button to complete the importing process.

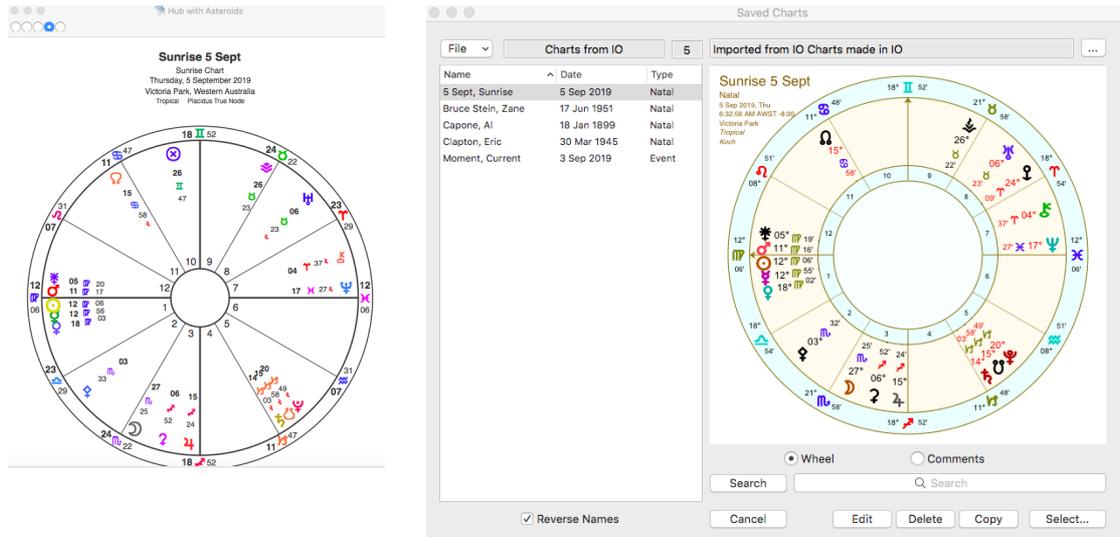


5. Finally the "Chart Open" screen is automatically displayed, with the folder selection dialog open, so you can see where the charts have been imported to.

## Chart Types

If the original Io chart was an "event" type of chart (for example solar and lunar returns, secondary progressed and solar arc directed), it will be imported as an equivalent Astro Gold "event" type of chart, otherwise charts will be imported as Astro Gold "natal" charts.

**EXAMPLE:** Here is a chart that was created in Io (on the left) that has been imported into Astro Gold (on the right).



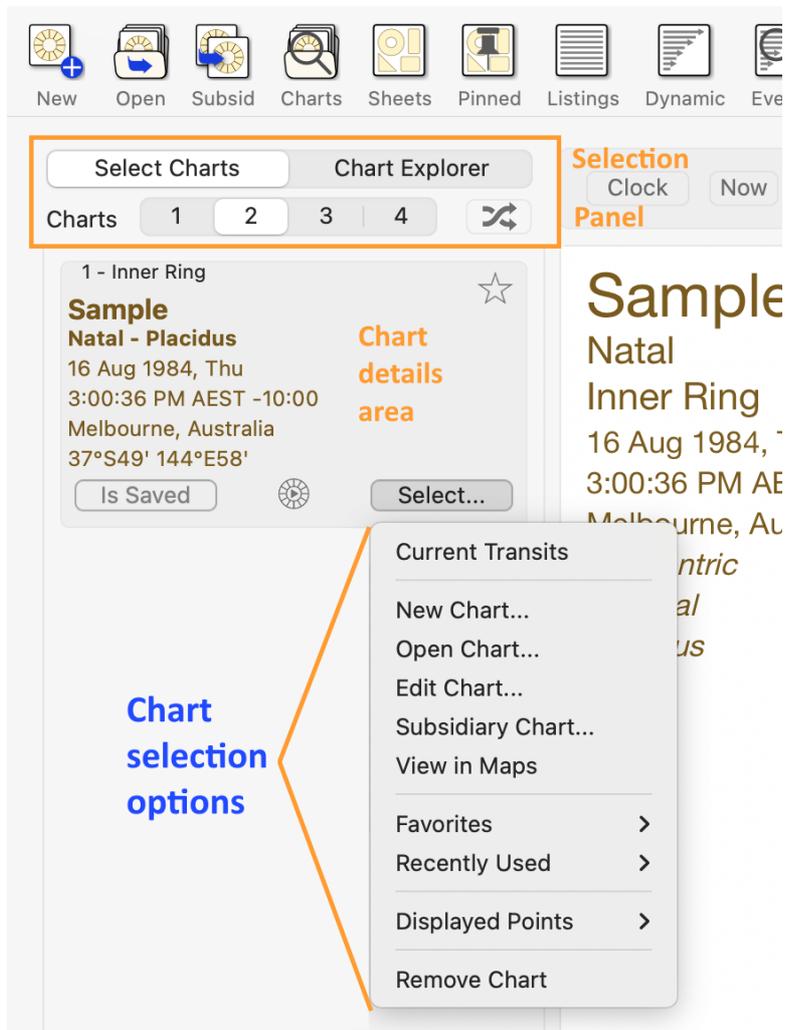
**NOTE:** the house systems employed in each case are different so the intermediate house cusps differ correspondingly, as you would expect.

## 5.5 Copying Charts

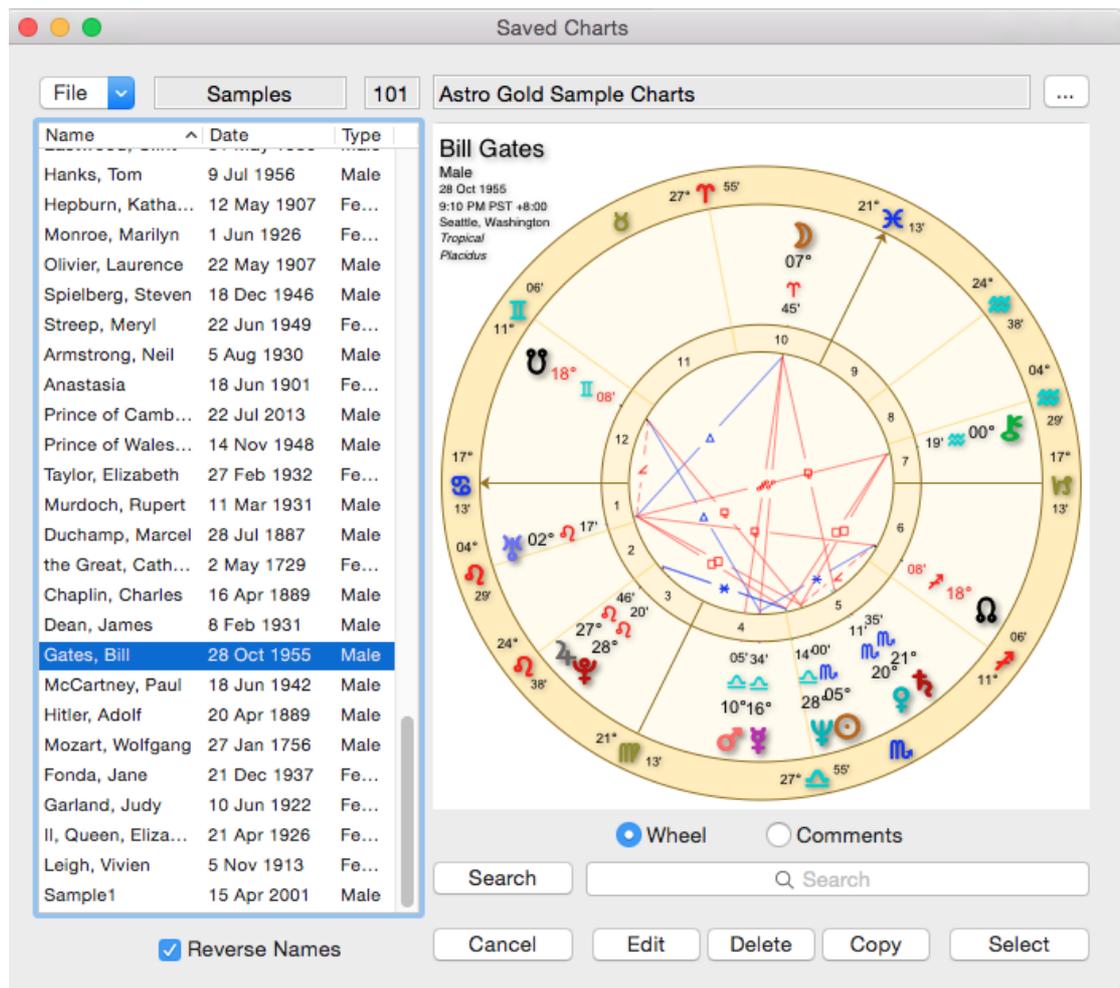
This topic explains how to copy individual charts between chart files.

### >> To copy chart(s) that have been saved in a file

1. First you must open the "Saved Charts" dialog window.
  - In the "Selected Charts" pane click on the **Select** button of the particular chart that you want to copy, and a menu will drop down displaying the options for that chart position.



- Click on either **Open Chart** or **Edit Chart** to open the "Saved Charts" dialog.



Saved Charts dialog

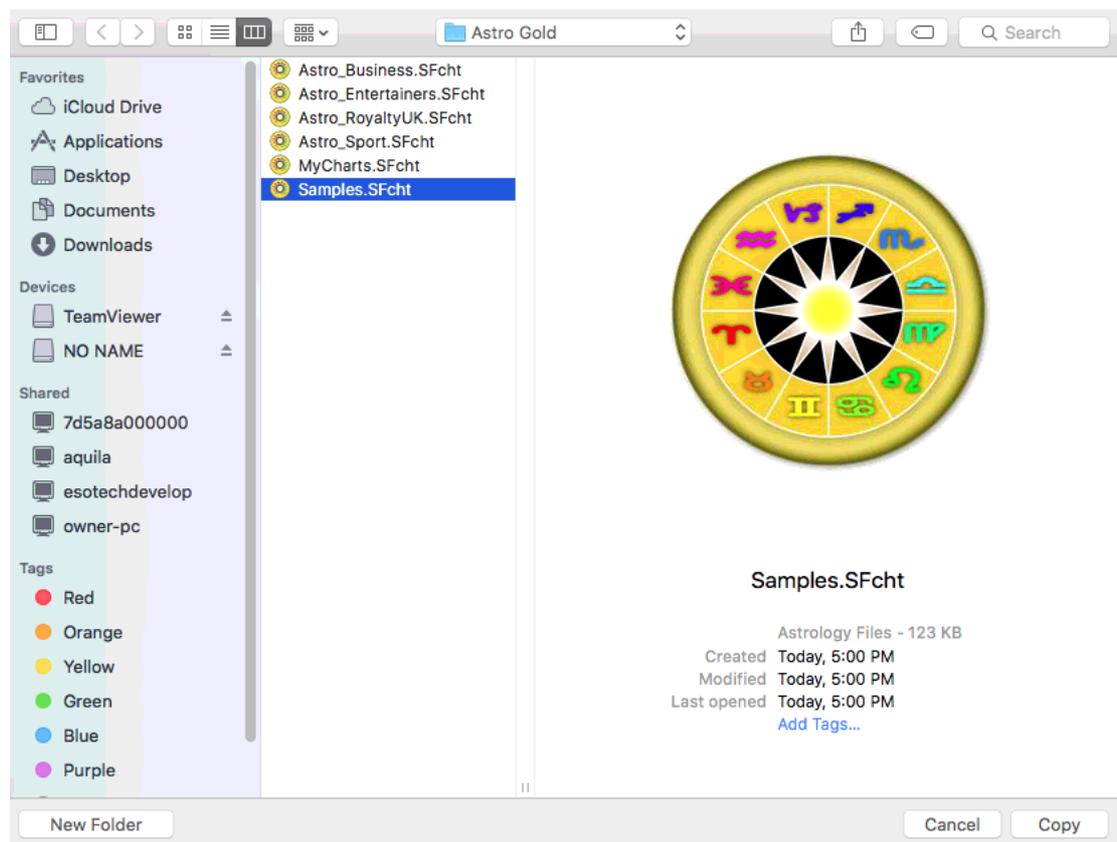
2. Make sure the chart file which is displayed contains the charts you want to copy. If the chart(s) you want to copy aren't in the current chart file then you can select another chart file ...

- a) Click on the **File** dropdown  in the top left of the screen. A list of all the recently used chart files will be displayed, plus an option to select a file from any undisplayed chart files if necessary.
- b) Click on a **filename** in the list - in which case you will be returned to the "Saved Charts" dialog

OR

- c) Click on **Select** and the "Open" dialog box will display any other chart files available in your Astro Gold folder, or any sub-folders you have created under that. Click on a chart file to select it then click on the **Open** button and it's charts will be listed in the "Saved Charts" dialog.
3. Once you have the chart file containing the charts you want to copy opened, select (highlight by clicking on) the chart(s) you want to copy.

4. Click on the **Copy** button.
5. A dialog box opens displaying the chart files in your Astro Gold folder. Click on the **chart file** you want to save the selected chart(s) to then click on the **Copy** button. If the chart file you want to copy the charts into is in another folder open that other folder first - see (2a-c) above.



Copy Chart(s) dialog

6. Alternatively click on the **Cancel** button to exit from the dialog box and return to the "Saved Charts" dialog box.

## 5.6 Finding Charts

Astro Gold has a powerful Chart Search facility with which to find charts based on simple to fine-detailed multi-condition search criteria.

[Finding Charts by name only](#)

[Finding Charts - using simple or complex search criteria](#)

[Finding Charts - specifying chart files to search in](#)

[Found Charts - saving, opening](#)

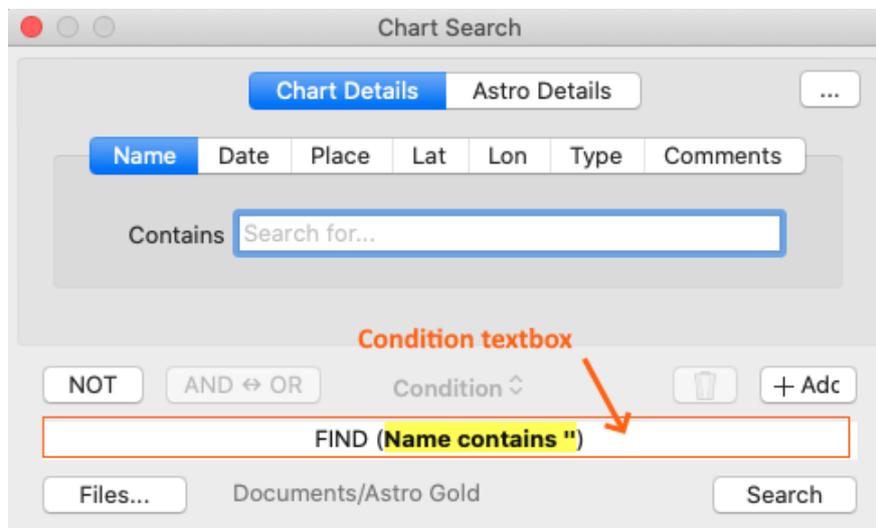
### 5.6.1 By only searching for a Name

You can search for charts across all chart files.

#### >> To find a chart based on its Name only

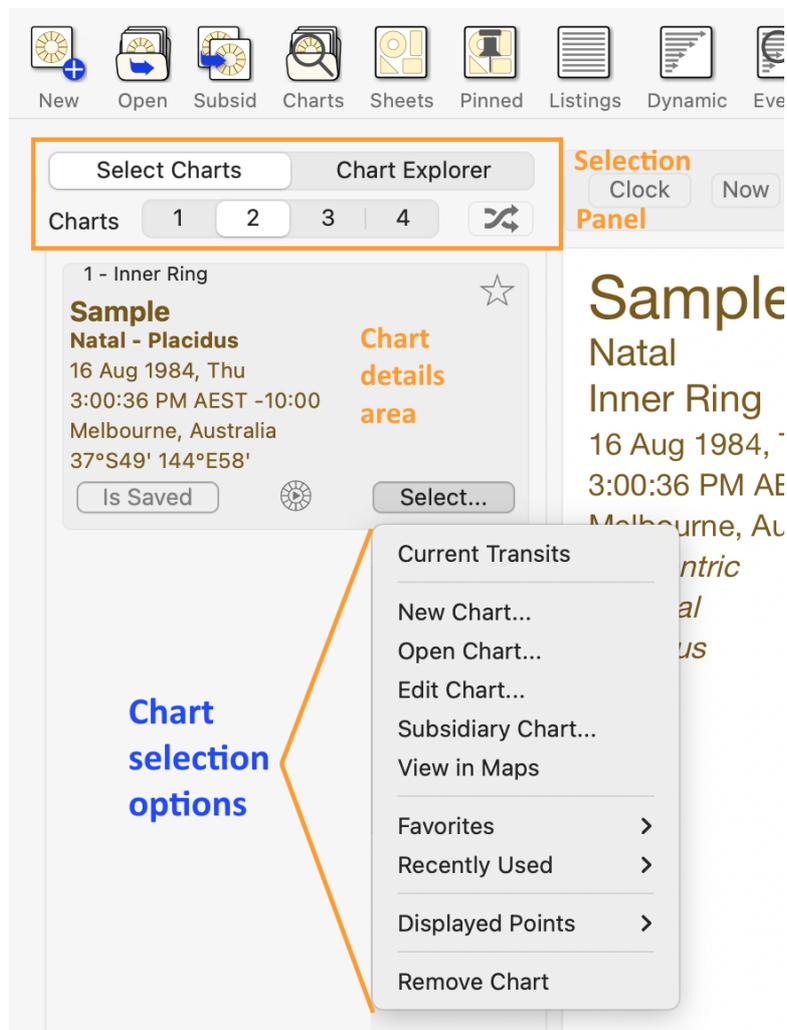
To find a chart you need to open the "Chart Search" dialog, which can be done in two ways ...

- Click on the **Chart Search icon**  in the Toolbar. This will open the "Chart Search" dialog box.



**-OR-**

1. Click on the **Select** button for any chart in the "Selected Charts" pane and a menu will drop down displaying the options for that particular chart (Chart 1, 2, 3 or 4).
2. Click on **Open Chart** to open the "Saved Charts" dialog box.



3. In the "Saved Charts" dialog (shown below) click on the **Search** button. The "Chart Search" dialog box will then open.

Saved Charts

Files ▾ Samples 100 Astro Gold Sample Charts

Name	Date	Type
Martin Luther King	15 Jan 1929	Male
Martina Navratilova	18 Oct 1956	Female
Maximilien Robespierre	6 May 1758	Male
Meryl Streep	22 Jun 1949	Female
Michelangelo	6 Mar 1475	Male
Muhammad Ali	17 Jan 1942	Male
Neil Armstrong	5 Aug 1930	Male
Neil Young	12 Nov 1945	Male
Nostradamus	14 Dec 1503	Male
Otto von Bismarck	1 Apr 1815	Male
Pablo Picasso	25 Oct 1881	Male
Paul McCartney	18 Jun 1942	Male
Phil Spector	26 Dec 1939	Male
Pope Francis	17 Dec 1936	Male
Prince William	21 Jun 1982	Male
<b>Queen Victoria</b>	<b>24 May 1819</b>	<b>Female</b>
Richard Branson	18 Jul 1950	Male
Robbie Williams	13 Feb 1974	Male
Roger Federer	8 Aug 1981	Male
Rupert Murdoch	11 Mar 1931	Male
Salvador Dali	11 May 1904	Male
Sigmund Freud	6 May 1856	Male
Steven Spielberg	18 Dec 1946	Male
Stonewall Jackson	20 Jan 1824	Male
Tom Hanks	9 Jul 1956	Male
Venus Williams	17 Jun 1980	Female
Vincent VanGogh	30 Mar 1853	Male
Vivien Leigh	5 Nov 1913	Female
Walt Disney	5 Dec 1901	Male

Wheel Comments

**Queen Victoria**  
Female  
24 May 1819, Mon  
4:15 AM LMT +0:00:40  
London, UK  
Geocentric  
Tropical  
Equal

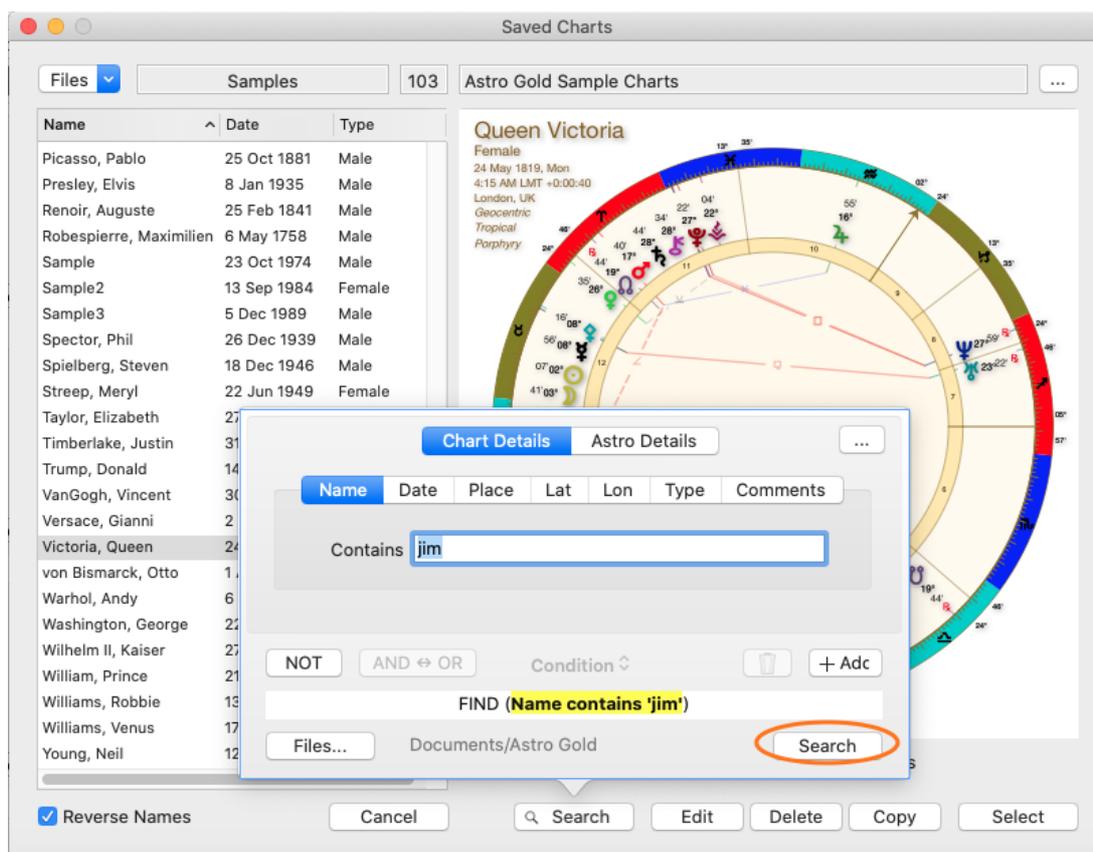
Reverse Names Cancel Search Edit Delete Copy Select

## >> Using the Chart Search dialog

1. Click on the **Chart Details** button at the top of the dialog.
2. Click on the **Name** button.
3. In the "**Contains**" text box type a whole or partial chart name, then press the **Enter** key which will set up the search for any chart having, whatever it was you typed, anywhere in the chart name.

For example, in the graphic below, the user has typed "jim" in the textbox, and after pressing the "Enter" key a search criterion has been created called **FIND (Name contains 'jim')**, which is brightly highlighted. The search has been set-up and is now ready to go.

4. To activate the search click on the **Search** button in the bottom right of the "Chart Search" dialog.



**NOTE:** to specify which chart files to search in before activating the search, see [Finding Charts - specifying chart files to search in](#) for info on how to do that.

See [Found Charts - saving, opening](#) for info on what you can do with the Chart Search results after the search has completed.

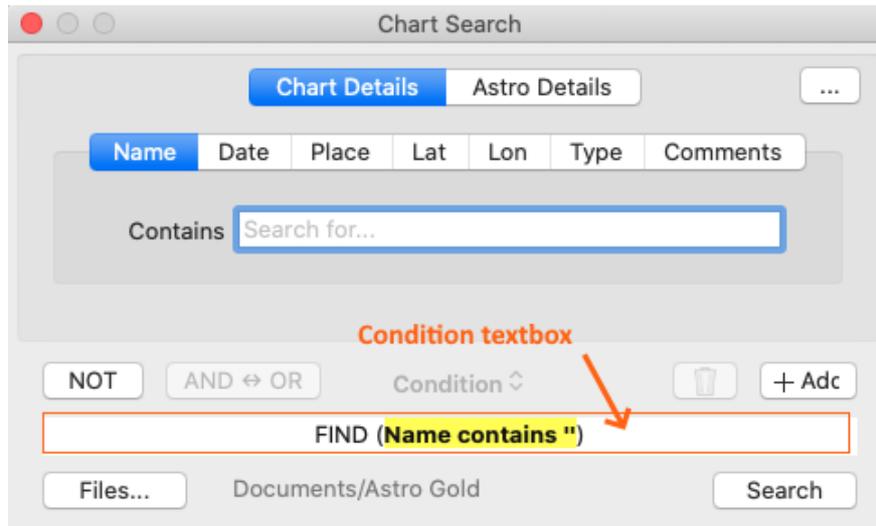
## 5.6.2 Using simple or complex search criteria

You can search for charts across all chart files.

### >> Finding charts based on various Chart and Astrological details

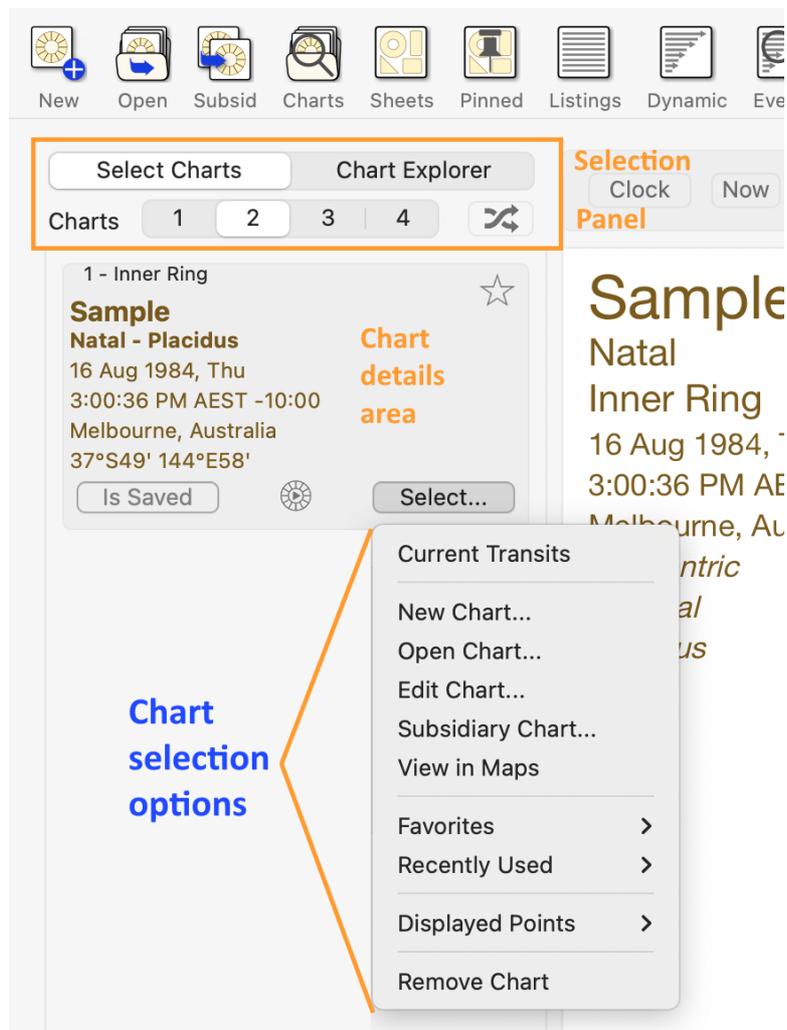
To find a chart you need to open the "Chart Search" dialog, which can be done in two ways ...

- Click on the **Chart Search icon**  in the Toolbar. This will open the "Chart Search" dialog box.



**-OR-**

1. Click on the **Select** button for any chart in the "Selected Charts" pane and a menu will drop down displaying the options for that particular chart (Chart 1, 2, 3 or 4).
2. Click on **Open Chart** to open the "Saved Charts" dialog box.



3. In the "Saved Charts" dialog (shown below) click on the **Search** button.

**Saved Charts**

Files ▾ Samples 100 Astro Gold Sample Charts

Name	Date	Type
Martin Luther King	15 Jan 1929	Male
Martina Navratilova	18 Oct 1956	Female
Maximilien Robespierre	6 May 1758	Male
Meryl Streep	22 Jun 1949	Female
Michelangelo	6 Mar 1475	Male
Muhammad Ali	17 Jan 1942	Male
Neil Armstrong	5 Aug 1930	Male
Neil Young	12 Nov 1945	Male
Nostradamus	14 Dec 1503	Male
Otto von Bismarck	1 Apr 1815	Male
Pablo Picasso	25 Oct 1881	Male
Paul McCartney	18 Jun 1942	Male
Phil Spector	26 Dec 1939	Male
Pope Francis	17 Dec 1936	Male
Prince William	21 Jun 1982	Male
<b>Queen Victoria</b>	<b>24 May 1819</b>	<b>Female</b>
Richard Branson	18 Jul 1950	Male
Robbie Williams	13 Feb 1974	Male
Roger Federer	8 Aug 1981	Male
Rupert Murdoch	11 Mar 1931	Male
Salvador Dali	11 May 1904	Male
Sigmund Freud	6 May 1856	Male
Steven Spielberg	18 Dec 1946	Male
Stonewall Jackson	20 Jan 1824	Male
Tom Hanks	9 Jul 1956	Male
Venus Williams	17 Jun 1980	Female
Vincent VanGogh	30 Mar 1853	Male
Vivien Leigh	5 Nov 1913	Female
Walt Disney	5 Dec 1901	Male

Wheel Comments

**Queen Victoria**  
Female  
24 May 1819, Mon  
4:15 AM LMT +0:00:40  
London, UK  
Geocentric  
Tropical  
Equal

Reverse Names Cancel Search Edit Delete Copy Select

4. The "Chart Search" dialog box will then open.

**Chart Search**

Chart Details Astro Details

Name	Date	Place	Lat	Lon	Type	Comments
Contains Search for...						

Condition

NOT AND ↔ OR Condition + Adc

FIND (Name contains ")

Files... Documents/Astro Gold Search

You can specify a range of Chart and Astrological details as criteria for searching for charts in any folder of chart files, or just within a single chart file.

The process is one of building up the search criteria, one *search condition* at a time.

A *search condition* is a single factor that identifies a chart e.g (say) the chart date must be a certain date, or within a certain date range, or the chart must be of a specific type, or it must have Venus in a certain sign etc.

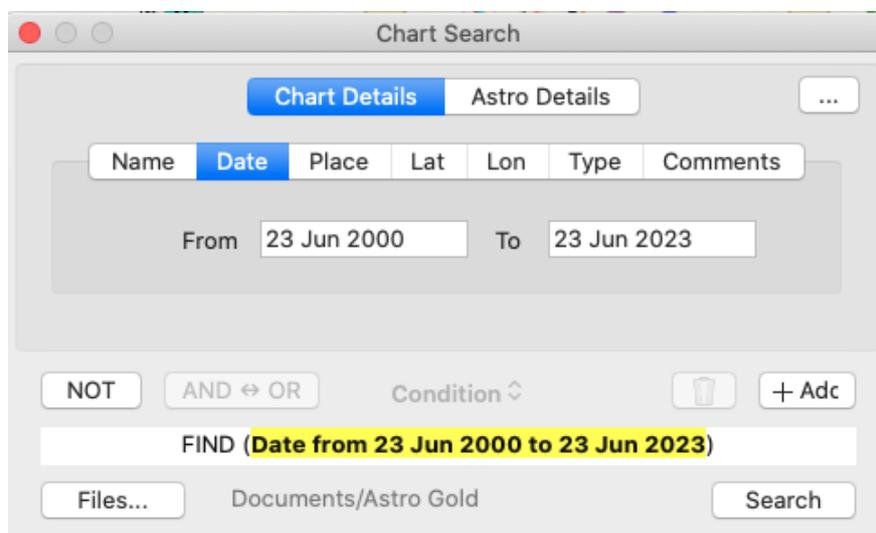
The search criteria could utilize just a *single* search condition, or it might be made up from *multiple* search conditions.

When a chart has one search condition it is known as the search criterion, when it has more than one search condition all the conditions are collectively known as the search criteria (plural for criterion).

## >> Creating a search condition for each Chart detail

- Click on the **Chart Details** button at the top of the dialog (to search for a chart using its name only see [Finding Charts - by name](#)).
- To find charts based on specific data involving any of the following chart details < *date/place/latitude/longitude/chart type/certain words in the comments* > click on the respective button for that chart detail in the Chart Search dialog, then specify the data for that chart detail. See below how to specify data for each chart detail.

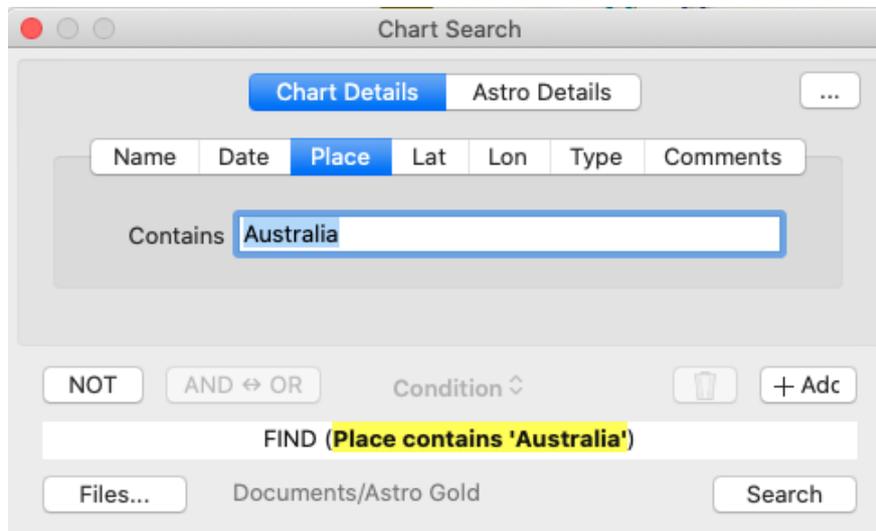
1. To find charts within in a certain time period, click on **Date**



- a) Notice how there is a single condition: in the above case: to find any chart having a date between 23 June 2000 and 23 June 2023 inclusive - the default period will always be the previous 3 years.
- b) To change the time period for a chart date to be in, edit the dates showing in the **From** and **To** date fields, then press the **Tab** or **Enter** key, or click in the **Condition** textbox.

2. To find charts using the chart's location, click on **Place**

- a) In the **Contains** textbox type the **town, city or country** (in full or part) that charts must have in their place details, then press the **Tab** or **Enter** key, or click in the **Condition** textbox.

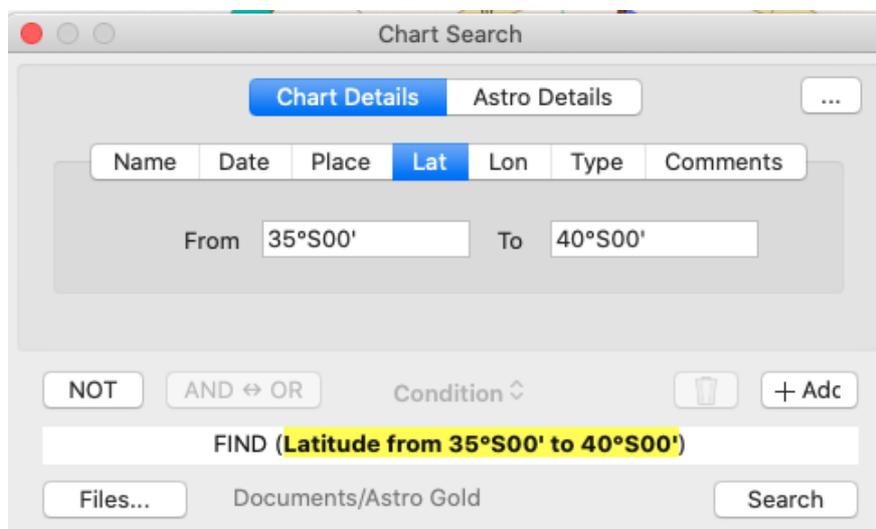


### 3. To find charts within a certain latitude, click on **Lat**

- a) Type a single latitude in both the **From** and **To** textboxes to find a chart whose latitude must be the same as that, or a different latitude in each textbox to create a range within which a chart's latitude must be, then press the **Tab** or **Enter** key, or click in the **Condition** textbox.

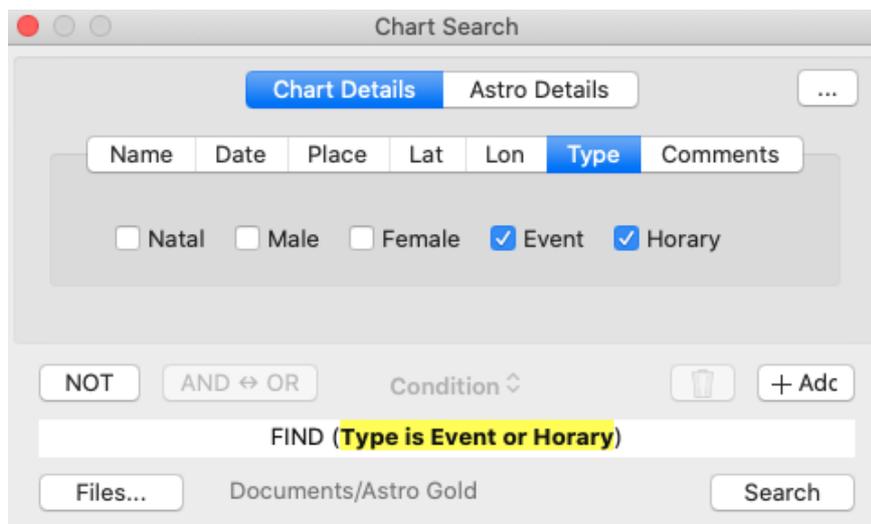
Below we have typed a latitude range from 35°S to 40°S - which would find, for example, any chart with Melbourne as a place, as the latitude for Melbourne is 37°S49'.

- b) **Lon**(gitude) works just the same as Latitude.



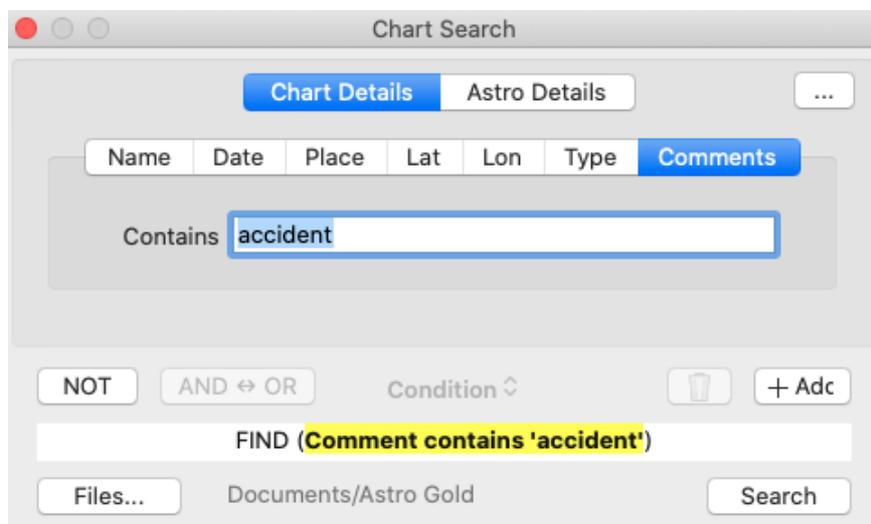
4. To find only certain types of charts, click on **Type**

- a) Tick any or all of the checkboxes for **Natal/Male/Female/Event/Horary** you want to include in the chart search. For example, below will find any chart that is either an Event or a Horary chart.



5. To find charts who have a certain word, phrase or sentence in their comments, click on **Comments**

- a) In the **Contains** textbox type in specific partial words, whole words, or even whole sentences, that must be in a chart's comments in order for that chart to be included in the search results. Below we want any chart that had the word "accident" anywhere in the comments.



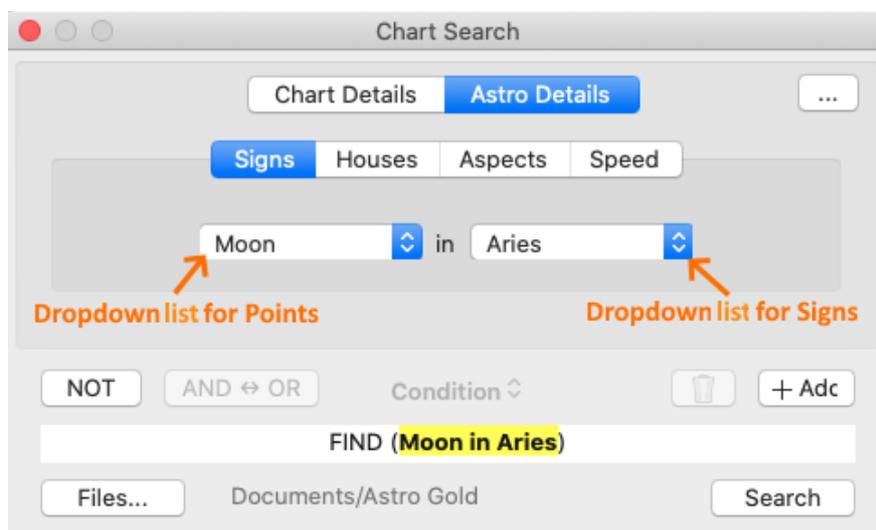
So now we've created 6 different conditions, one for each possible Chart detail (excluding the chart name - see [Finding Charts - by name](#) for info on that).

To see the equivalent information for Astrological details keep on reading the next section. Or alternatively you can ...

- See [Building a single condition Search](#) for info on how to use *just one* of these conditions you've created to search for charts.
- Or if you want to use *several* of these conditions combined together see [Building a multiple-condition Search](#).

## >> Creating a search condition for each Astrological detail

- Click on the **Astro Details** button at the top of the dialog.
  - To find charts based on specific data involving any of the following astrological details < point in *signs/houses*, point *aspects*, point *speed* > click on the respective button for that astrological detail in the Chart Search dialog, then specify the data for that astrological detail. See below how to specify data for each astrological detail.
1. To find charts with a specific point (planet, node, arabic part etc) in a specific sign (Aries, Taurus etc), click on **Signs**



- a) Notice how there is a single condition: in the above case: to find any chart having the Moon in Aries - this will always be the default when you first use "Chart Search" and click on "Signs".
- b) To change the point (planet, node etc) used here click on the **dropdown list for Points** and select the point you want. You can also click on the **dropdown list for Signs** and select the sign you want.

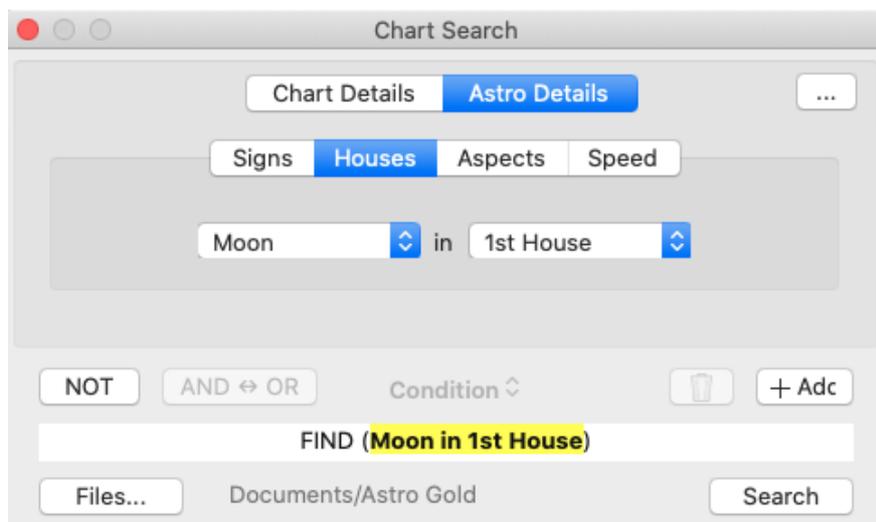
You will then see that <point in sign> combination reflected in the "Condition" textbox.

2. To find charts with a specific point (planet, node, arabic part etc) in a specific house (1,2 3 etc), click on **Houses**

a) To change the point (planet, node etc) used here click on the **dropdown list for Points** and select the point you want (this dropdown box is in the equivalent position as it is for Points in "Signs" above).

b) You can also click on the **dropdown list for Houses** and select the house you want (as you can see below this dropdown box is in the equivalent position as the one for Signs above).

You will then see that <point in house> combination reflected in the "Condition" textbox.



3. To find charts with a specific point (planet, node, arabic part etc) in a specific aspect (conjunction, square etc) to another specific point, click on **Aspects**

a) To change the first (aspecting) point (planet, node etc) used here click on the **Aspecting Point dropdown list** (the leftmost one) and select the point you want.

b) To change the second (aspected) point do the same but using the rightmost **Aspected Point dropdown list**.

c) You can also click on the **Aspect dropdown list** (the middle one) and select the aspect you want.

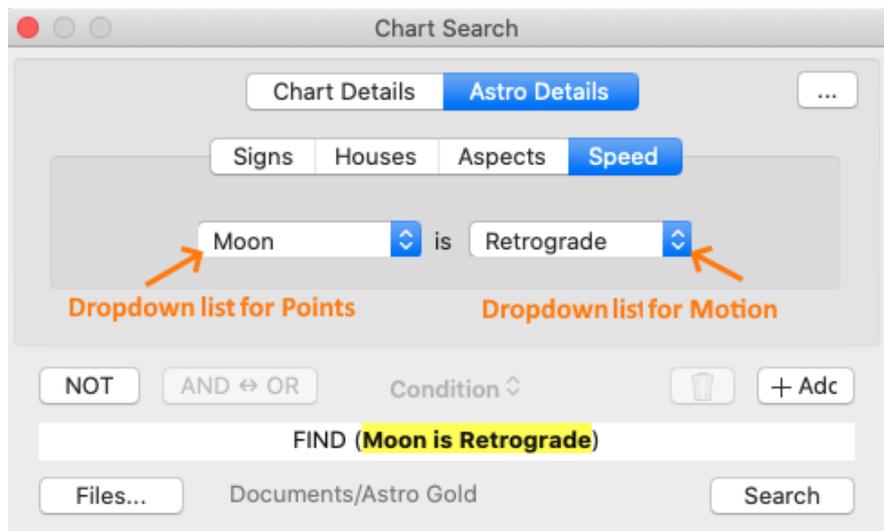
You will then see that point aspecting point combination reflected in the **Condition** textbox.



4. To find charts with a specific point having a certain kind of motion, click on **Speed**

- a) To change the point (planet, node, arabic part etc) used here click on the **dropdown list for Points** and select the point you want.
- b) You can also click on the **dropdown list for Motion** and select the type of motion indicator you want (retrograde/fast/slow etc).

You will then see that point motion reflected in the **Condition** textbox.



- So now we've created 4 more different conditions, one for each possible Astrological detail.

## >> Positive and Negative Conditions

As you create each condition, you need to bear in mind if it is intended to be a *positive* condition, or if it is intended to be a *negative* condition.

When creating conditions, a condition can be intended to be of:

- a) a positive nature e.g. FIND (**something**) ... or
- b) a negative nature (FIND (**NOT(something)**)) ... which means only find charts that *don't have something*.

So for each condition you need to decide if it is something that a chart must have to be selected, or if it's something a chart must NOT have to be selected.

## >> Turning Conditions into Search Criteria

- Continue reading in the very next section ([Building a single condition Search](#)) for info on how to use *just one* of the conditions you've created to search for charts.
- Or if you want to use *several* conditions combined together see [Building a multiple-condition Search](#).

## >> Building a single-condition Search Criterion

1. If you only want to find charts that are defined by one condition, whether it is a single Chart detail condition, or a single Astrological detail condition, all you need to do is to display that condition, and if need be specify its data.
  - a) First, click on the button relevant to the *kind* of condition it is: one derived from **Chart Details** or one derived from **Astro Details**.
  - b) Then click on the button for that specific detail, e.g **Date, Houses etc**.
- For example, if (say) you want to search for charts defined by one or more types, then click on the **Type** button

In this case, if you had already previously entered something for a type condition, the "Condition" textbox will display what you last typed in there:

e.g. FIND (**Type is Event or Horary**) ... if that is still the condition you are wanting then that's all you need to do, you're now ready to activate the search.

But it may not be a *type* of chart that you're looking for - you may be interested in any Chart detail (name/date/place etc... any of these details). Or any Astrological detail (planet in a sign/house etc).

Whatever the detail is, just click on its button, and what you previously typed in the "Conditions" textbox as a condition for that detail will still be there, and you're ready to search for charts using it.

- If you hadn't previously entered a condition for whatever Chart or Astrological detail you're interested in, or for any of these details you want something different to what you last entered, then you will need to enter new data to create the condition, which you can just do straight away (however if you need assistance doing that see [creating conditions for Chart details](#) and [creating conditions for Astrological details](#)).
2. At this point this condition will be the only condition showing in the "Condition" textbox. You now need to decide ... if it's a positive or negative condition (see [here](#) for more info).

A condition is by default positive, so you only have to do something if a condition is a *negative* condition.

- If you intend the condition to be a *negative* condition click on the **NOT** button.

## >> Building multiple-condition Search Criteria

1. To find charts that are defined by several conditions, first create each individual condition you will need. (Instructions for how to do that for each chart or astrological detail can be found in [creating conditions for Chart details](#) and [creating conditions for Astrological details](#)).

**NOTE:** As you create each condition, you need to bear in mind if it is intended to be a *positive* condition, or if it is intended to be a *negative* condition (see [here](#) for more info).

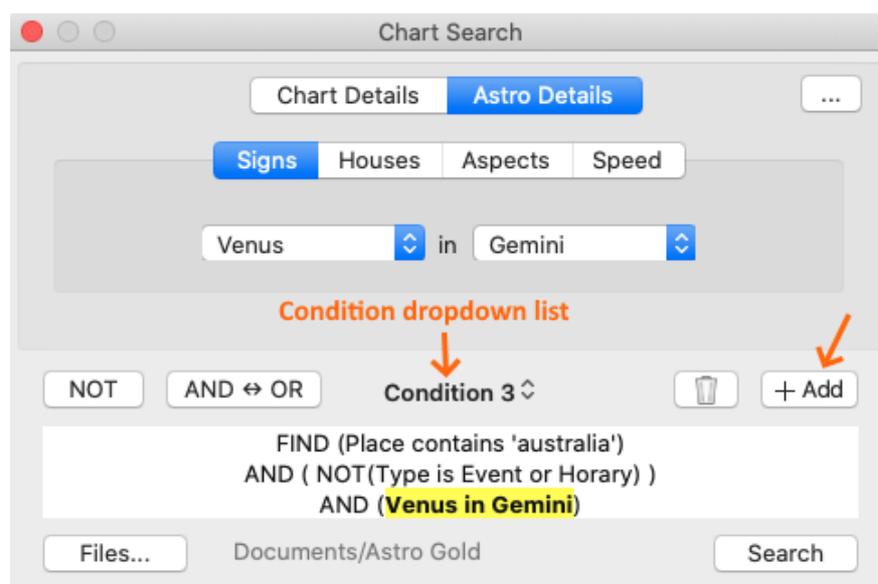
2. Decide for the most recent condition you have just created (which at this point should be the only condition showing in the "Condition" textbox) if it's to be a positive or negative condition.

- If you intend this condition to be a *negative* condition click on the **NOT** button.

3. Now you need to add the remaining conditions to create the full search criteria. For each additional condition you want to add...

- a) Click on the **ADD** button. This will add a new condition underneath the existing condition(s) with AND as the joining conjunction. This new condition may possibly be empty (have no data), or have some data you created at a previous time.
- b) If you want to enter new data for, or change the data of, the condition, then click on whatever Chart or Astrological detail you want the condition to apply to i.e. any one of **Chart Details -name/date/place/lat/lon/type/comments ...** or any one of **Astro Details -signs/houses/aspects/speed**.

- c) Enter your condition in the **Contains** textbox, or **From** and **To** textboxes, or tick **checkboxes**, or select items off **dropdown lists** - whatever is relevant for the detail you clicked on in step (b) above. Then click on the new condition in the **Condition** textbox.
- d) The **Condition dropdown list** will also have become enabled, so you can select from it which condition you want highlighted. This is important, as all **actions** regarding conditions are done on the highlighted condition. This new condition just created by using the "ADD" button will by default have become the currently **highlighted** condition - so any condition **action** you apply now will operate on this new condition. **TIP:** just clicking directly on a condition in the "Condition" textbox highlights it.
- e) You can apply the following **actions** to the **highlighted** condition:
- Toggle the condition from positive to negative, and vice versa. To do this click on the **NOT** button as many times as you need to.
  - Toggle the joining conjunction from AND to OR, and vice versa. To do this click on the **AND ↔ OR** button as many times as you need to.
    - If you use AND at the beginning of the condition it means that condition must be met in all charts included in the search results.
    - If you use OR at the beginning of the condition it means that any chart that meets that condition will be included in the search results, but that condition is not essential in all charts - as long as a chart not meeting this condition meets some other condition in the criteria it will also be included in the search results.
  - Delete the condition. To do this click on the  (trash) icon.

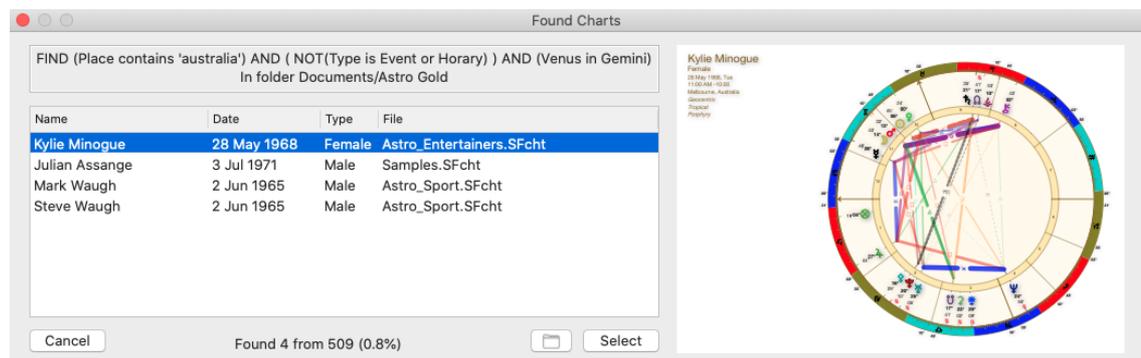


## >> ACTIVATING the Search

- When you have created and added all the conditions you need in the search criterion or search criteria, and then applied **actions** to each condition as needed, click on the **Search** button.

**NOTE:** to specify which chart files to search in before activating the search, see [Finding Charts - specifying chart files to search in](#) for info on how to do that.

- Activating the search by clicking on the "Search" button will cause the Chart Search results to be displayed in the "Found Charts" dialog.



- See [Found Charts - saving, opening](#) for info on what you can do with these search results after the search has completed.

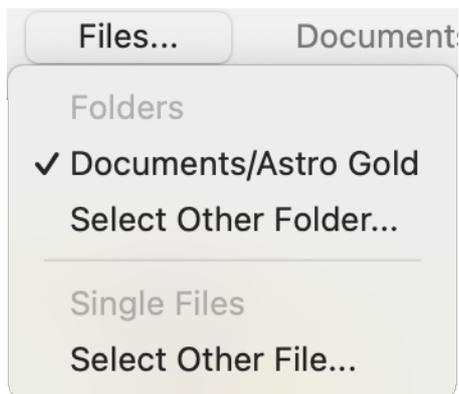
### 5.6.3 Specifying chart files to search in

Before activating a [Chart Search](#) you can specify what chart files to search in.

By default the very first time Chart Search is used the search will be done in all chart files in the Documents/Astro Gold folder.

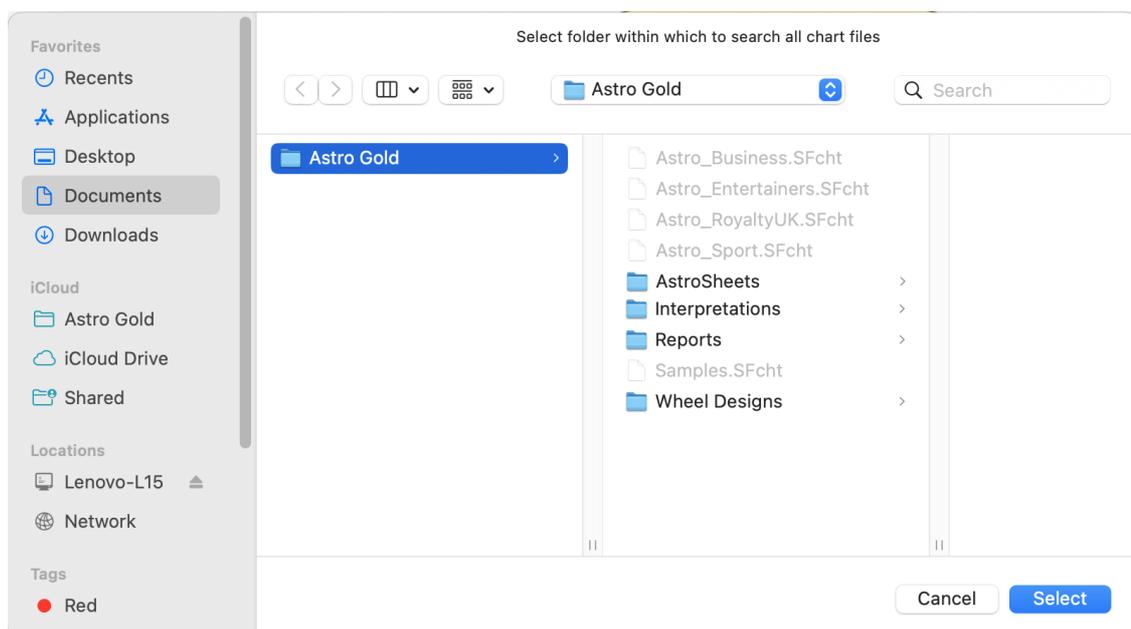
Thereafter the search will always be done there, until a different folder or chart file is selected, in which case the search will be done in all chart files in the last selected folder, or just in the last selected chart file.

- To change where the search will be done click on the **Files** button, which will drop down a menu...



The menu is divided into two sections: *Folders* and *Files*.

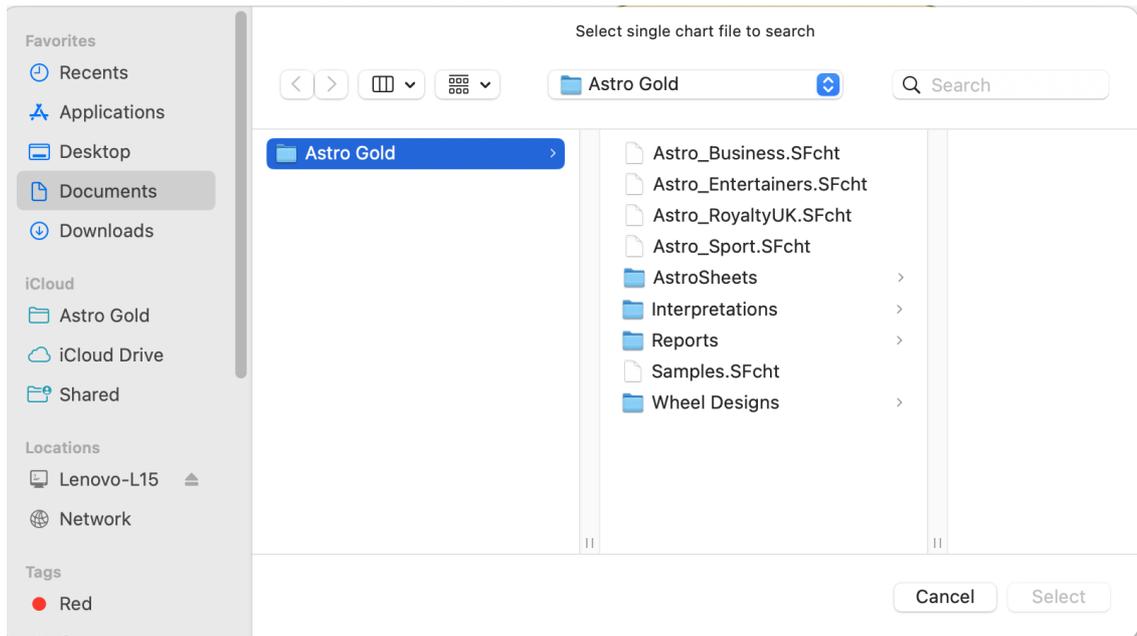
- In the top Folders section will be a list of all previous locations you searched in, with the currently selected location ticked.
- Simply clicking on any of the other **previous locations** will select it for this search.
- Alternatively click on **Select Other Folder** to view a list of folders - which you can select one from...



**-OR-**

- Click on **Select Other File** to view a list of files from which you can select one.
  - Initially the files in the "Documents/Astro Gold" folder will be displayed.

- You can change the folder displayed by clicking on the drop-down list at the top in the center of the dialog, and selecting a different folder. Keep doing that until you've found the folder that has the chart files in it you are interested in.
- In the folder all the files will be displayed regardless of their type. However you want to only select a file ending in the extension **.SFcht** - these are the AstroGold chart files. Selecting any other type will be a waste of time as they will not have any charts in them.

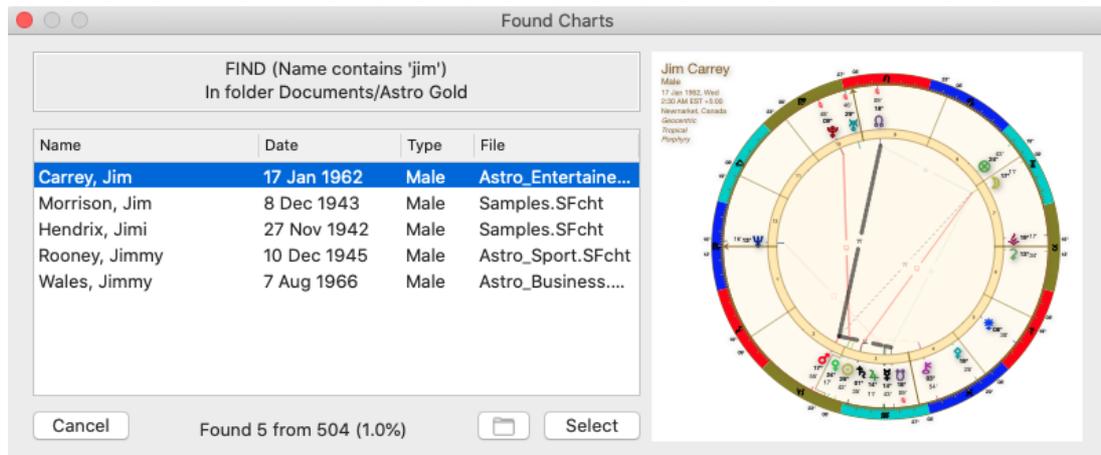


- e) Click on the **Folder** or **File** to search in. If it's a folder you select all chart files in that folder will be searched. If it's a single chart file you select obviously only that single file will be searched.
- f) Click on the **Select** button.

#### 5.6.4 Found Charts - sorting, saving, opening

Once you have found charts by using the [Chart Search](#) you can optionally sort them, then save them all to a new or existing chart file, and/or open one of them to view/work with it.

1. After clicking on the "Search" button in the Chart Search dialog, the "Found Charts" dialog will be displayed - showing all the charts having the criteria you specified - either just a chart name, or multiple search conditions.



2. **OPTIONALLY** ... if you want to sort these charts by either name, chart date, type or chart file, then click in the header for the column you want the list to be sorted by.

For example, if you want the list to be sorted by name then click the top of first column where it says **Name**, to sort the list by chart date click the top of second column where its says **Date** etc.

3. **OPTIONALLY** ... if you want to save these charts into an existing or new chart file, click on the **Folder icon**  next to the "Select" button, and a "File System" dialog will open.

- a. To save these charts to an existing file click on the **chart file** to save the charts into, then click on the **Copy x Charts** button in the bottom right of the dialog to save the charts, then click on the **OK** button.

**-OR-**

- b. If instead you want to save these charts to a *new* chart file, click on the **Options** button. Then click on a newly displayed button called **Create New Chart File**, fill in the name of the new chart file, and click on the **Create** button, and the new chart file will be created. Find it in the list of chart files and click on it, then click on the **Copy x Charts** button in the bottom right of the dialog to save the charts. Click on the **OK** button
- c. If that is all you want to with the found charts click on the **Cancel** button.

4. Select the **chart** you want to open in the list of "Found Charts" by clicking on it. Then click on the **Select** button and the chart file containing this chart will be opened, and the chart will be selected in the list.

[Alternatively just **double-click on the chart** you want to open, and the chart file containing this chart will be opened, and the chart will be selected in the list]

- Finally click on the **Select** button, and then click on which ring (**Chart 1, 2, 3 or 4**) you want to open the chart in.

## 5.7 Viewing Charts

Once one or more charts have been selected (see [working with charts](#) for how to do this) they will be displayed in the "Viewing Area". You can control the form in which the charts are displayed by using the "Display Controls".

The main display controls for this are the three buttons at the top of the [Viewing Area](#), which allow you to either display the chart as a (single or multi) Wheel or Dial, or as a Grid.

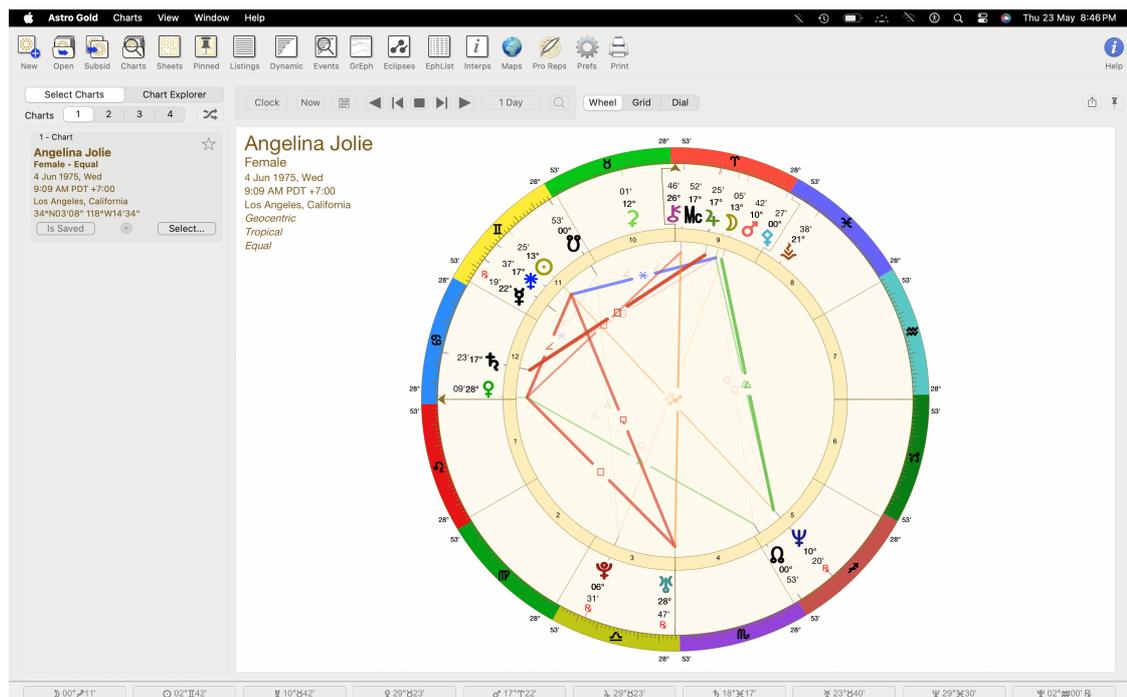
Wheel | Grid | Dial

When you click the **Wheel** or **Dial** button if ..

- only one chart is selected, then a Wheel/Dial will be displayed.
- two charts are selected, then a biWheel/biDial will be displayed.
- three charts are selected, then a triWheel/triDial will be displayed.
- four charts are selected, then a quadriWheel/quadriDial will be displayed.

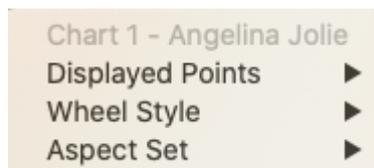
### Wheel

Below is a Wheel displaying 1 chart.

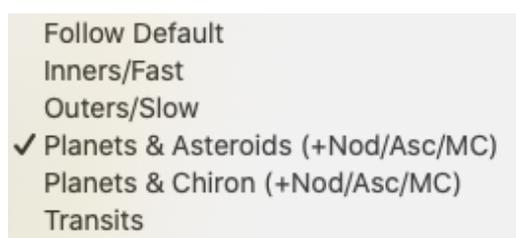


Depending on what wheel style is being used there are various options available directly from the Viewing Area. For a standard single wheel...

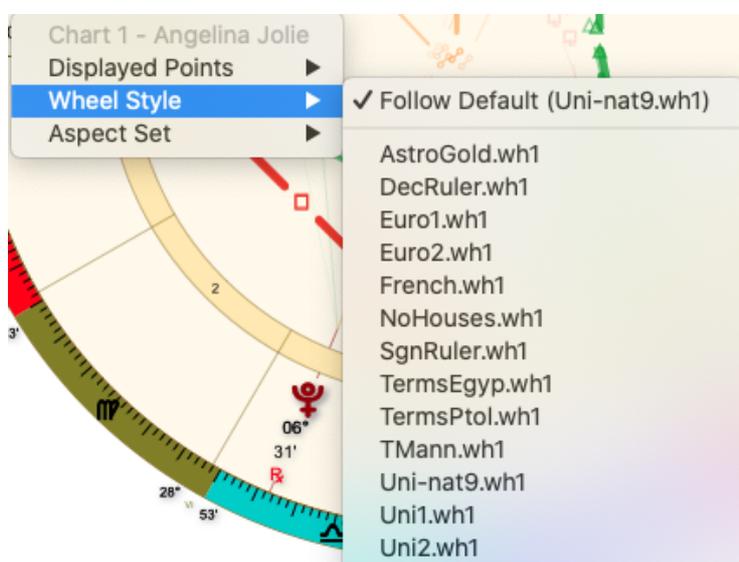
- Right-click (or control+click) anywhere in a ring of the **wheel(s)**, or in the empty space outside of the chart(s), and a pop-up menu is displayed.



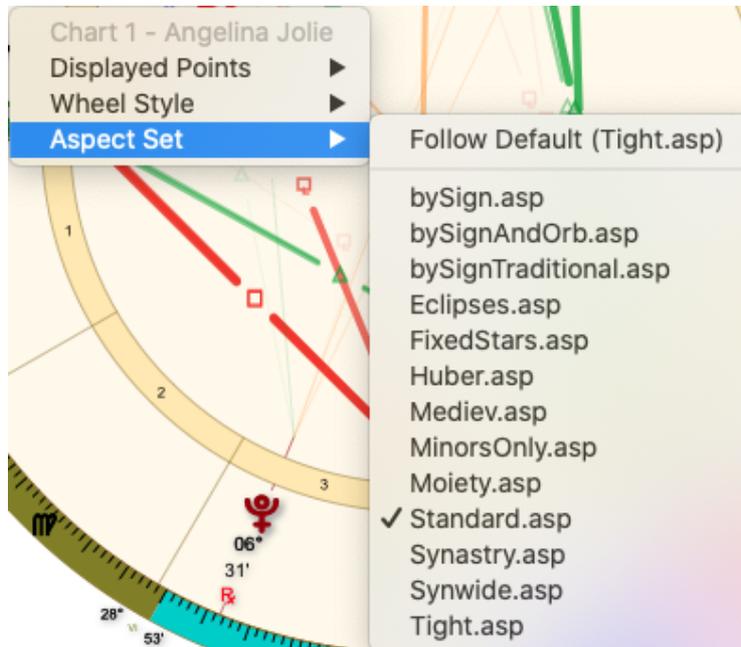
- Clicking on **Displayed Points** another menu is displayed from which you can choose the "Point Set" to be displayed. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Point Set" that is set in Preferences.



- Clicking on **Wheel Style** displays a list of styles of the appropriate type for the number of charts displayed, so you can select a different Wheel to be used. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Wheel Style" that is set in Preferences for the number of charts displayed.

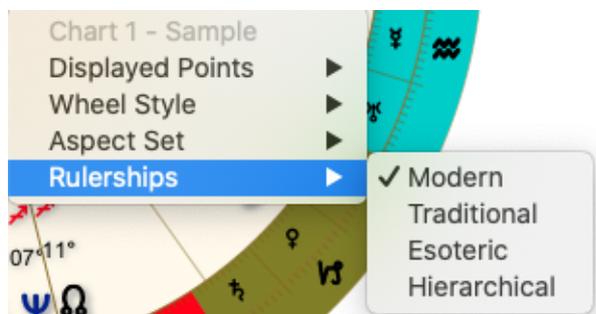


- If you click on **Aspect Set**, a list drops down with the aspect set currently being used ticked. You can then choose a different aspect set to be used by clicking on it. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Aspect Set" that is set in Preferences.



**NOTE:** For some specialized wheel styles different options may be available: For example with the "DecRuler" or "SgnRuler" wheel styles the rulerships used in the chart can be changed:

- Right-click (or control+click) anywhere in a ring of the **wheel(s)**, or in the empty space outside of the chart(s), and a pop-up menu is displayed.

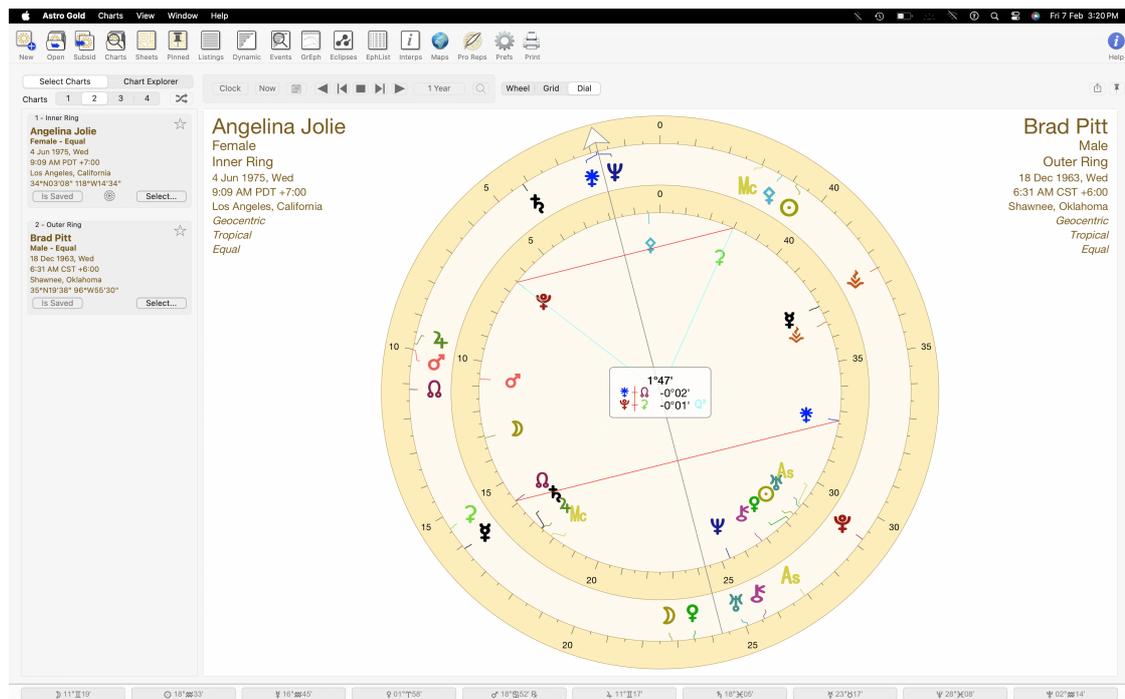


Note: When the DecRuler chart is being used, and Traditional rulerships are selected, the decans are the Chaldean (Ptolemy) rulers.

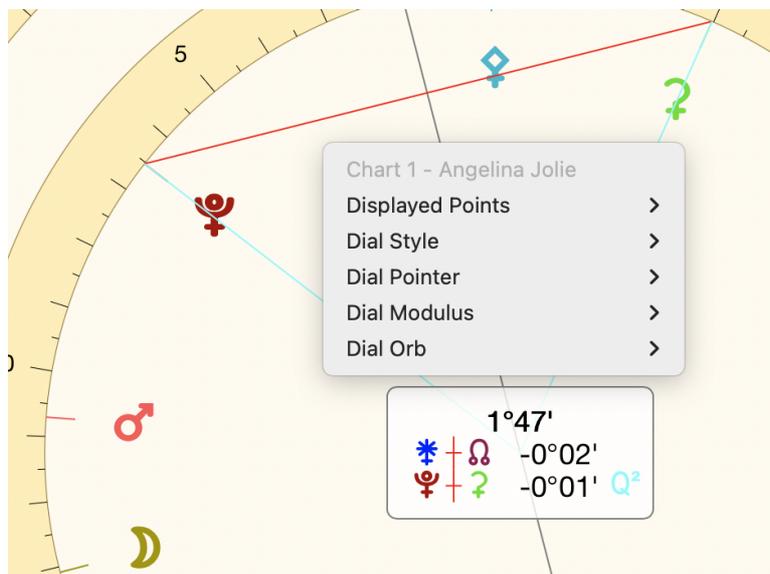
## Dial

Below is a Dial using a 45° modulus.

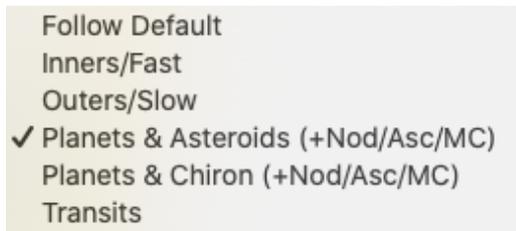
You can set the modulus in the Preferences menu/Wheels tab)



➤ Right-click (or control+click) anywhere in the **dial(s)** window and a pop-up menu is displayed.



- Clicking on **Displayed Points** another menu is displayed from which you can choose the "Point Set" to be displayed. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Point Set" that is set in Preferences.

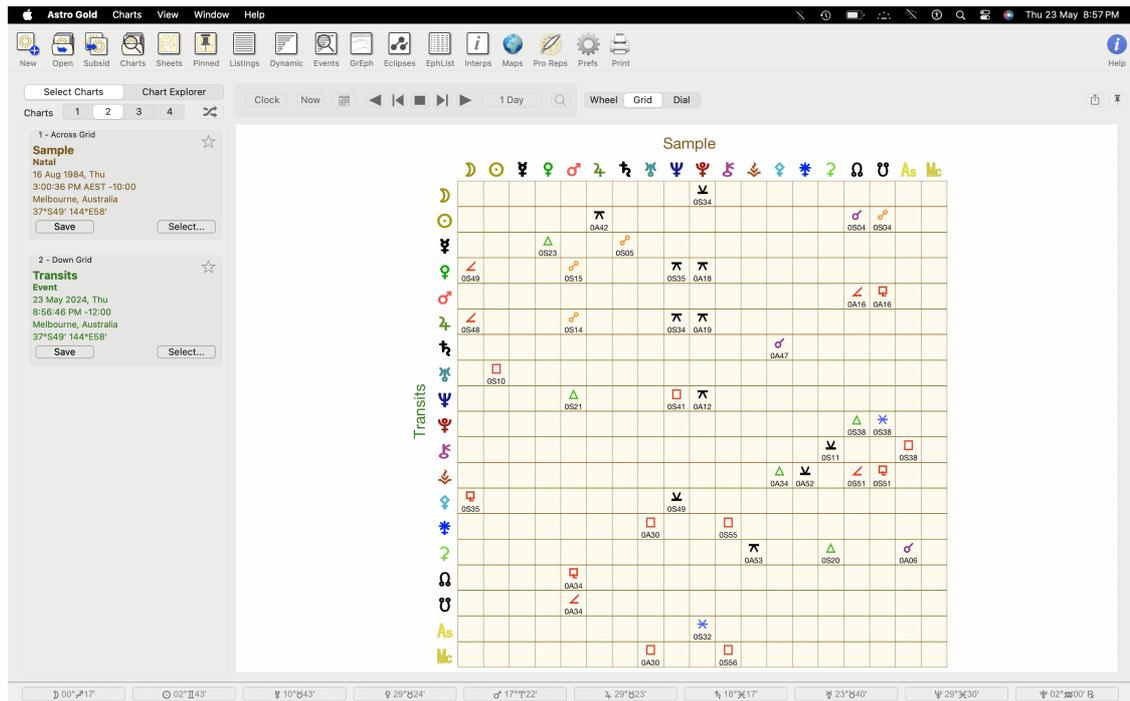


- Clicking on **Dial Style** displays a list of styles of the appropriate type for the number of charts displayed, so you can select a different Dial to be used. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Dial Style" that is set in Preferences for the number of charts displayed. You can also open the [Wheel Editor](#) from this pop up menu.
- If you have more than one chart selected clicking on **Dial Pointer** allows you to specify which chart in the dial the pointer applies to.
- Clicking on **Dial Modulus** allows you set the modulus to use for the dial.
- Clicking on **Dial Orb** allows you set the orb to use for the midpoints.

## Grid

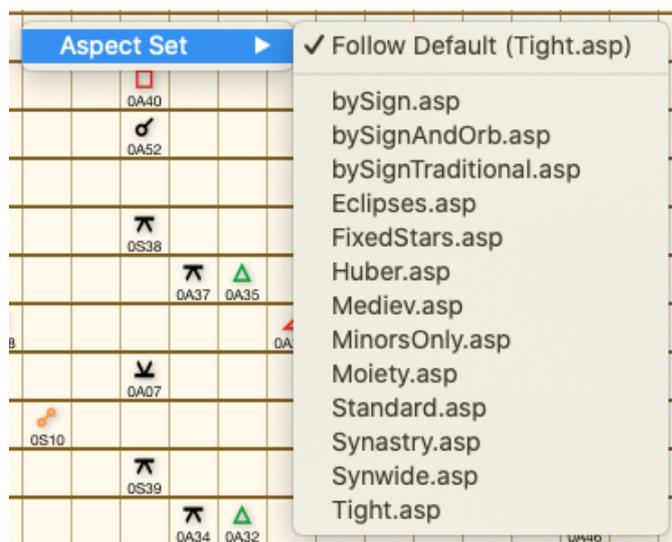
When you click the **Grid** button if ..

- only one chart is selected, then a single chart aspect grid will be displayed.
- two or three natal charts are selected, then a synastry aspect grid for the inner and outer ring charts will be displayed.
- two or three charts are selected with the inner ring being a natal chart, and the outer ring a transits (or subsidiary) chart, then a transits or subsidiary chart to natal chart aspect grid will be displayed.
- three charts are selected then the middle ring chart is never displayed.
- four charts are selected then the two middle ring charts are never displayed.



Sample's natal planets across the top and the current transits down the side, using the Tight aspect set (1 degree orbs)

- Right-click (or control+click) anywhere in the **grid** and a pop-up menu is displayed. If you click on the one option, **Aspect Set**, a list drops down with the aspect set currently being used ticked. You can then choose a different aspect set to be used by clicking on it. "Follow Default" simply displays the default aspect set that is selected in Preferences.



### Transits Snapshot

As you can see in the grid above, it is easy to get a snapshot of a person's current transits by setting things up as below:

1. In [Preferences](#) the *Tight* "Aspect Set" is selected (because, as shipped from the factory, it only has 1° orbs)
2. For Chart 1 the *Natal* chart of interest is selected
3. For Chart 2 a *Current Transits* chart is selected (defaults to the Home Location, but this can be edited and changed for this chart if necessary)
4. In the Display Controls *Grid* is selected

The result is that we are seeing only the natal person's current transits. It is dead easy with this kind of graphic information to see that currently there's mainly four that stand out as stronger energy and potential stress areas:

- transiting Jupiter semisquaring the natal Moon, opposing natal Mars, and quincunxing both natal Neptune and Pluto
- transiting Uranus squaring the natal Sun
- transiting Neptune trine natal Mars, squaring natal Neptune and quincunxing natal Pluto
- transiting Pluto aspecting the natal nodal axis (trine the North node and sextile the South node)
- transiting Chiron squaring the natal Ascendent

**NOTE:** Anywhere you can access a pop-up context menu using the mouse by right-clicking or by control+click, you can also use the touchpad. However to use the touchpad you may need to turn the right-click (called secondary click) option on in your Mac's Preferences/Trackpad .

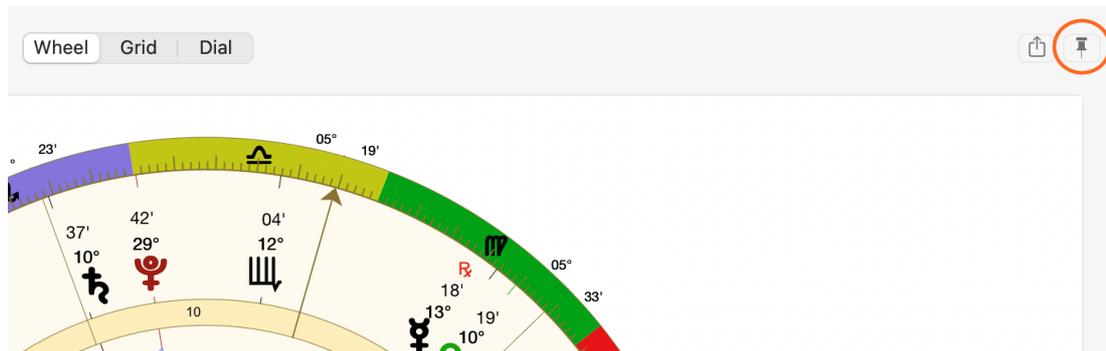
## Pinning a Wheel, Grid or Dial

You are not limited to only being able to display a single wheel, grid or dial in the Viewing Area of the Main Screen. You can have as many different wheels, grids or dials simultaneously open as you like. You do this by "pinning" each wheel, dial or grid you want kept open (until you explicitly close it). Once one of these chart views has been pinned it remains permanently displayed in its own individual window that you can resize, move or minimize as you wish.

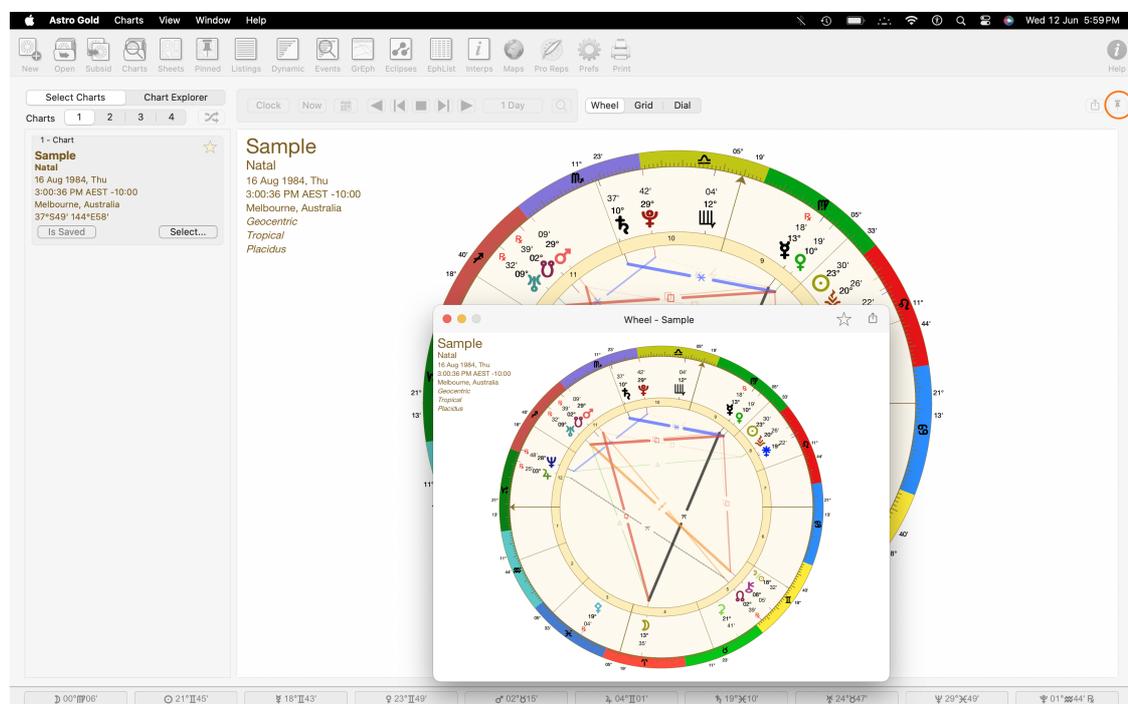
You can keep track of, and manage, all your pinned charts in the [Pinned Astro Sheets Manager](#).

### >> To Pin a Wheel, Grid or Dial

1. While a wheel, grid or dial is displayed in the Viewing Area of the Main Screen, click on the little **Pin** icon in the top right corner, circled below in orange.



2. This will create a new window containing what was displayed in the Viewing Area.



These *pinned views* (i.e. separate floating windows) can be re-sized, moved, minimized and remembered across Astro Gold sessions, until you choose to close them - which you can do directly by closing the pinned window, or from within the [Pinned Astro Sheets Manager](#).

### 5.7.1 Viewing Area

Once one or more charts have been selected in the Selected Charts pane (see [working with charts](#) for how to do this) they will be displayed in the "Viewing Area" (see [Screen Areas](#)).

You can control the form in which the charts are displayed by using the "Display Controls". The main display controls for this are the three buttons at the top of the "Viewing Area", which allow you to either display the chart as a (single or multi) Wheel or Dial, or as a single or two chart chart Grid.



When you click the **Wheel** or **Dial** button if ..

- only one chart is selected in the Selected Charts pane, then a Wheel/Dial will be displayed.
- two charts are selected in the Selected Charts pane, then a biWheel/biDial will be displayed.
- three charts are selected in the Selected Charts pane, then a triWheel/triDial will be displayed.
- four charts are selected in the Selected Charts pane, then a quadriWheel/quadiDial will be displayed.

Viewing options for the different display types:

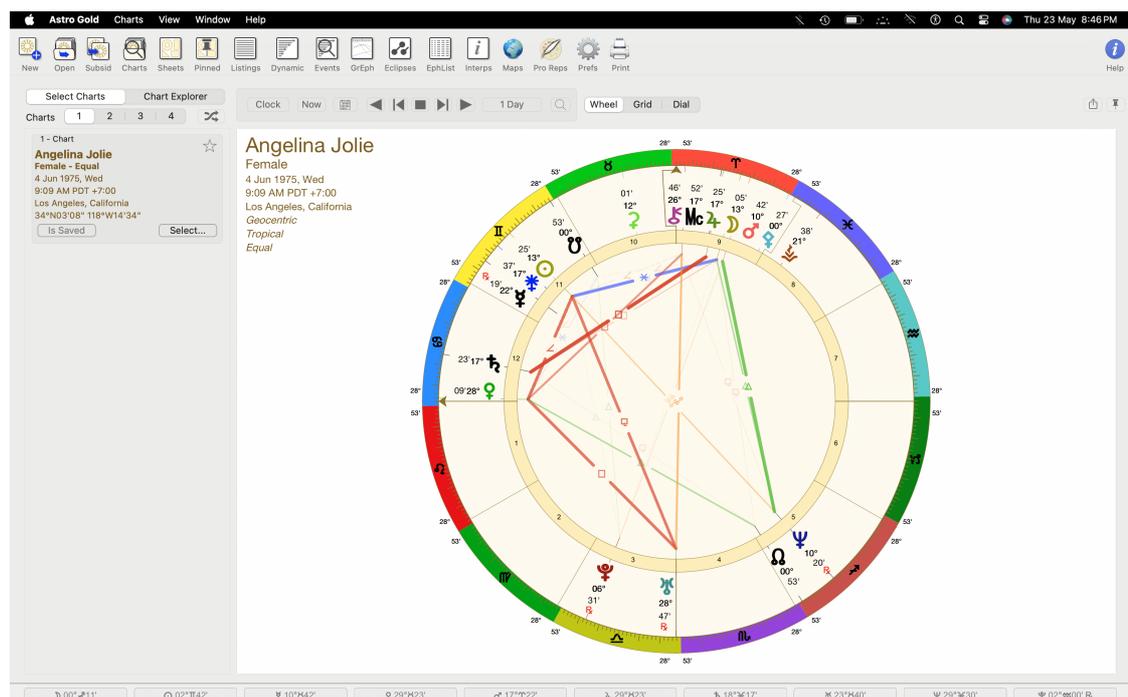
[Wheel](#)

[Grid](#)

[Dial](#)

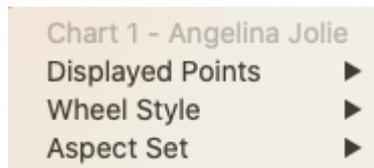
### 5.7.1.1 Wheel

Below is a Wheel displaying 1 chart.

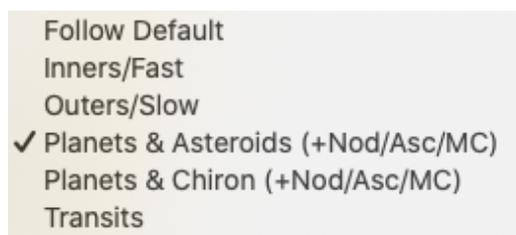


Depending on what wheel style is being used there are various options available directly from the Viewing Area. For a standard single wheel...

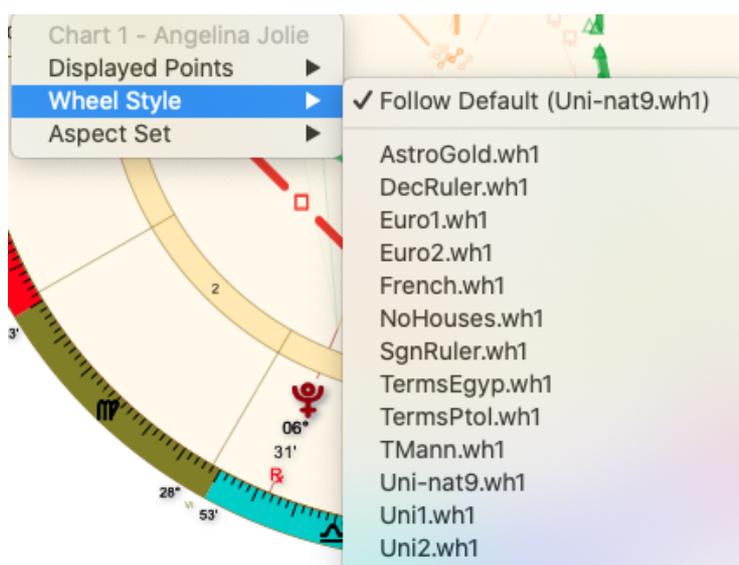
- Right-click (or control+click) anywhere near the center of the **wheel(s)** and a pop-up menu is displayed.



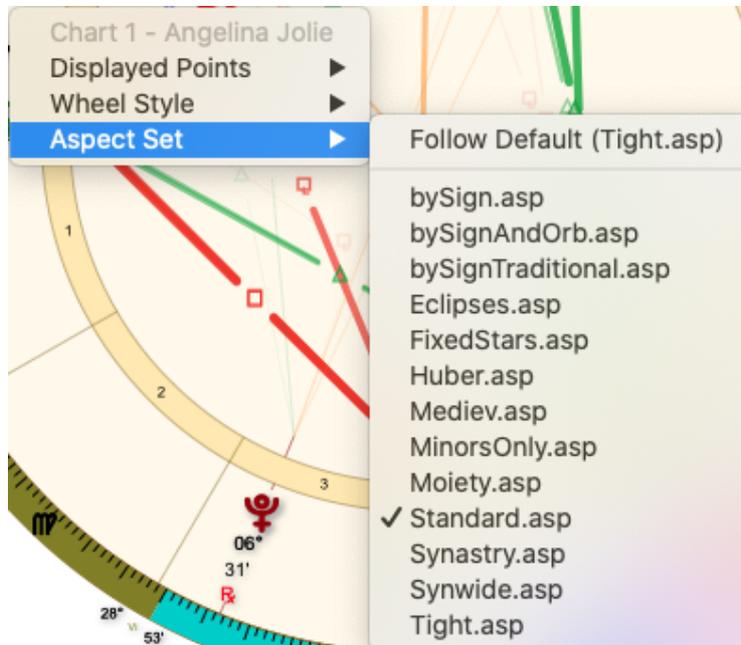
- Clicking on **Displayed Points** another menu is displayed from which you can choose the "Point Set" to be displayed. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Point Set" that is set in Preferences.



- Clicking on **Wheel Style** displays a list of styles of the appropriate type for the number of charts displayed, so you can select a different Wheel to be used. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Wheel Style" that is set in Preferences for the number of charts displayed.

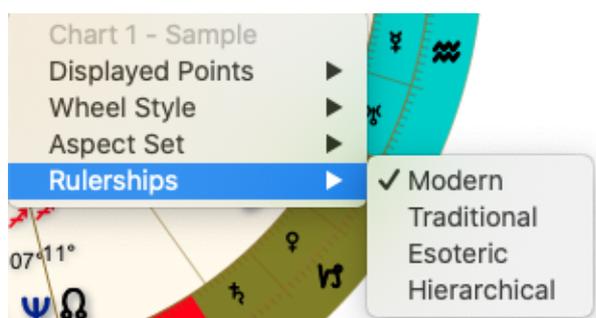


- If you click on **Aspect Set**, a list drops down with the aspect set currently being used ticked. You can then choose a different aspect set to be used by clicking on it. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Aspect Set" that is set in Preferences.



For some specialized wheel styles different options may be available: For example with the "DecRuler" or "SgnRuler" wheel styles the rulerships used in the chart can be changed:

- Right-click (or control+click) anywhere near the center of the **wheel(s)** and a pop-up menu is displayed.

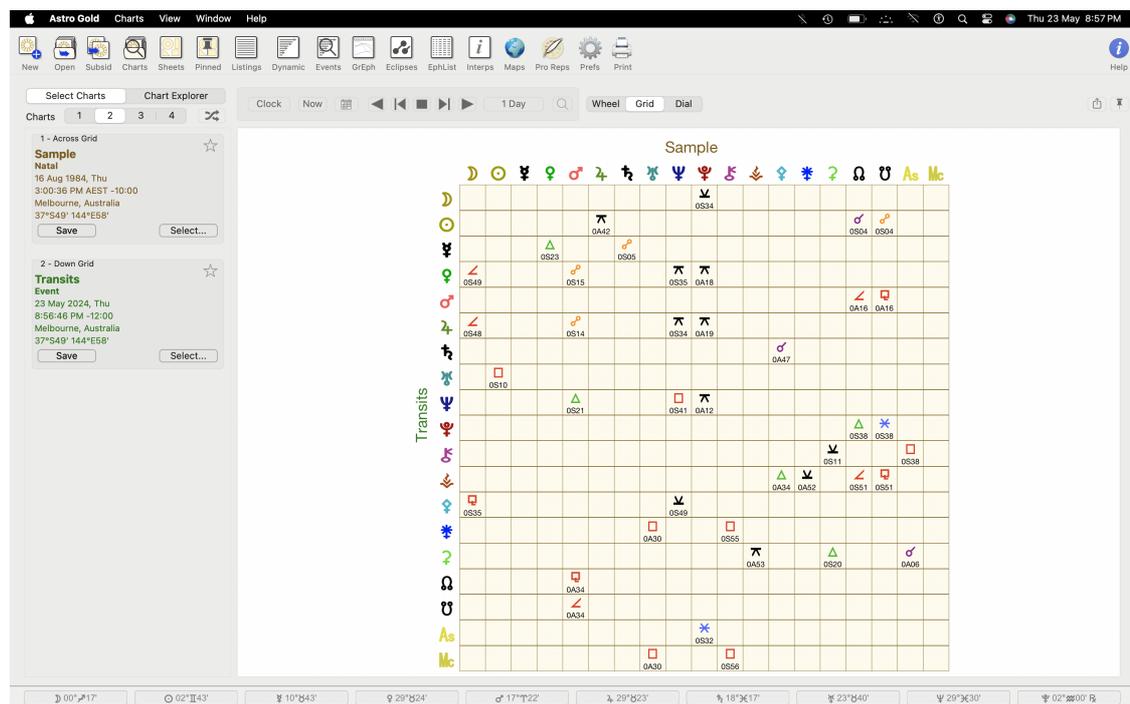


**NOTE:** Anywhere you can access a pop-up context menu using the mouse by right-clicking or by control+click (for example on a chart title), you can also use the touchpad. However to use the touchpad you may need to turn the right-click (called secondary click) option on in your Mac's Preferences/Trackpad .

#### 5.7.1.2 Grid

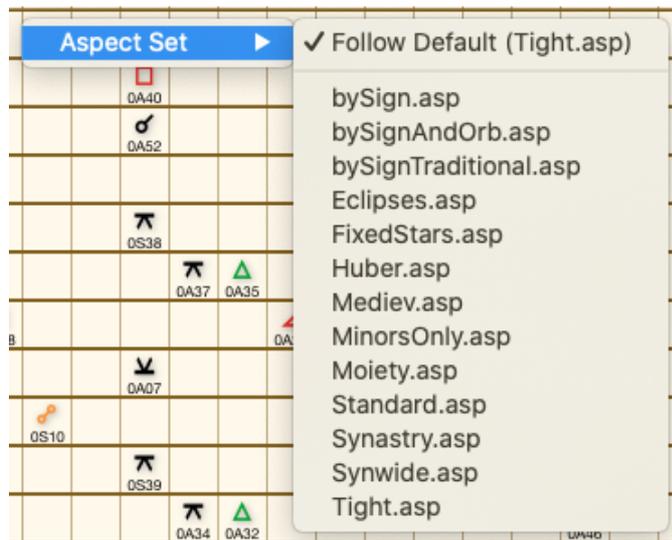
When you click the **Grid** button if ..

- only one chart is selected, then a single chart aspect grid will be displayed.
- two or three natal charts are selected, then a synastry aspect grid for the inner and outer ring charts will be displayed.
- two or three charts are selected with the inner ring being a natal chart, and the outer ring a transits (or subsidiary) chart, then a transits or subsidiary chart to natal chart aspect grid will be displayed.
- three charts are selected then the middle ring chart is never displayed.
- four charts are selected then the two middle ring charts are never displayed.



Sample's natal planets across the top and the current transits down the side, using the Tight aspect set (1 degree orbs)

- Right-click (or control+click) anywhere in the **grid** and a pop-up menu is displayed. If you click on the one option, **Aspect Set**, a list drops down with the aspect set currently being used ticked. You can then choose a different aspect set to be used by clicking on it. "Follow Default" simply displays the default aspect set that is selected in Preferences.



### Transit Snapshot

As you can see from the grid displayed above, it is easy to get a snapshot of a person's current transits by setting things up as below:

1. In [Preferences](#) the *Tight* "Aspect Set" is selected (because, as shipped from the factory, it only has 1° orbs)
2. For Chart 1 the *Natal* chart of interest is selected
3. For Chart 2 a *Current Transits* chart is selected (defaults to the Home Location, but this can be edited and changed for this chart if necessary)
4. In the Display Controls *Grid* is selected

The result is that we are seeing only the natal person's current transits. It is dead easy with this kind of graphic information to see that currently there's mainly four that stand out as stronger energy and potential stress areas:

- transiting Saturn square Mars
- transiting Chiron quincunx natal Mercury
- transiting Uranus quincunx natal Neptune and Pluto
- transiting Pluto square natal Chiron

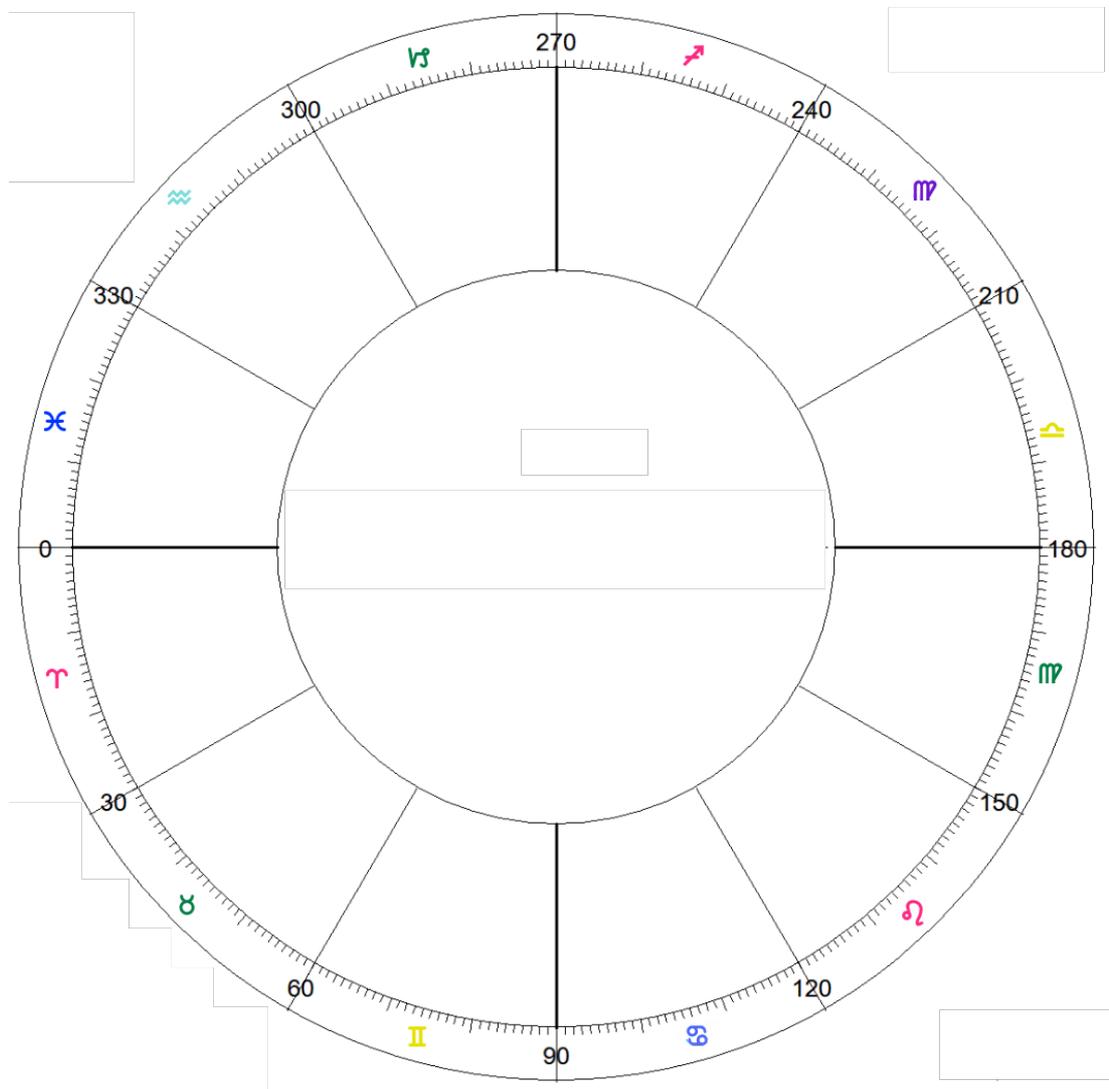
#### 5.7.1.3 What are Dials?

Like a wheel, dials are a way of viewing an astrology chart.

A chart wheel displays the zodiac around a circle (called a wheel) and this circle is divided into 360 degrees (of ecliptic longitude).

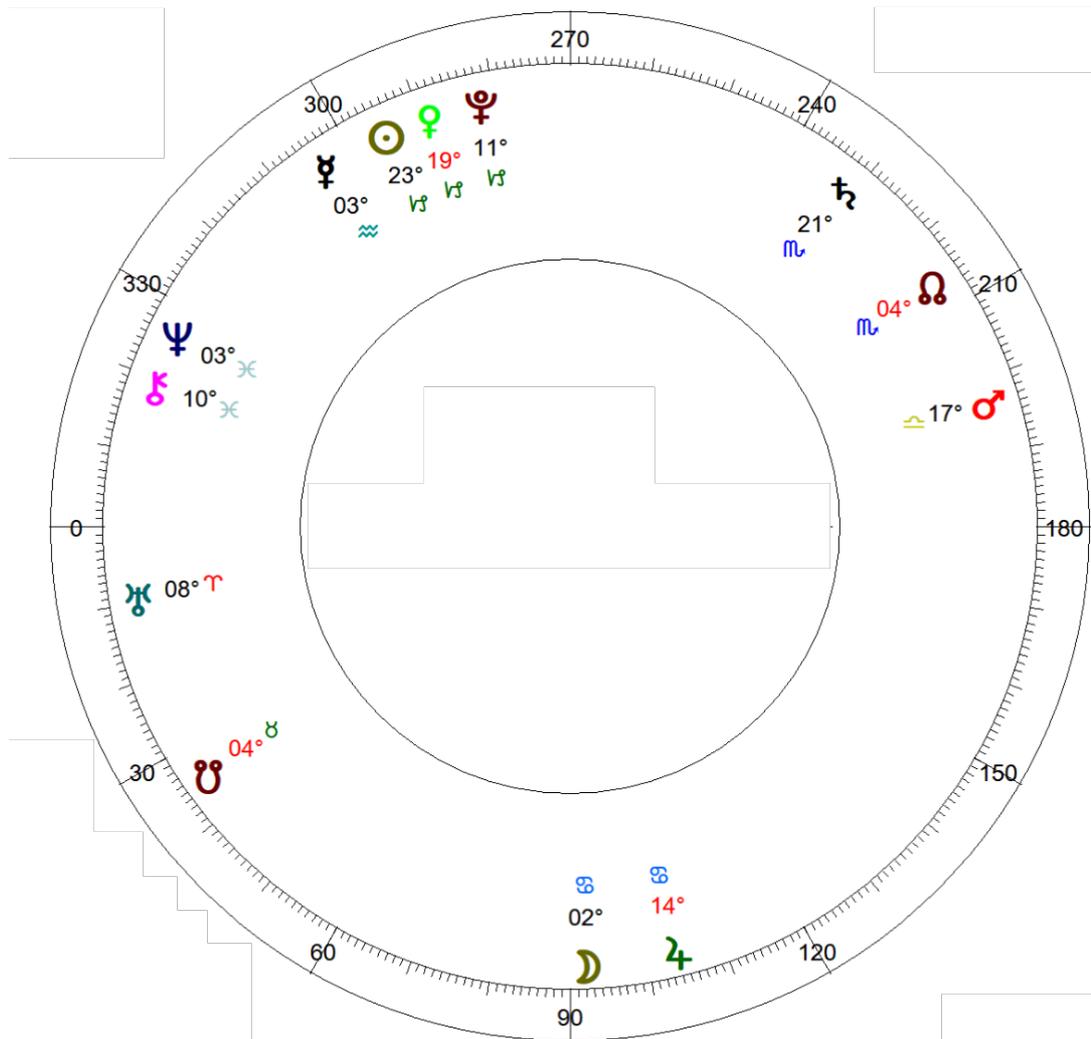
The wheel is also grouped into 12 equal sized contiguous groups, called zodiac signs (Aries, Taurus, Gemini etc), each sign being a 30 degree section of the wheel. An example

is below, with the beginning of the zodiac (0 Aries) placed in the middle of the wheel on the left, and the remaining signs follow on in 30 degree sections from there.



The 360 degree chart wheel

Then, according to where planets are positioned in the sky at the time of the chart, they are placed in the chart wheel at the corresponding degree of the zodiac.



The 360 degree chart wheel - with planets

With the planets in their respective positions around the zodiac we can then measure the shortest longitudinal arc between them, i.e. measure how many zodiac degrees they are apart from each other along the shortest route around the wheel between them. As is commonly known, certain amounts of degrees between the planets are identified as "aspects", each aspect having a name. The main aspects are below:

0 degrees (same position) is called a Conjunction ♃

30 is called a Semisextile ♁

45 a Semisquare ⚡

60 a Sextile ♁

90 a Square ⚡

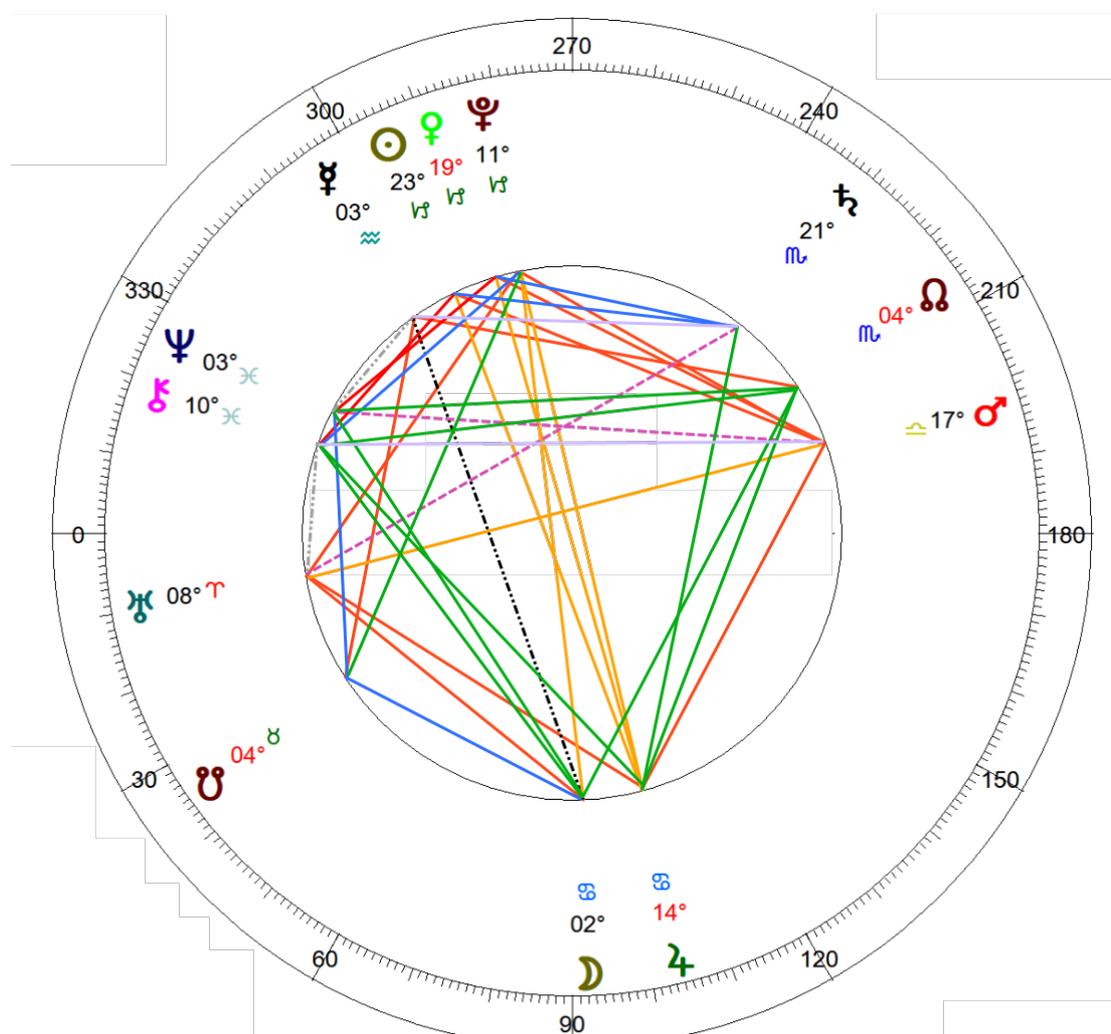
120 a Trine ♁

135 a Sesquiquadrate ♃

150 a Quincunx (or inconjunction) ♀

180 an Opposition ♂

When the degrees that two planets are apart, on the section of the wheel where they are closest together, comes exactly (or close) to one of the above listed amounts, we say there is an "aspect" between the two planets. We usually also draw a line between those two planets in the chart wheel so we can see this aspect visually. Initially it may not be easy to see what aspect each line refers to, but with color coding and familiarity it soon becomes more obvious. Below is an example where the aspects have been represented by colored lines between the two planets in question:



The 360 degree chart wheel (1st Harmonic) - with all planetary aspects

However another way of viewing these aspects is by using a Dial. A key purpose of Dials is to make seeing aspects between the planets easier than it is in a chart wheel, which it often does. But at a minimum it is an alternative way of viewing aspects. Another key

purpose of a Dial is to easily see midpoints, which for the majority of midpoints is often difficult to do in a wheel.

A midpoint is the point which is longitudinally in the middle of two planets on the section of the chart wheel where the planets are closest. So if an aspect also exists between two planets, then the midpoint will be midway along the aspect (line) between them.

The basic underlying principle of the Dial is that of harmonics. Let's return to the aspects listed above to understand what harmonics are.

## Harmonics

Harmonics are essentially "harmonies", like in music, which are themselves different resonating vibrations, or resonances. Each musical tone that makes up the harmony is vibrating at a different resonance. And all the aspects in astrology are based on harmonics. As such it is really harmonics that are allowing us to see the patterns (initially shown by the aspects) in an astrology chart.

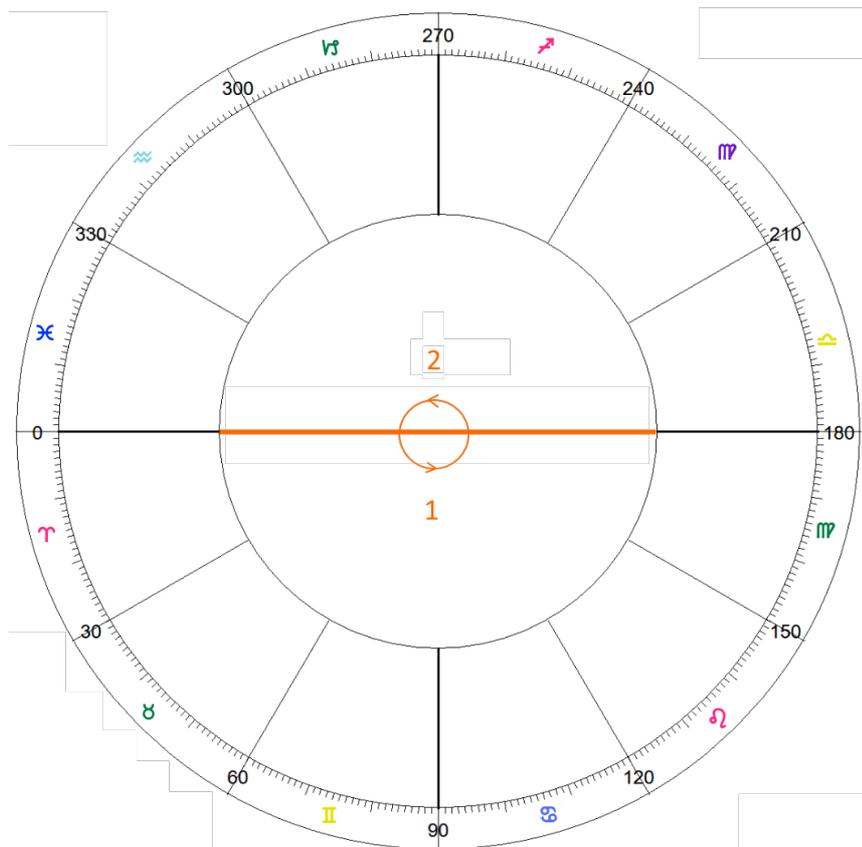
When we divide a circle up into equal parts, each divided part has a different tone (or resonance) to that of the original whole circle, and in this way with each division of the circle we are creating the different harmonics. It is therefore the denominator (what we are dividing the circle by) that signifies the harmonic.

Harmonics are therefore represented by whole numbers, starting with the number 1. However if we divide the circle by 1 we are not dividing it up at all, as the result is still the whole circle. Thus the 360 degree chart wheel as we normally use it is already functioning in the *1st* harmonic.

Within a human being the facet of the life force (that each planet represents) operates according to its own energy, fulfilling a certain function. In a normal 360 degree chart wheel, one or more planets directly connect with each other when they are separated by an aspect (a certain amount of degrees apart on the chart wheel, as listed above). And each aspect involved in these connections is of a certain harmonic.

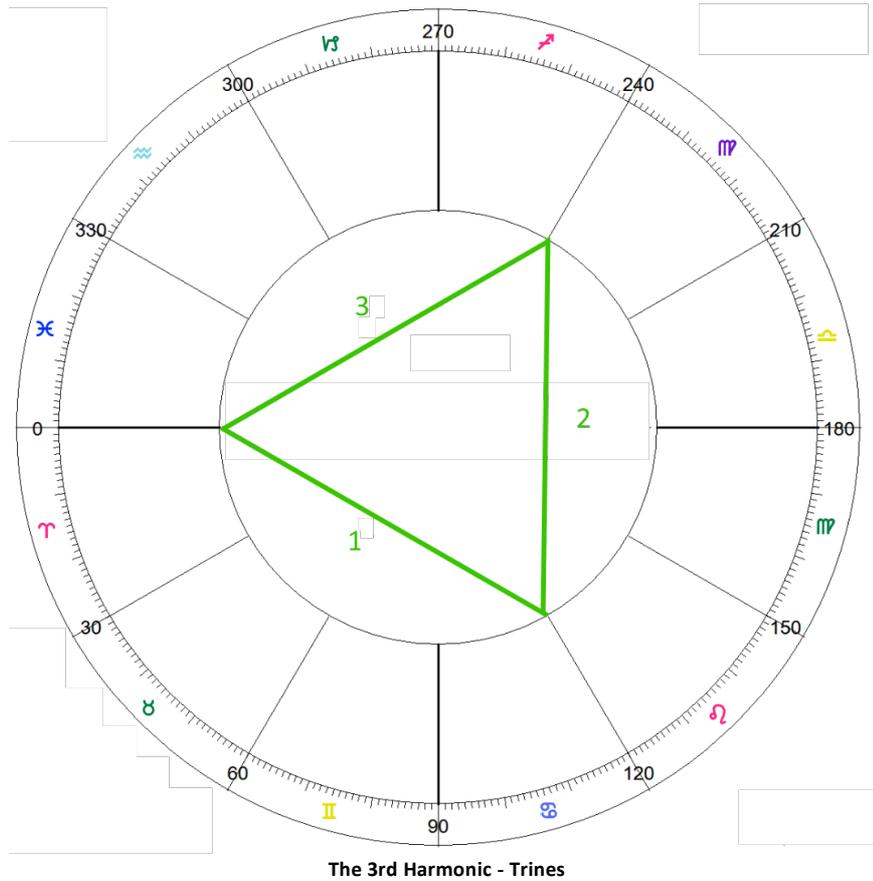
In the 360 degree chart wheel functioning in the initial harmonic of 1, the primary initial aspect based on that harmonic is the **Conjunction**. Planets in a conjunction are all in the same (single, 1) place on the chart wheel, and thus the harmonic the conjunction resonates to is the harmonic of 1. In other words the 360 degree wheel is divided by the harmonic of 1, giving us the conjunction aspect. Further harmonics after 1 produce the remaining aspects we use in the chart.

With the harmonic of 2 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 2 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 180 degrees ( $360 / 2 = 180$ ), which is the aspect of an Opposition. 2 oppositions joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel. Below it appears as if there is only one opposition going from 0 degrees to 180 degrees. However that same opposition can also be read as going from 180 degrees back round to 360 degrees, or 0 degrees in other words, as well.

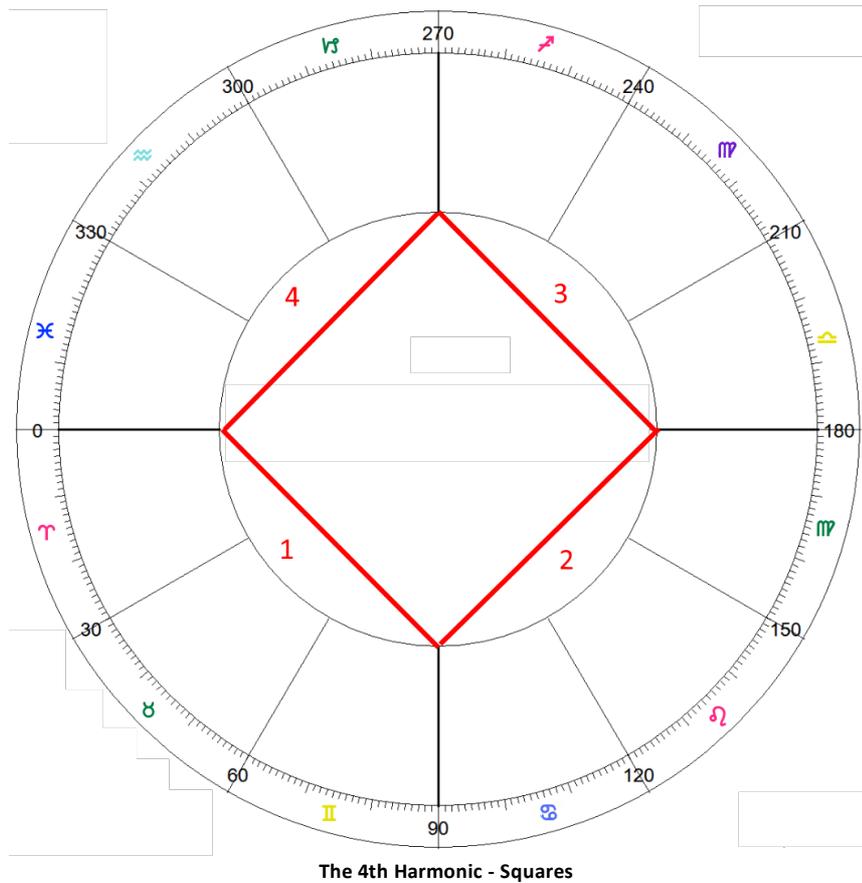


The 2nd Harmonic - Oppositions

With the harmonic of 3 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 3 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 120 degrees ( $360 / 3 = 120$ ), which is the aspect of a *Trine*. 3 trines joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel.

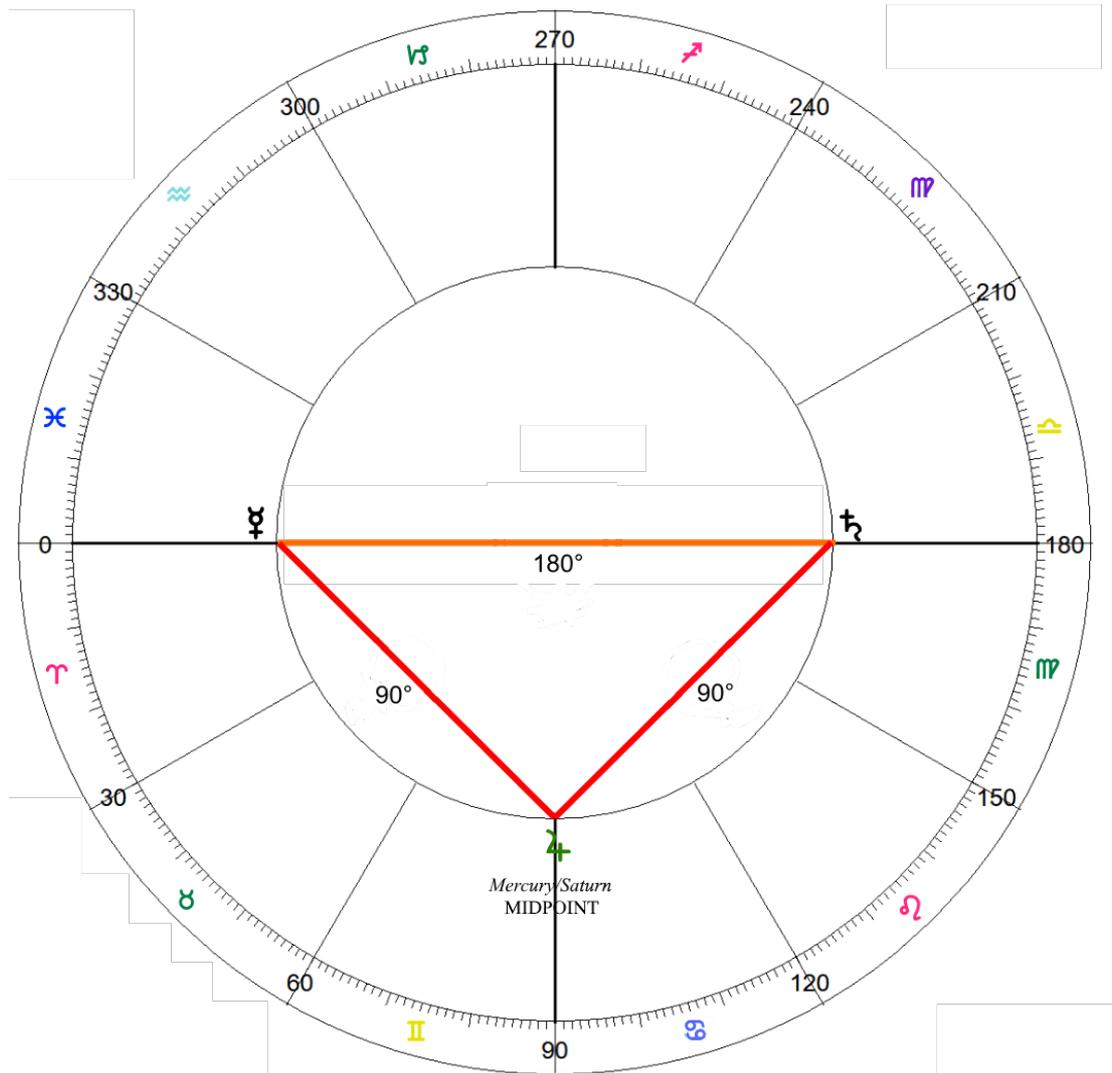


With the harmonic of 4 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 4 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 90 degrees ( $360 / 4 = 90$ ), which is the aspect of a *Square*. 3 squares joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel.



When 2 squares (90 degrees each) are added together they come to 180 degrees (an opposition). The midpoint of the two ends of an opposition is the point on the opposition aspect where these two squares (each half an opposition) meet and join together. Below Mercury and Saturn are in an opposition (180 degree aspect). The midpoint of Mercury and Saturn is exactly mid-way between them, and below Jupiter is sitting on that mid-way point, so is exactly conjunct the midpoint of Mercury and Saturn.

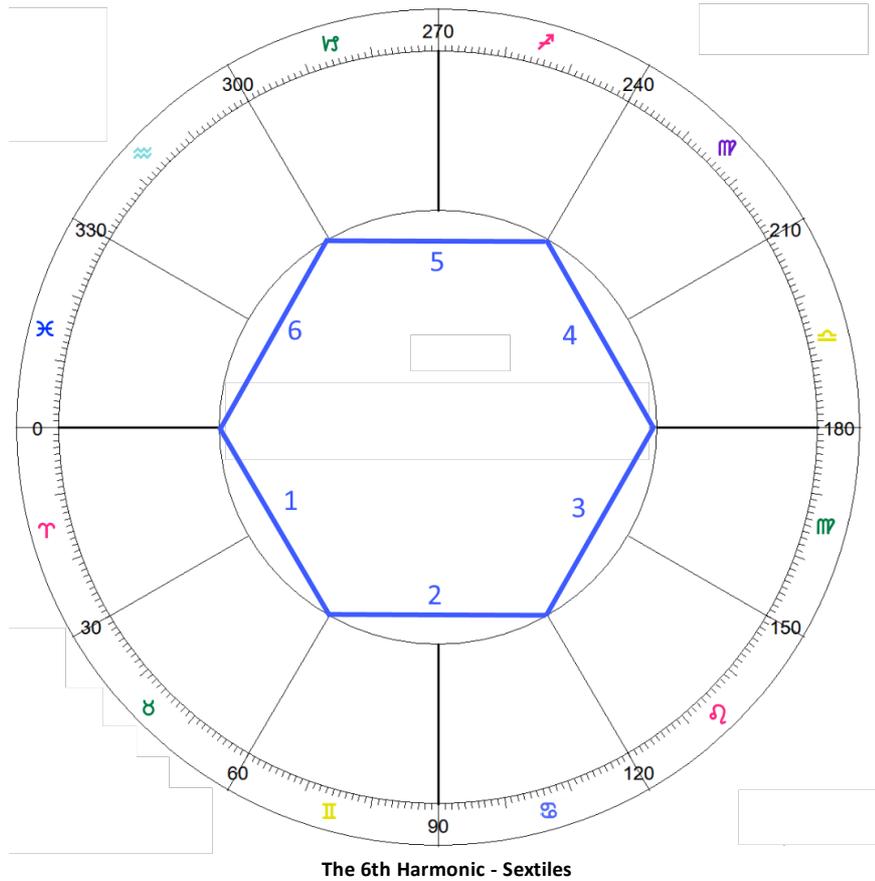
Because that midpoint degree is half of an opposition ( $180 / 2 = 90$ ) there is also a square aspect between Jupiter and Mercury on one end of the opposition, and also a square aspect between Jupiter and Saturn on the other end of the opposition. This is how harmonics work: the harmonic of 2, when then multiplied by 2, equals 4; which is the harmonic of the square aspect. So an opposition contains within itself two squares.



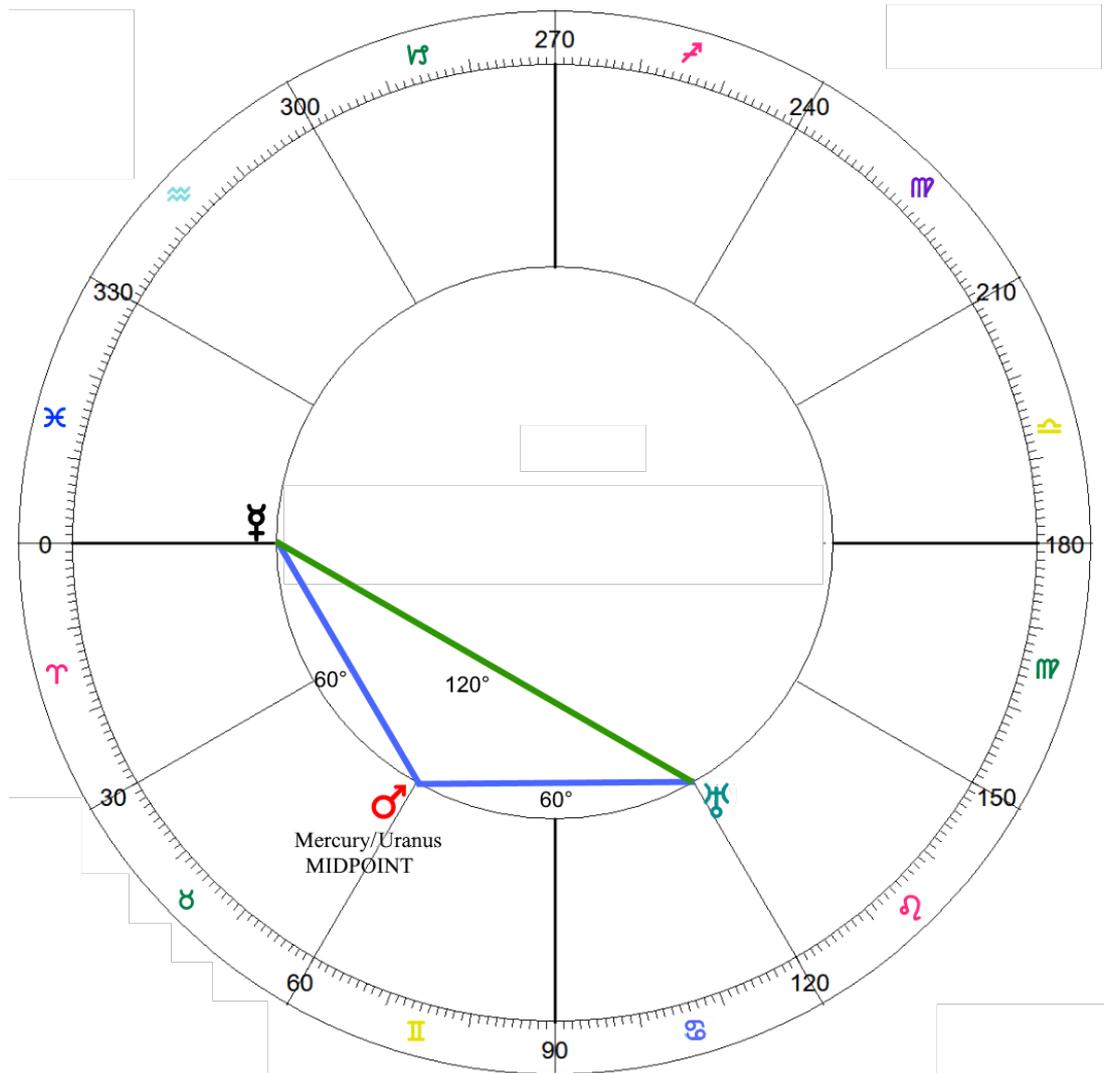
The 4th Harmonic - the 2nd harmonic midpoint

With the harmonic of 5 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 5 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 72 degrees ( $360 / 5 = 72$ ), which is the aspect of a *Quintile*. 5 quintiles joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel. A quintile is not usually regarded as a main aspect, although it is often included in a chart.

With the harmonic of 6 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 6 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 60 degrees ( $360 / 6 = 60$ ), which is the aspect of a *Sextile*. 6 sextiles joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel.



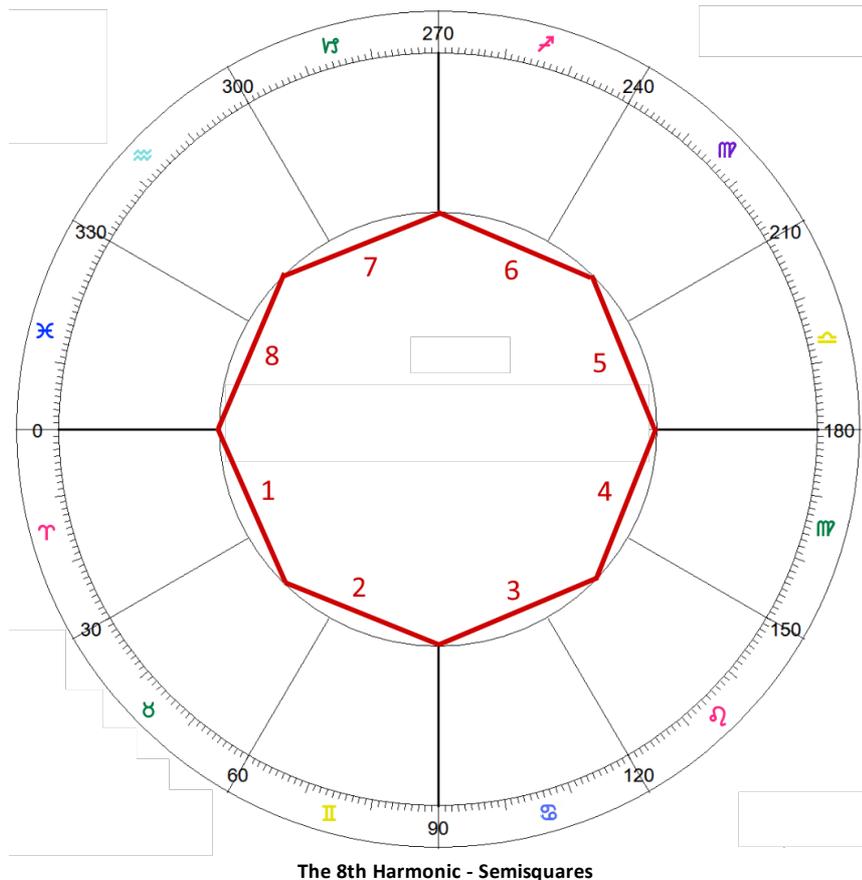
Because a sextile is 60 degrees, two sextiles added contiguously together makes a trine (120 degrees). In this vein we can see below that Mars, sextile Mercury and sextile Uranus, is also on the midpoint between Mercury and Uranus.



The 6th Harmonic - the 3rd harmonic midpoint

With the harmonic of 7 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 7 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 51 degrees & 26 minutes ( $360 / 7 = 51.42$ ), which is the aspect of a *Septile*. 7 septiles joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel. A septile is not regarded as a main aspect, although it is sometimes included in a chart.

With the harmonic of 8 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 8 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 45 degrees ( $360 / 8 = 45$ ), which is the aspect of a *Semisquare*. 8 semisquares joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel.



Because a semisquare is 45 degrees, two semisquares added contiguously together makes a square (90 degrees). In this vein we can see below that Venus, semisquare Mercury and semisquare Jupiter, is also on the midpoint between Mercury and Jupiter, which are in a square aspect with each other.

Likewise Jupiter, semisquare Venus and semisquare Pluto is also on the midpoint between Venus and Pluto, which are in a square aspect with each other. Additionally Jupiter, which is square Mercury and square Saturn as well, is therefore also on the midpoint between Mercury and Saturn, which are in an opposition aspect with each other. In this situation Jupiter is at the midpoint of two different pairs of planets, which is giving it an increased significance in the chart.

Finally Pluto, semisquare Jupiter and semisquare Saturn, is also on the midpoint between Jupiter and Saturn, which are in a square aspect with each other.

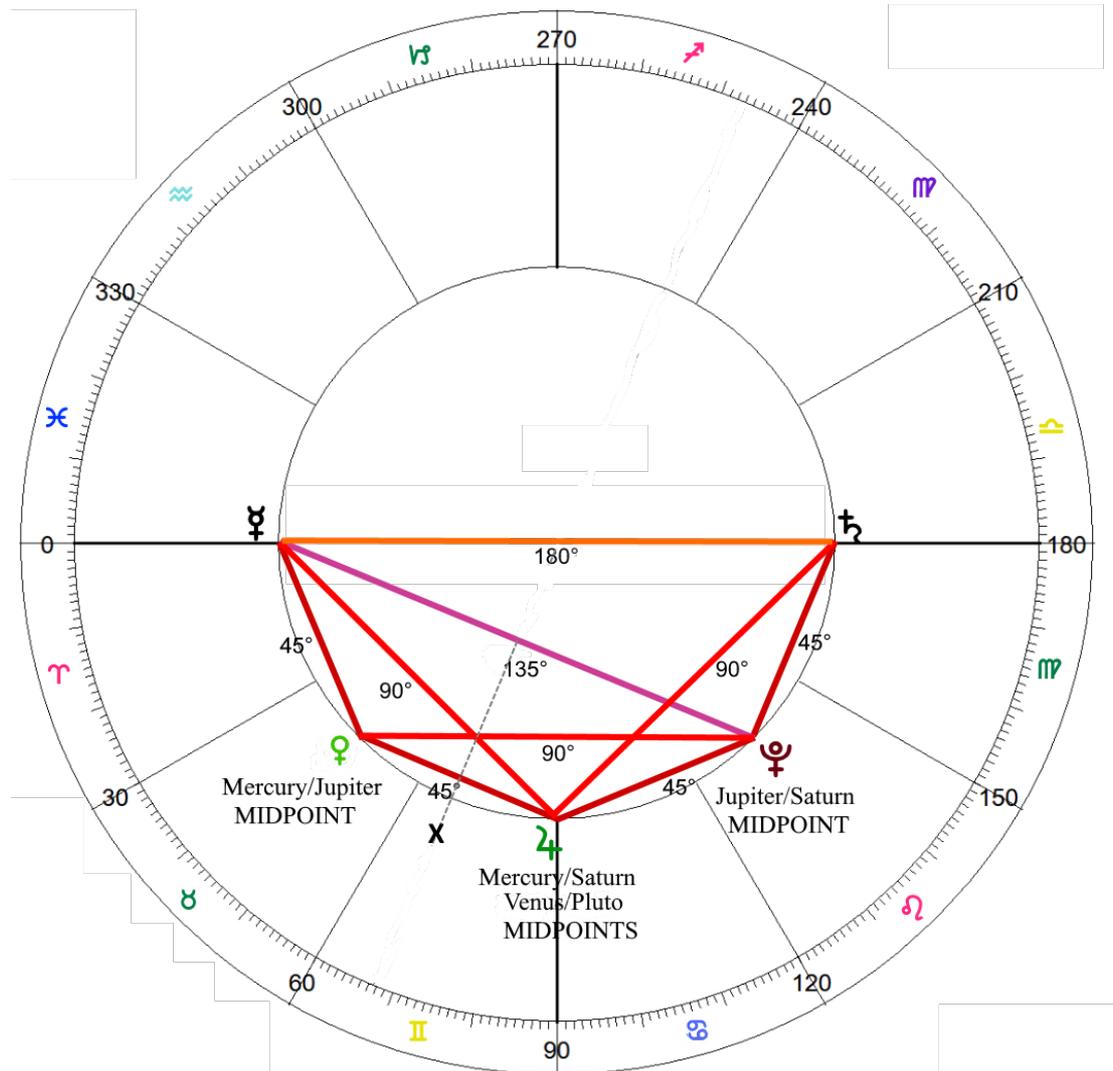
Additionally, with a semisquare being 45 degrees, three semisquares added contiguously together makes a *Sesquiquadrate* (135 degrees), which is shown between Mercury and Pluto. The midway point between these two planets, i.e. the midpoint between them, is where the "X" is drawn. Unlike all the previous examples there is no planet on that point, at the midpoint (the midway point between Mercury and Pluto on the side of the chart wheel where they are closest together). But that doesn't mean the midpoint doesn't exist - it does. Midpoints stand on their own whether there are planets on them or not.

Obviously there will always be a lot of midpoints in a chart (one between every possible pairing of planets/points), so in terms of the big picture when delineating an astrology chart, often they are a secondary consideration to aspects. They are usually more subtle, but not necessarily always less significant - they are sensitive points that can be correlated to factors related to the planets they are midpoints to.

In this example when any planet transits over the point where "X" is drawn it will have an impact on the functioning of Mercury and Pluto, over and above the affect of Mercury and Pluto being in a sesquiquadrate aspect with each other already has. A Gemini/3rd house influence will be added to the mix, along with the influence the transiting planet normally has (according to its inherent nature).

What we can see here is that the 8th harmonic contains all the other aspects that are a simple multiple of it:

45 x 1 = 45	(8th harmonic, semisquares)
45 x 2 = 90	(4th harmonic, squares)
45 x 3 = 135	(8th harmonic, sesquiquadrates)
45 x 4 = 180	(2nd harmonic, oppositions)



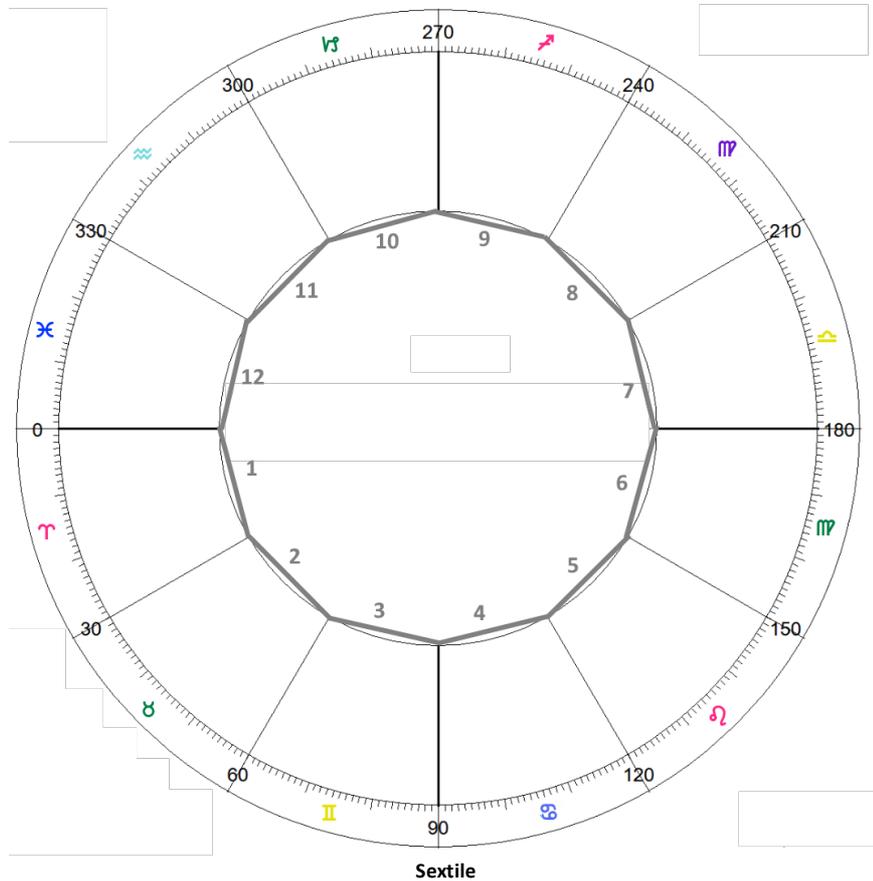
The 8th Harmonic - the 4th and 2nd harmonic midpoint

With the harmonic of 9 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 9 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 40 degrees ( $360 / 9 = 40$ ), which is the aspect of a *Novile*. 9 noviles joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel. A novile is not regarded as a main aspect, although it is sometimes included in a chart.

With the harmonic of 10 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 10 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 36 degrees ( $360 / 10 = 36$ ), which is the aspect of a *Decile*. 10 deciles joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel. A decile is not a main aspect, and is rarely included in a chart.

With the harmonic of 11 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 11 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 32 degrees and 44 minutes ( $360 / 11 = 32.73$ ), which is the aspect of a *Unidecile*. 11 unideciles joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel. A unidecile is not a main aspect, and is rarely included in a chart.

With the harmonic of 12 we divide the 360 degree wheel into 12 equal parts, giving us an aspect of 30 degrees ( $360 / 12 = 30$ ), which is the aspect of a *Semisextile*. 12 semisextiles joined contiguously together circumscribe the whole 360 degree wheel.



Because a semisextile is 30 degrees, two semisextiles added contiguously together makes a sextile (60 degrees). In this vein we can see below that the Sun, semisquare Mercury and semisquare Jupiter, is also on the midpoint between Mercury and Jupiter, which are in a square aspect with each other.

Likewise Jupiter, semisquare the Sun and semisquare Pluto is also on the midpoint between the Sun and Pluto, which are in a square aspect with each other. Additionally Jupiter, which is additionally square Mercury and square Saturn, is therefore also on the midpoint between Mercury and Saturn too, which are in an opposition aspect with each other. In this situation Jupiter is at the midpoint of two different pairs of planets, which is giving it an increased significance in the chart.

Finally Pluto, semisquare Jupiter and semisquare Saturn, is also on the midpoint between Jupiter and Saturn, which are in a square aspect with each other.

As well, with a semisquare being 45 degrees, three semisquares added contiguously together makes a *Sesquiquadrate* (135 degrees), which is shown between Mercury and Pluto. The midway point between these two planets, i.e. the midpoint between them, is

where the "X" is drawn. Unlike all the previous examples there is no planet on that point, at the midpoint (the midway point between Mercury and Pluto on the side of the chart wheel where they are closest together). But that doesn't mean the midpoint doesn't exist, it does. Midpoints stand on their own whether there are planets on them or not.

Obviously there will always be a lot of midpoints in a chart (one between every possible pairing of planets/points), so in terms of the big picture when delineating an astrology chart, often they are a secondary consideration to aspects. They are usually more subtle, but not necessarily always less significant - they are sensitive points that can be correlated to factors related to the planets they are midpoints to.

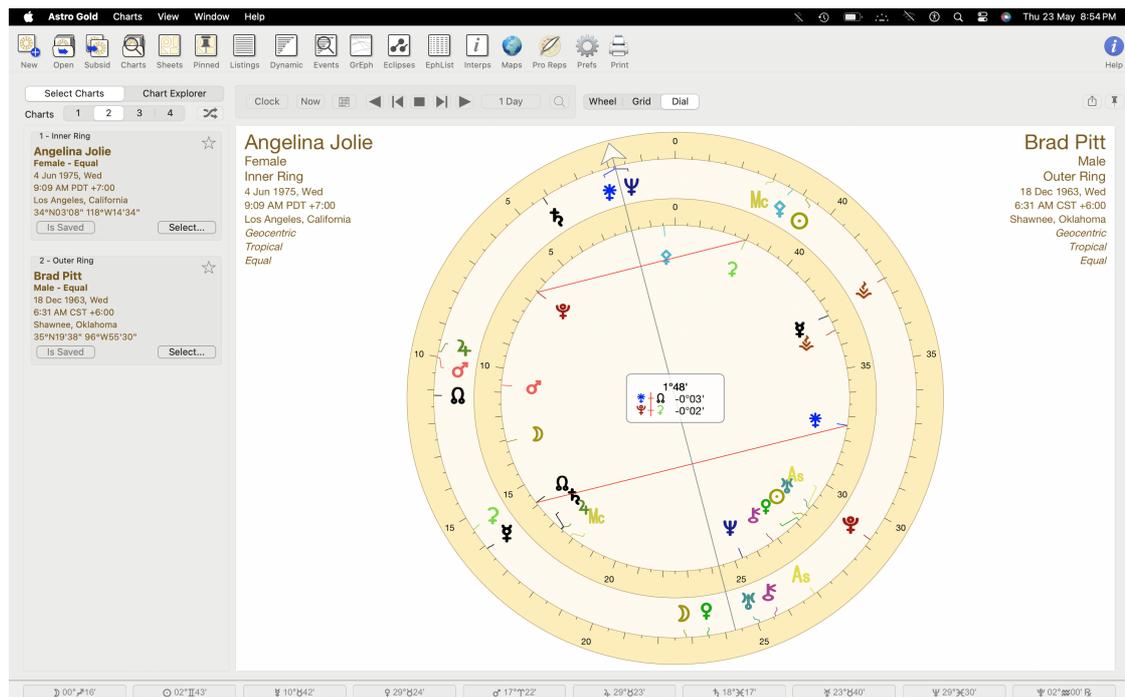
In this example when any planet transits over the point where "X" is drawn it will have an impact on the functioning of Mercury and Pluto, over and above the affect of Mercury and Pluto being in a sesquiquadrate aspect with each other already has. A Gemini/3rd house influence will be added to the mix, along with the influence the transiting planet normally has (according to its inherent nature).

What we can see here is that the 8th harmonic contains all the other aspects that are a simple multiple of it:

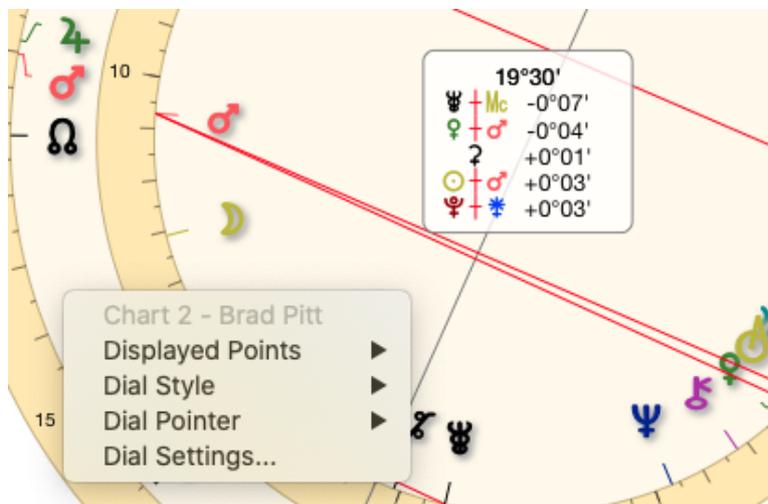
45 x 1 = 45	(8th harmonic, semisquares)
45 x 2 = 90	(4th harmonic, squares)
45 x 3 = 135	(8th harmonic, sesquiquadrates)
45 x 4 = 180	(2nd harmonic, oppositions)

#### 5.7.1.3.1 Using a Dial

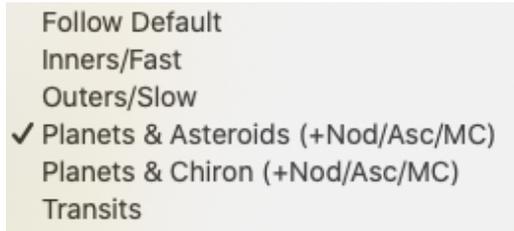
Showing below in the Viewing Area is a Dial using a 360° modulus (*you can set the modulus and orb in the [Preferences menu/Wheels](#) tab*)



- Right-click (or control+click) anywhere near the center of the **dial(s)** and a pop-up menu is displayed.



- Clicking on **Displayed Points** another menu is displayed from which you can choose the "Point Set" to be displayed. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Point Set" that is set in Preferences.



- Clicking on **Dial Style** displays a list of styles of the appropriate type for the number of charts displayed, so you can select a different Dial to be used. "Follow Default" simply displays the default "Dial Style" that is set in Preferences for the number of charts displayed.
- If you have more than one chart selected clicking on **Dial Pointer** allows you to specify which chart in the dial the pointer applies to.
- Clicking on **Dial Settings** takes you to the Preferences window, with the Wheels tab selected, where you can set the default Dial Modulus and Max Orb (bottom right of the window).

**NOTE:** Anywhere you can access a pop-up context menu using the mouse by right-clicking or by control+click (for example on a chart title), you can also use the touchpad. However to use the touchpad you may need to turn the right-click (called secondary click) option on in your Mac's Preferences/Trackpad .

### 5.7.2 Chart Explorer

Putting the "Selected Charts" pane in *Chart Explorer* mode enables you to click once on any point in any single or multi-chart wheel or dial, and display useful additional context-sensitive information about it (a double click brings up the Interpretations window with interpretations about that point).

#### >> To put the "Selected Charts" pane into Explorer Mode

- Click on **Chart Explorer** in the "Selection Panel" (see below).

For each point in a chart there are three main types of information possible: **Details**, chart **Aspects** and **Dynamic** aspects. You select which type of information you want to see in the "Selected Charts" pane by clicking on it at the bottom of the "Selected Charts" pane.

Regardless of the number of charts you have selected, the Chart Explorer gives information relating to points in Chart 1, the innermost chart if you have more than one chart selected, for both "Details" and "Aspects". If you select "Dynamic" as the information type, then the current transits are calculated and then applied to the points in Chart 1.

To select a chart point either select it from the dropdown list above the information panel, or click on the point in the displayed wheel in the "Viewing Area".

If the "Details" information type is selected you will see position and speed information about that point in the chart (longitude, latitude, right ascension, declination). If the "Aspects" information type is selected you will see a list of all the aspects for that point in Chart 1.

Below shows the information given for a point when the "Dynamic" information type is selected and Venus had been clicked in the wheel for Chart 1 in the "Viewing Area". It shows exact transit hits to Venus for a period of a year. The year is automatically set to start 6 months prior to the current date and end 6 months after the current date.

If a pair of points has an aspect in both longitude and declination, both aspects will be listed.

Select Charts
Chart Explorer

Charts
1
2
3
4
↺↻

Tr/Sp/Sa to Sample

Tr	♁	□	♀	10 Mar 2019	-154 days
Sp	♃	∠	♀	6 Apr 2019	-128 days
Sa	♀	∠	♀	14 Jul 2019	-28 days

Sa	♃	♁	♀	2 Nov 2019	+81 days
Tr	♃	✖	♀	10 Nov 2019	+89 days
Tr	♃	□	♀	2 Feb 2020	+173 days

Details
Aspects
Dynamic

### 5.7.3 Clock

The "Clock" button, one of the "Display Controls", continuously updates a chart's time to the present time. It has a different effect depending on whether one or more charts are selected, and whether the Outer Chart (2nd, 3rd or 4th chart) is a natal chart or not.

1 Chart selected

The date and time of this chart is always updated to the present date and time for the location of the chart. This means the "present" for the location of the chart may not be the same in terms of date and time ... as the date and time where you are using the computer. This is because the chart location will be in a particular timezone, and if you are physically in a different timezone to this when you are using Astro Gold then the "present" will naturally be expressed as a different time and/or date to that of your physical location.

### 2 Charts selected

If there are two charts selected the Outer Ring (2nd) chart is always the one that is updated. If it is a natal chart then it is replaced with a current transits chart, using however the location of the natal chart it is replacing (which may not be the same as the Home Location). If the Outer Ring (2nd) chart is a transits or subsidiary chart then it's date and time will simply be updated to the present for the location of the chart.

### 3 Charts selected

If there are three charts selected, as long as the Middle Ring chart is already either a transits, secondary progressed or solar arc directed chart, then both the Middle and Outer Ring (2nd and 3rd) charts are also updated in the same way (as when two charts are selected). In this case if the Outer Ring (3rd) chart is a natal chart then it is replaced with a current transits chart, using however the location of the natal chart it is replacing (which may not be the same as the Home Location). If the Outer Ring chart is already a transits or subsidiary chart then it's date and time will simply be updated to the present for the location of the chart.

### 4 Charts selected

If there are four charts selected, as long as both the Middle Ring charts are already either a transits, secondary progressed or solar arc directed chart, then both the two Middle and Outer Ring (2nd, 3rd and 4th) charts are also updated in the same way (as when two or three charts are selected). In this case if the Outer Ring (4th) chart is a natal chart then it is replaced with a current transits chart, using however the location of the natal chart it is replacing (which may not be the same as the Home Location). If the Outer Ring chart is already a transits or subsidiary chart then it's date and time will simply be updated to the present for the location of the chart.

Once the chart date and time has been updated then it continues to update every second.

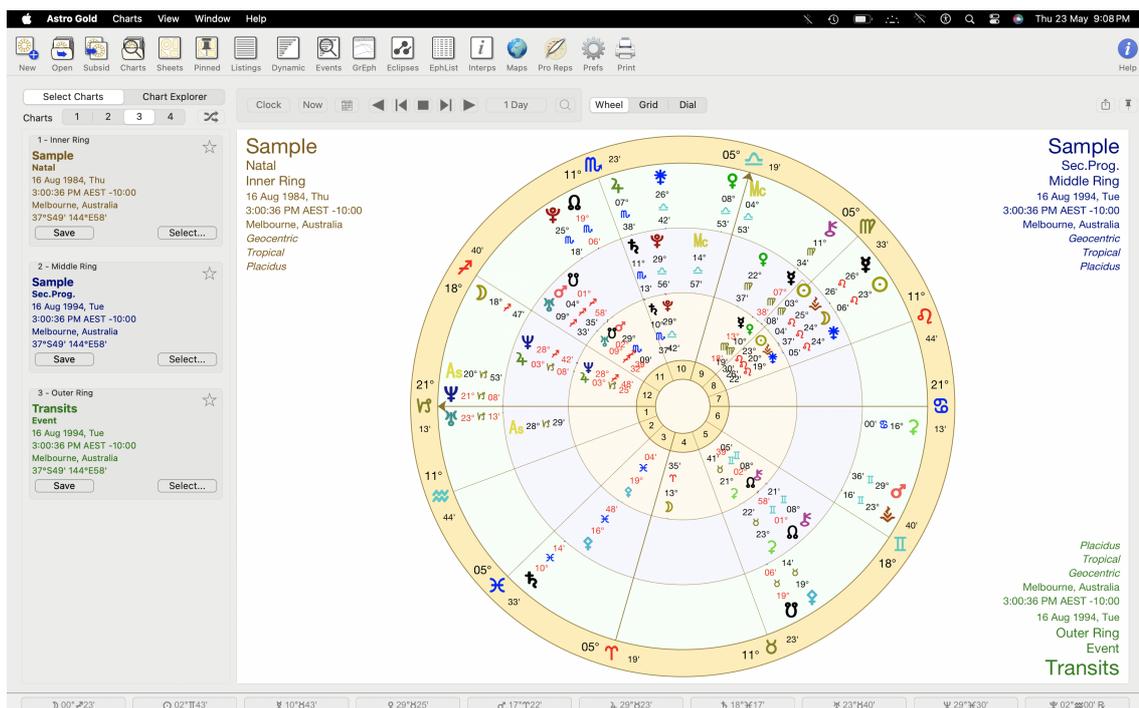
### **>> To start the Clock**

- Click on the **Clock** button which will become dark with white text. The chart being updated will be temporarily renamed to "Clock".

## >> To stop the Clock

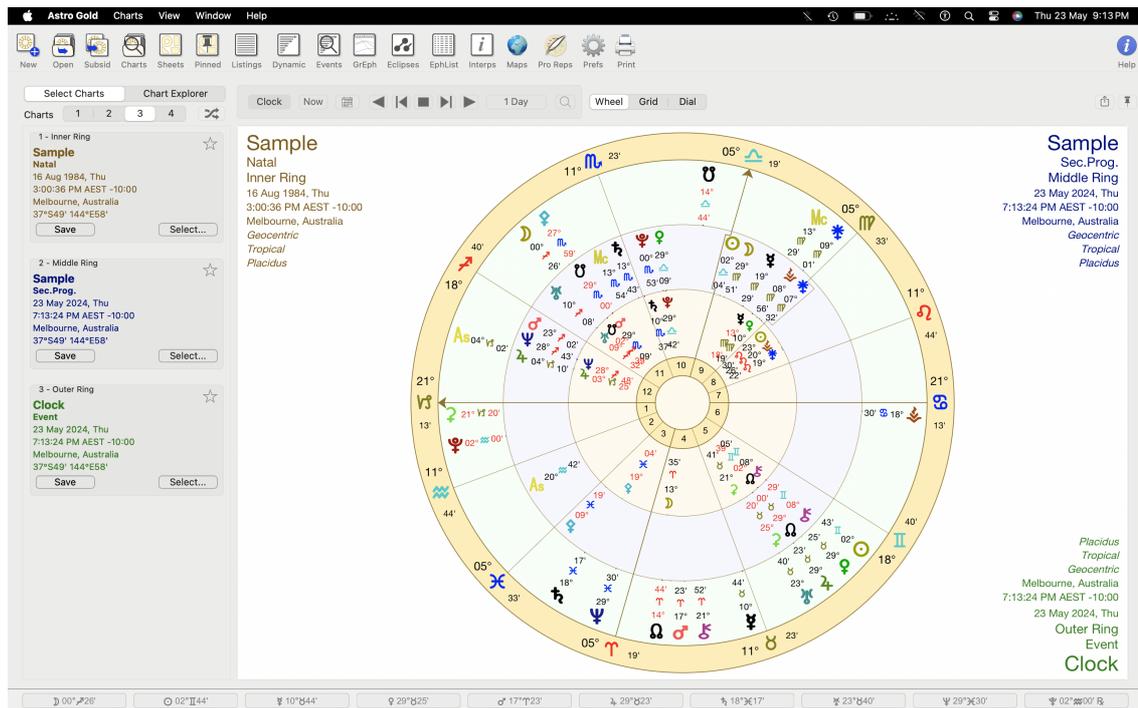
- Click on the **Clock** button which will become white with dark text. The chart that had become a clock will be renamed to "Transits", and the time will stay at what it was when you clicked the button to stop the clock.

## Static display of secondary progressions and transits for an event in a native's life 10 years after birth



## The effect of starting the clock ...

With the above triWheel displayed in the "Viewing Area" once the clock has been started the inner ring (natal) chart is the birth time and so will not change, but the time of the outer two charts will change to be the current clock time for the place of birth, and will continue to tick over accordingly in real time. This creates a constantly updating live view of Sample's current progressions and transits.



Clock started ...

## 5.7.4 Now

The "Now" button, one of the "Display Controls" on the Main Screen, updates a chart's time to the present time. It operates just the same as the "Clock" button initially does, the only difference being the Clock continues to keep the chart's time updated to the present in real time.

The "Now" button has a different effect depending on whether one or more charts are selected, and whether the Outer Ring chart is a natal chart or not. It functions very similar to the "Clock" button but doesn't keep updating.

### 1 Chart selected

The date and time of this chart is always updated to the present date and time for the location of the chart. This means the "present" for the location of the chart may not be the same in terms of date and time ... as the date and time where you are using the computer. This is because the chart location will be in a particular timezone, and if you are physically in a different timezone to this when you are using Astro Gold then the "present" will naturally be expressed as a different time and/or date to that of your physical location.

### 2 Charts selected

If there are two charts selected the Outer Ring (2nd) chart is always the one that is updated. If it is a natal chart then it is replaced with a current transits chart, using however the location of the natal chart it is replacing (which may not be the same as the Home Location). If the Outer Ring chart is a transits or subsidiary chart then its date and time will simply be updated to the present for the location of the chart.

### 3 Charts selected

If there are three charts selected, as long as the Middle Ring chart is already a either a transits, secondary progressed or solar arc directed chart, then both the Middle and Outer Ring (2nd and 3rd) charts are also updated in the same way (as when two charts are selected). In this case if the Outer Ring (3rd) chart is a natal chart then it is replaced with a current transits chart, using however the location of the natal chart it is replacing (which may not be the same as the Home Location). If the Outer Ring chart is already a transits or subsidiary chart then it's date and time will simply be updated to the present for the location of the chart.

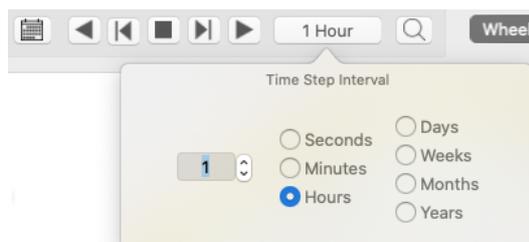
### 4 Charts selected

If there are four charts selected, as long as both the Middle Ring charts are already either a transits, secondary progressed or solar arc directed chart, then both the two Middle and Outer Ring (2nd, 3rd and 4th) charts are also updated in the same way (as when two or three charts are selected). In this case if the Outer Ring (4th) chart is a natal chart then it is replaced with a current transits chart, using however the location of the natal chart it is replacing (which may not be the same as the Home Location). If the Outer Ring chart is already a transits or subsidiary chart then it's date and time will simply be updated to the present for the location of the chart.

## 5.7.5 Stepping through time

In the "Display Controls" you can quickly adjust the time of a dynamic (steppable) chart by using the "Chart Stepping" facility. This is comprised of the "Time Step Interval" options, and the Step Forward ">", ">|" and Step Back "|<","<" buttons.

### >> To set the time interval



- 1) Click in the **Time Step Interval** itself and a pop-up dialog is displayed, as shown above with possible units of time being Seconds, Minutes, Hours, Days, Weeks, Months and Years . Click on the **unit of time** you want to use.
- 2) Once you have selected the unit of time enter the **number** of these units of time that will be stepped either forward or backward - up to a maximum of 100.

### >> To step by the time interval

- Click any of the **Step Forward** or **Step Backward** buttons. The ">|" and "<|" only move the time one step at a time. The ">" and "<" step continuously through time.

- If only static (natal etc) charts are selected then a new transit chart will be placed in the outermost Ring, which will then be stepped. The time to step from will be taken from the innermost (Ring one) chart.

If there are no spare rings - for instance if there was a natal chart selected in all four rings - then you will be asked if you'd like to replace the outermost chart with a new transits chart which will be stepped.

- The date/time for the step is always controlled by the outermost chart. If any of the inner or middle chart(s) is also a dynamic chart (transits, secondary progressed or directed etc), then their dates are set to be the same as the outermost chart.

-OR-

➤ Alternatively open the **Calendar** by clicking on its icon  in the display controls, and set the date you would like to directly jump to. This does two things at once. It...

- a) sets the date and time of every displayed dynamic chart (transit, progressed charts etc).
- b) becomes the new base date/time from which any further stepping (forwards or backwards) is related to.

### >> Stepping by fixed time intervals versus calendar time intervals

When stepping a chart through time, if a timezone change occurred during the time step (e.g. DST) then one possibility is that the new chart's clock time retains its previous local time even though the timezone has changed. This is one option and could be referred to as *calendar-based time steps*.

Another option, which Astro Gold does, is that in the situation above the local time is now adjusted to reflect the timezone change, while preserving the exact time step interval applied. This allows astrological/astronomical changes to progress consistently during chart stepping, regardless of DST changes, and can be referred to as *exact-interval based (or fixed) time-steps*.

#### 5.7.6 Custom Displayed Points

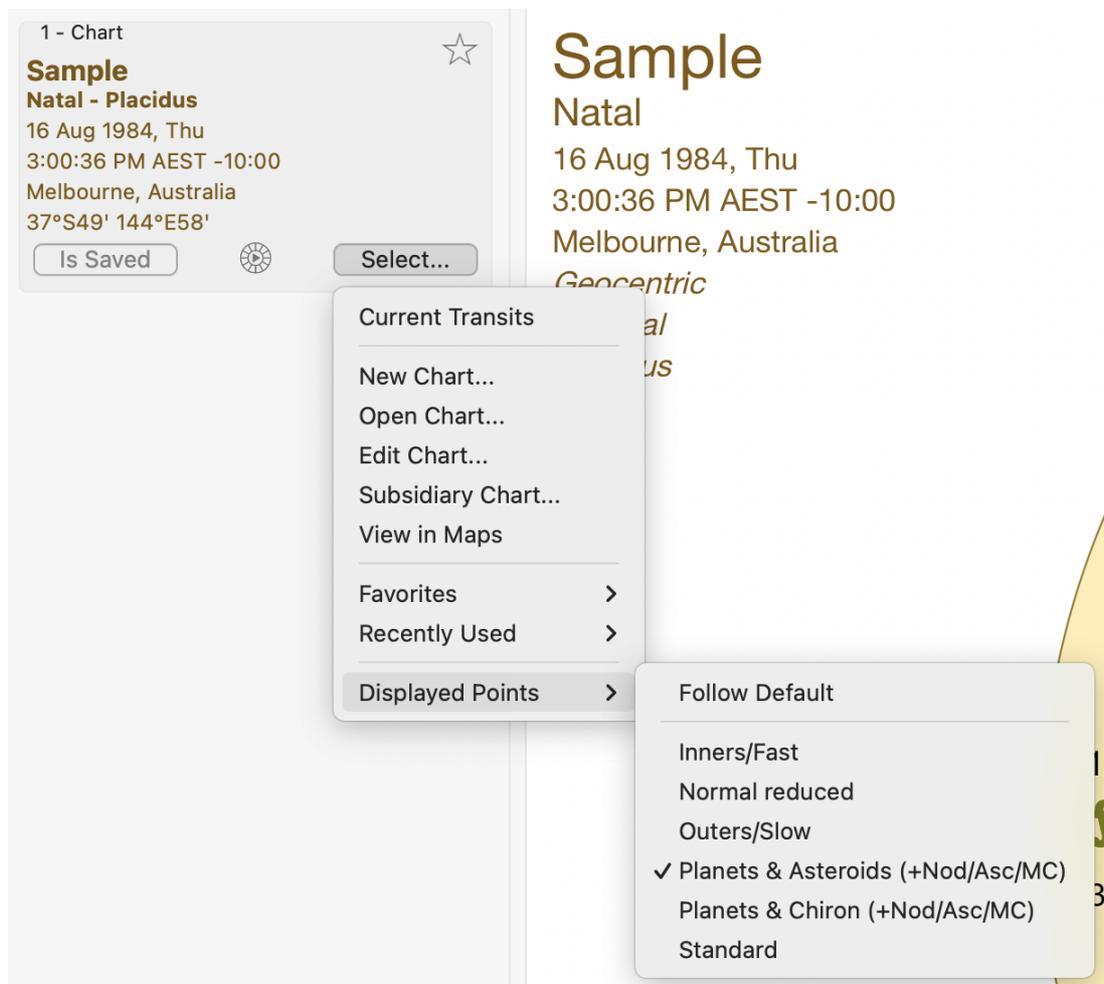
You can set which points that will be displayed in charts, transits, progressions and directions by default in Preferences on the "Displayed" tab. This is a very flexible and handy facility.

However there may be occasions when you are viewing a chart and would like to have different points temporarily displayed.

- To do this **right-click** on the **chart title** or **inside a wheel** and a menu pops up. Select the Displayed Points Set you want to use for the particular chart while it is displayed.



- Alternatively, the **Displayed Points** set can be selected in the Selected Charts pane, in the Chart Selection menu.



## 5.8 Viewing Options (Menu)

There are three general options you can set to control what you view on the screen. To access these:

➤ Click the **View** menu.

### 1) Selected Chart Count

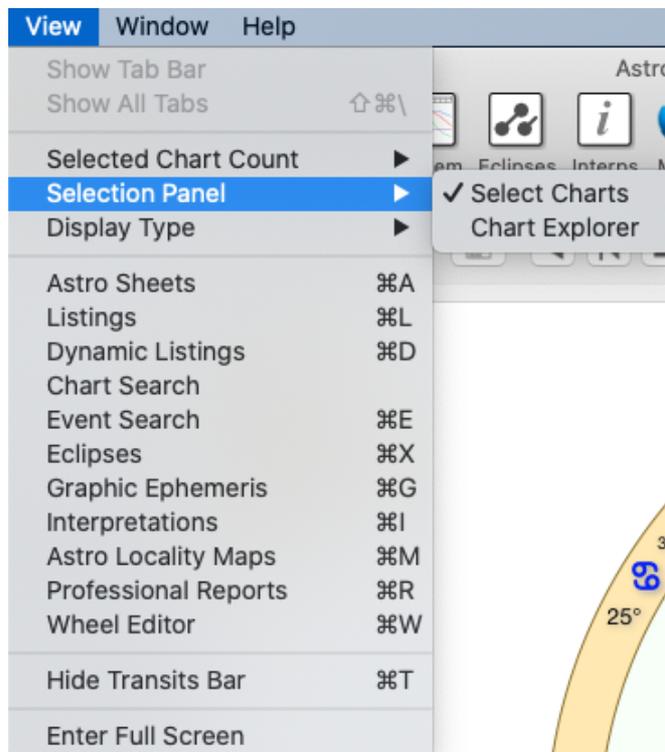
This allows you to specify how many charts you want to work with. The shortcut keys shown to the right of each menu option are also very handy for doing this directly from the keyboard. You can also do this in the "Selection Panel".

### 2) Selection Panel

The "Selection Panel" is the small rectangular area above the "Selected Charts" pane-  -which shows what mode the pane is in, which in turn determines what will subsequently be displayed in the pane:

a) to see the birth/event details of each chart click **Select Charts**

b) to see specific chart point information for the Chart 1 click **Chart Explorer**



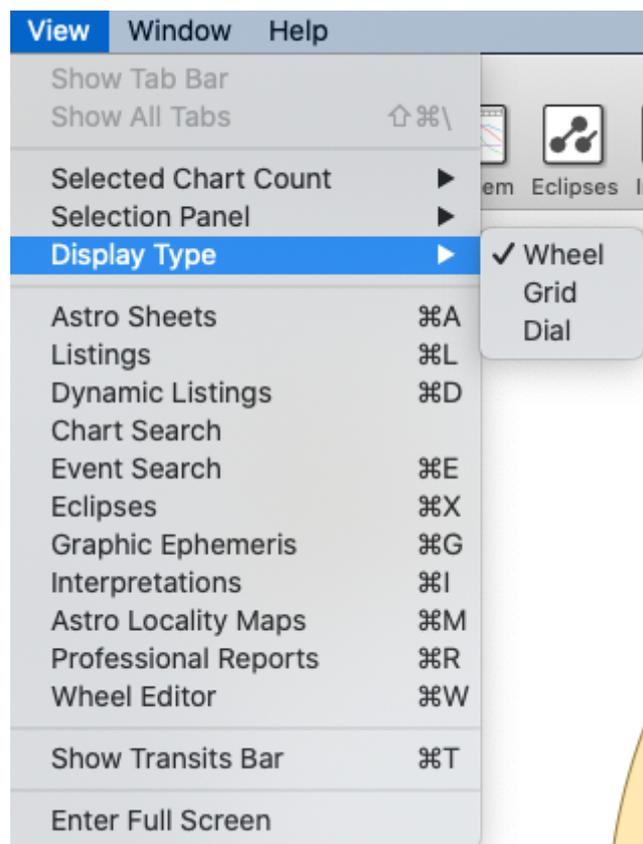
**TIP:** this viewing option can also be set via the equivalent *buttons* in the [Selection Panel](#) itself.

### 3) Display Type

This determines what is displayed in the "Viewing Area" of the screen:

- a) For a chart Wheel (or  $\triangleright$  click **Wheel**) depending on how many charts are selected- chart biWheel / triWheel / quadriWheel)
- b) For a chart Grid  $\triangleright$  click **Grid**)
- c) For a chart Dial (or depending  $\triangleright$  click **Dial**) on how many charts are selected- chart biDial / triDial / quadriDial)

**TIP:** this viewing option can also be set via the equivalent "Display Controls" above the "Viewing Area".

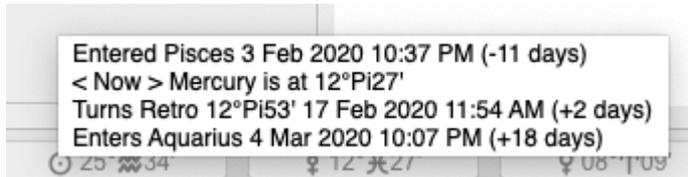


#### 4) Show Transits Bar

This controls whether the "Transits Bar" containing the current positions of the mundane planets (shown below) is displayed across the bottom of the Main Screen - it is toggled on or off by repetitively clicking on it. When it's *on* the bar is displayed. When it's *off* the bar is hidden.



To see more information about one of the planets click on it. An example of what you'll see in the resulting pop-up is shown below for Mercury...



## 5.9 Event Search

There are two types of Event Search - Simple and Extended:

- a) The "Simple Search" only operates "in place" on a currently displayed chart (for transiting to radix events), or searches for mundane events initially just uses the date of a currently displayed transits chart as the start date for the search (unless you specify it). Location is always taken from the relevant displayed charts.

Search options are for transits to or involving mundane or radix aspects/stations/ingress/point position/house cusp/point return date.

Once the search result date is found the relevant displayed chart is always recalculated to that result date.

- b) The "Extended Search" works essentially the same as the "Simple Search", except it is much more flexible plus it operates from a standalone dialog box. It has all the search options of the Simple Search, plus you can specify the start date, location, and which radix displayed chart you want to be searched if the search involves a radix chart.

As with the Simple search the search result date is shown on the Search dialog box. However with the Extended Search none of the currently displayed charts is altered by being recalculated using the result date as happens with the Simple Search. This preserves all the currently displayed charts as they are without updating them in any way according to reflect the search result.

However optionally, if you want to see a chart calculated using the search result date, you can select which chart slot (from 1 to 4) to use to put that freshly calculated chart into. If you do that, and a chart was previously in that slot, it will be replaced.

### 5.9.1 Event Search - Simple

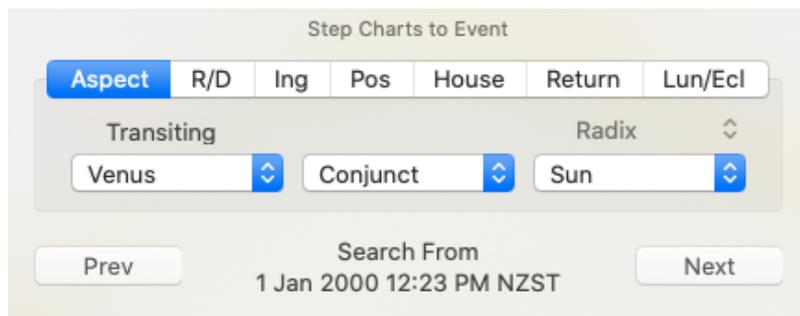
You can search for a variety of astrological events involving both a static and/or the current transiting (mundane) chart.

Once the time of the event has been found a new "dynamic" chart for that time will be cast. This feature is an on-the-spot electional search (using transiting points) for a specific astrological event, combined with the ability to step through previous or next occurrences of that event.

It can be a search for a transiting event involving a static (e.g. natal or event) chart, or simply be for a transiting (mundane) event.

#### >> To Open the Simple Event Search

- You access the simple "Event Search" via the magnifying glass  to the right of the time step interval in the Display Controls (see [Screen Areas](#)).



Event Search dialog box

### Charts Types

In the Event Search there are two kinds of charts:

- **Static** charts (e.g. natal, fixed harmonic etc) - often called the *radix or base* chart
- **Dynamic** charts (transits, progressions, directions, age harmonic)

### Event Types

The events types that can be searched for are either:

- **Dynamic** events (transits) **to a Static** chart (natal etc)  
*e.g. Transits to a natal chart, natal chart Lunar Return*
- **Dynamic to Dynamic** chart (transits to transits etc)  
*e.g. transiting Sun conjunct transiting Jupiter*

### Base Reference Point

Searches which are to a radix point require a base point in a radix chart to be identified. These searches are **Aspect** (transiting point to radix point) or **House** (transiting point to radix cusp) or **Return** (transiting point to radix point). All other searches are transiting events and only reference a radix chart to identify the start date of the search.

### Charts Layout

**Viewing all static charts:** if you are viewing static charts in all four chart rings then there is no ring spare in which to cast a new dynamic chart for the event date. In this situation Astro Gold will ask if you want to replace the outer chart (in ring four) with a Transits chart.

**Normal Use:** generally searches tend to be for an event involving a static chart (natal etc) - for example some kind of transit to that natal chart. In these searches place the static chart in the innermost Ring (one).

## >> Setting up the Search Criteria

[A] Across the top of the dialog box are the main search *elements*:

- **Aspect** search for when transiting planets and lunar nodes come into a certain aspect to a static (or other transiting) planet or point.
- **R/D** search for when the motion of transiting planets or lunar nodes turns retrograde or direct
- **Ing** search for when a planet or lunar node ingresses into a specific sign, or into any sign
- **Pos** search for when a planet or lunar node conjuncts a specific point on the zodiac
- **House** search for when a transiting planet or lunar node conjuncts a specific (or any) transiting or radix house cusp.
- **Planet or Node Return** search for when a transiting planet or node returns to its position in the base chart
- **Lun/Ecl** search for a new or full moon, or any kind of eclipse

[B] Selecting the search *items*

This is basically self-explanatory.

- 1) For the chosen element: select the transiting item, and if required, the base item.
- 2) With an Aspect search, you can search for:
  - transiting points to radix points (e.g. transits to a natal chart)
  - transiting points to other transiting points (i.e. you can search for when mundane transiting aspects occur)
- 3) With a Ing search, you can search for:
  - transiting points to zodiac signs - either to an individual sign cusp, or all of them sequentially by choosing "0° Any Sign"
- 4) With a House search, you can search for:
  - transiting points to radix house cusps - either to an individual cusp, or all of them sequentially by choosing "Any Hs Cusp"
  - transiting points to transiting house cusps (i.e. search for mundane transits to mundane house cusps) - either to an individual cusp, or all of them sequentially by choosing "Any Hs Cusp"

**NOTE:** With searches for a house or sign ingress, or a point's stationing - the event time is calculated for one second later in time than the actual event, to ensure that any house/sign ingress or point station has in fact already occurred for the radix chart.

[C] Optionally -first manually set the base "Search From" time using the Calendar icon , which is next to the "Now" button.

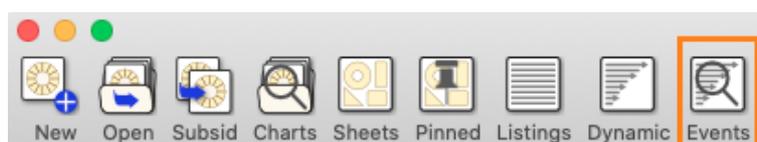
## 5.9.2 Event Search - Extended

The Extended event search is essentially the same as the Simple event search, so it is recommended you read through that first. The search functionality is no different between the two options.

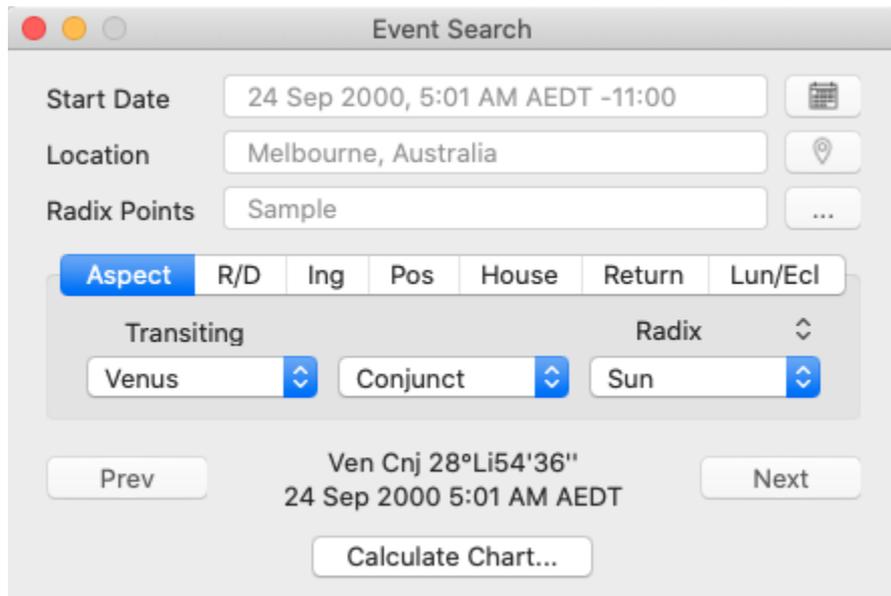
### [Event Search - Simple](#)

#### >> To Open the Extended Event Search

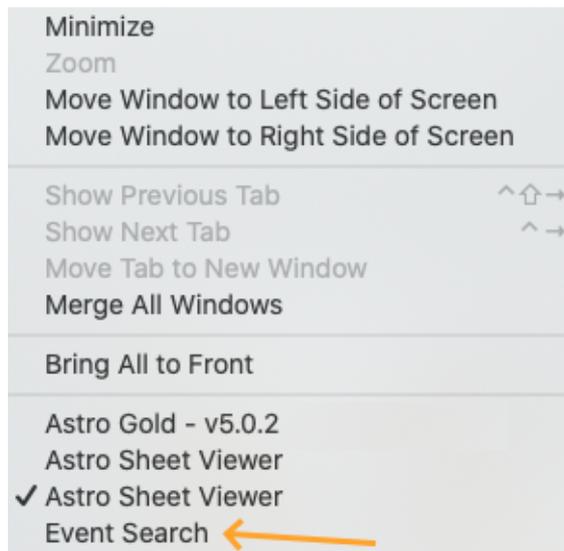
➤ Click the magnifying glass on the Toolbar:



This will open the standalone Event Search dialog box. You can leave this open with all your settings in place whenever you need to do other things.



When you want to use it again you can find it on the Window menu, and pick up where you left off with your searching.



## >> To set additional Search options

### Start Date

To set the start date for the search click the **Calendar** icon to the right of the Start Date text box , and select the **date**.

### Location

To set the location for the search click on **Location** Icon to the right of the Location text box , and select either the **Natal**, **Home** or **Other** option.

### Radix Points

To determine which chart to use when the "search for Radix" option is chosen, click the **3 dots** to the right of the Radix Points text box and select which of the currently displayed **charts** to use for that. It may not necessarily be an actual natal chart, it may be a transits, progressed, return or other kind of chart - whatever you have displayed in the "Viewing Area".

### Core settings

Once you have set the additional options available in the standalone Search dialog box, you can select the core search settings as you would with the [Event Search - Simple](#).

## >> Running the Search

- 1) Click on the **Prev** or **Next** buttons to see the event date result. Nothing will happen except the result date on the dialog box will update.
- 2) To create a chart based on that result date, click on the **Calculate Chart** button and select into which chart slot you want the calculated chart put.

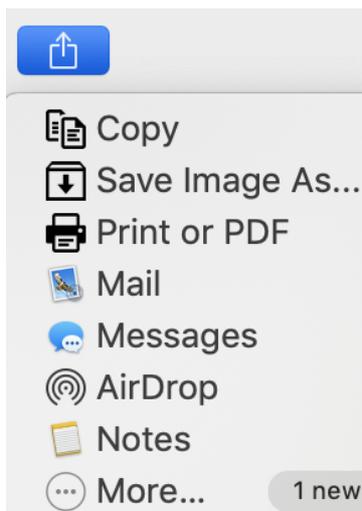
## 6 Printing

### >> To print whatever is displayed in the "Viewing Area" on the Main Screen, and the Astro Locality Map

1. Click the **Charts** menu, then click the **Print** menu option. Alternatively, for the View Area instead of doing either of those, just click the **Printer** icon in the Toolbar. This opens the "Print" dialog box.
2. In the **Printer** dropdown box your default printer will be showing. If necessary click this to select a different printer.
3. Set the number of **copies** and which **pages** to print.
4. When you're ready, click on the **Print** button.

### >> To print Astro Sheets and the Graphic Ephemeris

1. Click the **Action button**. A menu drops down with options similar to those below.



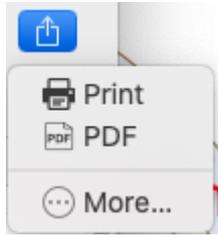
The Action button dropdown menu

2. Click the **Print or PDF** menu option. This opens the "Print" dialog box.
3. To print ...
  - a. In the **Printer** dropdown box your default printer will be showing. If necessary click this to select a different printer.
  - b. Set the number of **copies** and which **pages** to print.
  - c. When you're ready, click on the **Print** button.

See [here](#) to save to a PDF file.

## >> To print a Dynamic Listing or a Professional Report

1. Click the **Action button**. A menu drops down with options similar to those below.



The Action button dropdown menu

2. To print the listing click the **Print** option. This opens the "Print" dialog window.
  - a. In the **Printer** dropdown box your default printer will be showing. If necessary click this to select a different printer.
  - b. Set the number of **copies** and which **pages** to print
  - c. When you're ready, click on the **Print** button.

**NOTE:** the Dynamic Listing always prints in Landscape orientation, as this fits the data on the page best.

3. To save the listing as a PDF file click the **PDF** option. This opens the "Save Astro Sheet PDF" dialog window.
  - a. Edit the name for the file, but leave the ".pdf" file extension in place, otherwise if you delete it add ".pdf" onto the end of the filename.
  - b. Select the folder to save the file in, otherwise create a new folder.
  - c. Click the **Save** button.

### NOTES:

- You cannot print Listings or Interpretations; they can only be viewed on the screen.

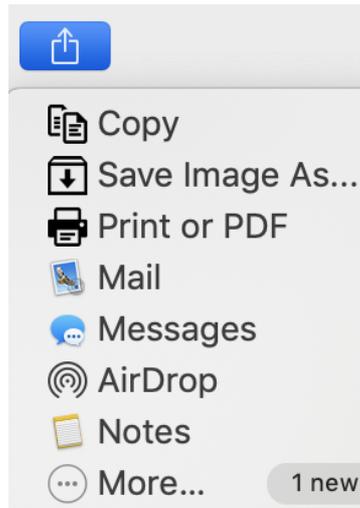
## 6.1 Saving PDF files

### >> To save a window's contents to a PDF file

1. Click the **Print icon**  on the Toolbar.

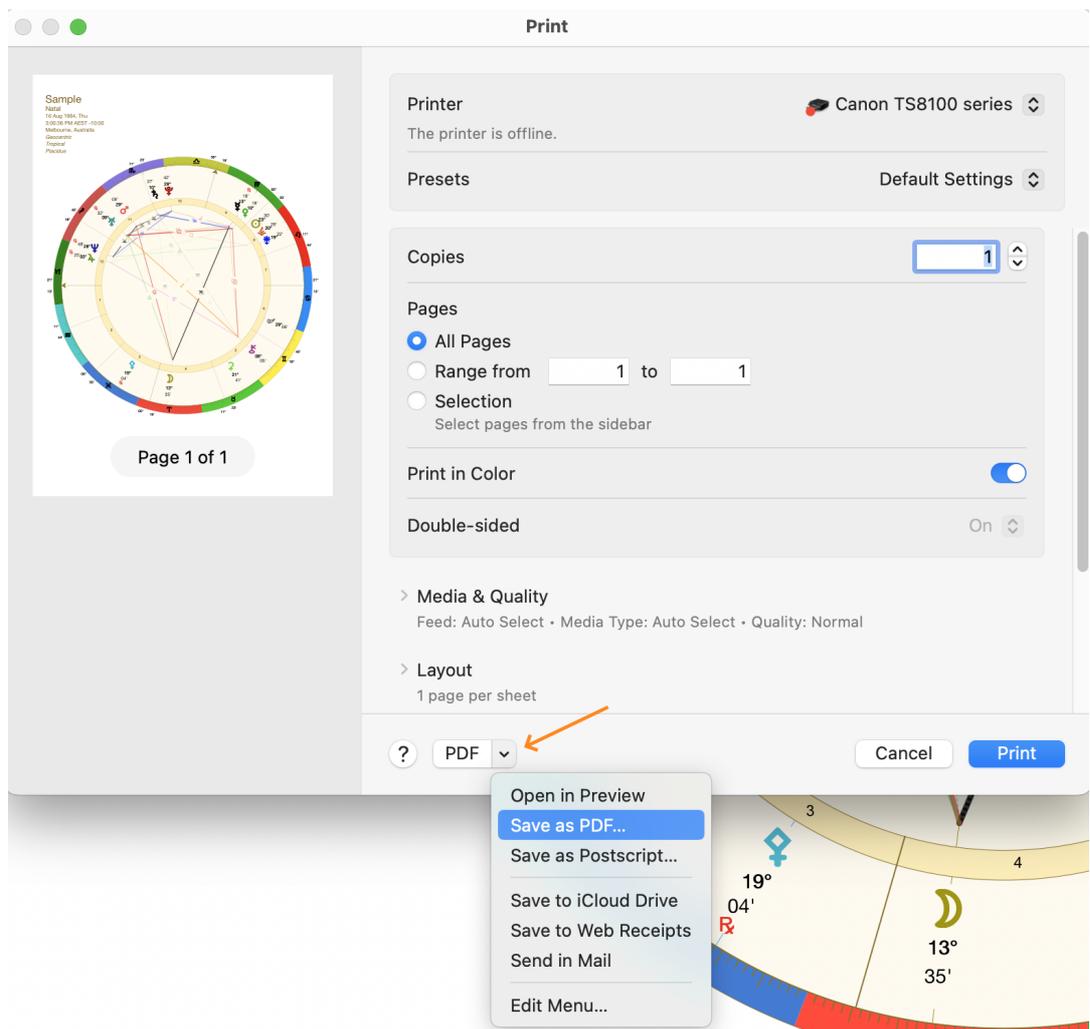
OR

  - a. If it's visible click the **Action icon** . A menu drops down with options similar to those below...



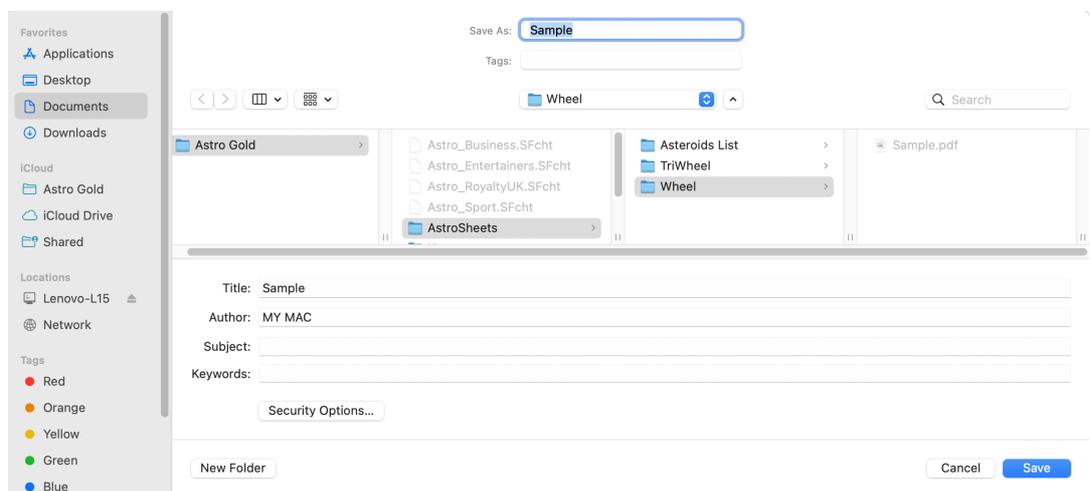
The Action button dropdown menu

- b. Click the **Print or PDF** menu option.
2. The "Print" dialog box is opened.



The Print dialog

3. Click on the **PDF** dropdown box, and then click on **Save as PDF**. This opens the "Print - Save As" dialog window.



The Print dialog

4. Edit the default filename if you wish.
5. In the middle section of the dialog window, by default the PDF file will be saved in the Documents/Astro Gold/AstroSheets folder, with a further subfolder name varying according to the type of view being displayed (e.g. Wheel, Points List, Midpoint Trees etc), and the default name of the file is the name of the chart (or charts, if more than one) currently being used.
6. If you want to save the PDF to a different place select the folder where you want to save the PDF file, or create a new folder (the **New Folder** button is on the bottom left of the dialog window).
7. Add any file metadata you want saved with the PDF - title, author, subject and keywords.
8. Click on the **Save** button.

**NOTE:** this feature is only available for windows that have an "Action" button. Windows such as Listings and Interpretations do not have an "Action" button.

## 6.2 Printing a mirror image of a chart or page

Possible reasons for printing a chart or page in reverse, backwards (i.e. a mirror image):

- a) You set up some type of display to show off charts, and arrange for people to look at a mirror image to view the display, perhaps because you are using a mirror that makes things look larger so as to stand out.
- b) You are giving a talk or workshop on a vehicle like Zoom, and have your video set to Mirror your image. Here, a reverse chart would show up as normal to your participants. If you use videos in your practice, and are discussing/displaying charts that you have printed out then being able to do this would be very helpful.

You can either print out a copy of the mirrored page, or create a PDF file version of it.

### >> To Print or Save a Mirror Image of a Chart or Page

1. Open up the chart, or sheet, that you want to mirror. Make sure it has everything you want...your choice of planets and other bodies, for example; the correct house system; the specific wheel or dial type, etc.
2. Choose the option to print the chart - this will bring up the "Print" settings.  
(In the "Print" settings, if there is a button at the bottom titled **Show Details** then click it)
3. Click on the dropdown arrow to the right of the words "Media & Quality"
4. Select **Layout**
5. At the bottom tick the **Flip horizontally** checkbox

---

6. To print ...

- a) In the Printer dropdown box your default printer will be showing. If necessary click this to select a different printer.
- b) Set the number of copies and which pages to print.
- c) When you're ready, click on the Print button.

*OR*

See [here](#) to save to a PDF file.

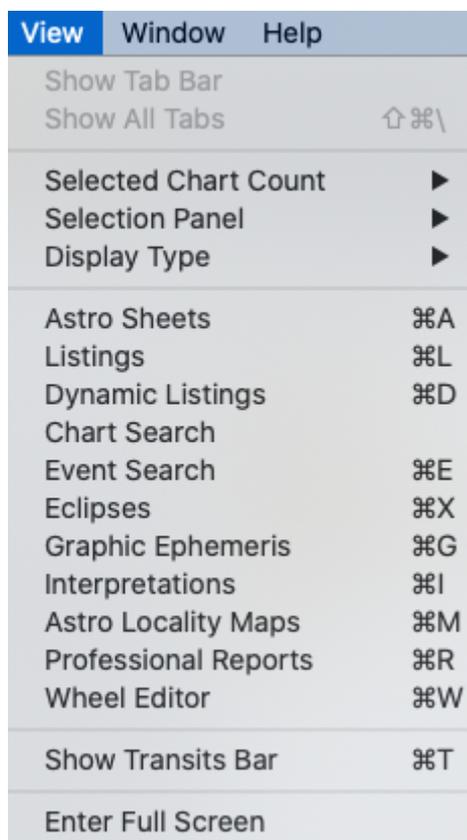
## 7 Reports and Special Information

Once you have selected charts to use in Astro Gold you can then access the:

- Specialized information functions
- Report modules

### >> To see Information or a Report

1. Click the **View** menu. In this menu you will find information functions (Graphic Ephemeris, Astro Locality maps) and reports (Astro Sheets, Listings, Dynamic Listings, Interpretations, Professional Reports).
2. Click on the item you want or alternatively you can click on its **icon** directly in the Toolbar.



View Menu

### >> Pop-up details and Interpretation text

Some charts and some Astro Sheets yield additional information when either (left mouse) clicked on, and/or right-mouse clicked on. Simply try clicking and/or right-clicking on these to see what extra info may be available.

## 7.1 Astro Sheets

The basic concept of an Astro Sheet is that it is a dashboard type sheet of information about one or more charts. These are reports comprising of a mixture of graphic objects - wheels, dials and tabulations - arranged in an informational layout.

### >> To Open the Astro Sheets window

➤ Click on the **View** menu, then the **Astro Sheets** menu option.

-OR-

➤ Click on the **Sheets** icon in the Toolbar.

The Astro Sheets window lists all the sheets available for each possible chart wheel or dial type (single, bi, tri or quadri) in the left hand pane, arranged into a hierarchy of categories. By clicking on the triangle to the left of each category node in the hierarchy the whole category node can be collapsed to just the category heading. Clicking on the triangle expands the category node so its contents can be accessed. The state of each node (expanded or collapsed) will be remembered across Astro Gold sessions.

The categories of Astro Sheet available:

- 1 Chart
  - General
  - Predictive
  - Traditional
  - Midpoints
  - Minor Bodies
  - Lots/Parts
  - Fixed Stars
  - Nodes & Apsides
- 2 Charts
- 3 Charts
- 4 Charts

### Selected Chart

At the very top of the Astro Sheets window in the area just under the window title ("Astro Sheets") and over to the left, is the chart selection dropdown



The first chart selected in the "Selected Charts" pane on the Main Screen will be the chart selected in this dropdown. If you are only working with 1 chart in the [Selection Panel](#) then the Astro Sheets chart selection dropdown will have no more charts to choose from, otherwise the remaining charts you are working with can be selected from the chart selection dropdown.

Whichever chart is selected in the dropdown is the chart all the Astro Sheets data relates to.

## Tree Menu

In the left hand pane there is a Tree menu. A Tree menu consists of Headings in bold, and often also subHeadings under that (also in bold). The individual Astro Sheets are listed under the Headings and/or subHeadings.

1. If no Sheets are visible under any of the Headings (e.g. the "1 Chart" heading) then click on the **>** symbol to the left of the Heading (e.g. to the left of "1 Chart"). The **>** will change to a **▼**.
2. If there are subHeadings under the heading and no Sheets are visible under any of the subHeadings, then likewise click on the **>** symbol to the left of the subHeading.
3. The Sheets will now all be visible.

When you click on a **Sheet** in the left hand pane, the "Astro Sheets" window displays the actual Sheet information in the large area in the window to the right of that. You can select which chart or charts are used in the Sheet by clicking the **dropdown box(es)** at the top left of the Astro Sheets window.

- A Sheet can be saved as a graphics file, and thus viewed at any later point in time. If you choose to save it, it will be saved to the Documents/Astro Gold/AstroSheets folder with a subfolder name varying according to the type of view being displayed (e.g. Wheel, Points List, Midpoint Trees etc), and the default name of the file is the name of the chart (or charts, if more than one) currently being used.

Simply click on the **Save** button at the top right of the Astro Sheets window and the resulting graphics image will be first saved, then displayed (it will look identical to the Sheet itself).

- While the graphics image is open you can use the **File menu** to rename it, move it to a different folder, or export it as a PDF file - after which/otherwise you can close it, as it already is saved on disk.
- To open the Sheet at a later point to view it, click on the "Folder" button , then open the subfolder of the type of Sheet it is to find the actual Sheet file. **Right-click** on the file then click on **Open** in the menu that pops up.

## Options

Look for the gear icon  in the top right hand corner of the sheet, for selecting options relating to the information displayed by the sheet.

Often an Astro Sheet can be sorted into a number of different orders such as point, sign, mode & sign, modulus. For example in the midpoints list it may be handy to sort the midpoints by point, or by the sign in which the midpoint occurs.

*NOTE:* Points List, Asteroids List, Stars List, Arabic Lots List & Nodes/Apsides List can now all have their contents sorted into order by any column type simply by clicking on the

column header. When clicking repeatedly on the same column header, the sort order cycles through the available orders ie. Ascending, Descending (and Point order or File order in the case of Points List and Arabic Lots List, respectively). The sorted column shows a down or up triangle on its right hand side to indicate in which direction it is sorted.

Additionally, for Star Aspects, Star Parans, Arabic Lot Aspects and Asteroid Aspects, you can choose to see the first chunk of data in the Sheet only, but in two columns so it's all easily viewable on the screen in one glance - or be able to view the entire amount of data but it's in one long column that you will usually need to scroll through to see everything included.

### >> How to print or save a scrolling list's full contents

The gear icon includes an option to save the full list content of scrolling lists (life time arcs, midpoints lists, star lists etc) to a PDF document (this functionality is also available for any scrolling list via the Action button  menu in the top right of the Astro Sheets window).

- 1) Click on the **gear** icon 
- 2) Click on **Save Full List as PDF**

By default it will be saved to the Documents/Astro Gold/AstroSheets folder with a subfolder name varying according to the type of view being displayed (e.g. Wheel, Points List, Midpoint Trees etc), and the default name of the file is the name of the chart (or charts, if more than one) currently being used.

- 3) You can edit the PDF filename and/or the folder where it is saved.
- 4) Click on the **Save** button.

## Interpretations

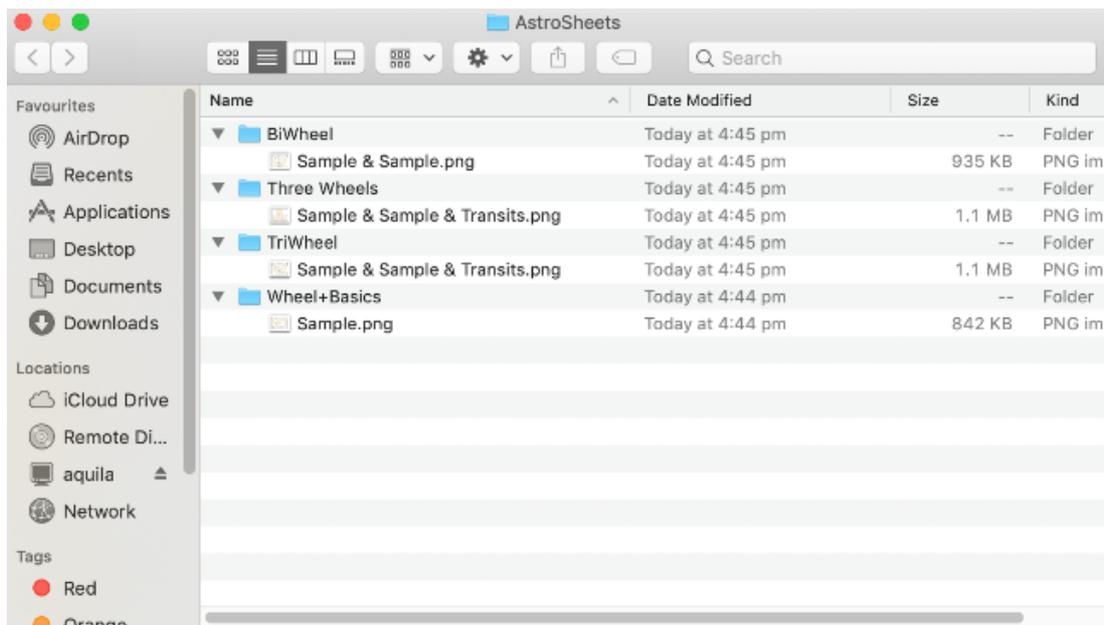
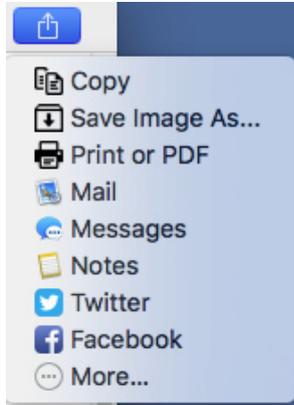
For most sheets, if you click on an item itself in the sheet, a pop window will often have brief interpretations available.

The only sheets that **do not have interpretations** are below:

- Points List
- Midpoints List
- Midpoint Trees
- Essential Dignities
- Firdaria
- Profecions
- Zodiacal Releasings
- Life Time Arcs

As well as interpretations there may also be other information of a specific or general nature regarding the content of the Astro Sheet.

Additionally you can share, export or print the Sheet by clicking on the **Action** button.



Astro Sheets folders and files

## The Sheets

For any of the selected charts you can view one of the astro sheets below. To determine the chart (or charts) to use, choose them from the dropdown lists at the top of the Astro Sheets window.

### 1 CHART - General

#### 1) WHEEL

: Single wheel

- 2) GRID: Aspect grid
- 3) WHEEL Single wheel & aspect grid  
&  
GRID:
- 4) POINTS For each chart point - longitude, motion direction (D/Rx), travel, latitude, right  
LIST: ascension, declination, azimuth, altitude
- 5) HOUSE Lists house cusp longitudes to second of arc plus a separate tabulation of  
CUSPS: nearest aspects from chart points to house cusps. Notably, this works with  
transformed house cusps of harmonic, duad and antiscia charts, rather than  
adopting the equal house cusps that are necessary for chart wheel display (as  
they keep the houses in a displayable order)
- 5) SYZYGY & ECLIPSES Shows at birth the major lunar phases, and nearest prenatal and postnatal  
eclipses  
ES:
- 6) WHEEL A page of information => a single wheel, scores for elements/sign and house  
+ modalities/polarities  
BASICS: => a list showing point glyph, longitude, motion direction (D/Rx), house;  
nearest aspects less than 1° orb sorted from smallest to largest orb
- See [NOTES](#) below for information on how the score for elements, sign and  
house modes, and polarities are calculated
- 7) BEGIN A page of information - general info on signs and aspects  
NER / CLIENT: => a single wheel, scores for elements/sign and house modalities/polarities  
=> a list showing chart point glyph, chart point, point sign, point house
- 8) ASPECT Lists a range of standard aspect patterns found in the currently selected chart,  
PATTERNS showing which points are involved and a relative orb indicating the pattern  
NS tightness from 0.0 (tightest pattern orbs) to 1.0 (loosest pattern orbs). This is  
based on a root mean square ensemble calculation of all relative aspect orbs  
involved in the pattern.

Clicking on an entry in the tabulation highlights that aspect pattern entry and  
applies a filter to the aspect ring of the selected chart's wheel, filtering it to  
show only the aspects involved in the selected pattern.

The aspect patterns included are:

- Stellium (any 3 points or more all conjunct one another)
- T-Square
- Grand Trine
- Yod
- Thor's Hammer
- Grand Cross
- Kite

- Mystic Rectangle
- Hard Rectangle
- Focussed Yod
- Rosetta
- Hele
- Double Yod Key
- Square Key
- Quintile Kite
- Grand Quintile
- Diamond
- Stretched Pentagram
- Star of David

## 1 CHART - Predictive

### 7) PROG

LUNAR PHASES Shows progressed lunar phases over the lifetime.

:

- 8) LIFETI "Life Time Astrology" is a book by **A.T.Mann** describing a "time scale" that can be aligned with a chart to date significant events in the native's life. Astrology ME ARCS: has a series of twelve houses that seem like a sequence, and lifetime arcs maps the houses to sequential influences in the native's lifetime. But rather than starting at the ASC as the birth moment, everything starts at the cusp of the 9th house as the Conception point, when the parents made love and conception occurred. Thus from the 9th house cusp to the Ascendant is the Gestation Octave, time within the mother which is an intrauterine repetition of the entire evolutionary process, which Jung called "The Collective Unconscious." The native takes on karmic lineages from the father and mother, added to the mother's attitude, feelings and experiences while she carries the native, as karmic imprints or samskaras (in Buddhism).

The *Ascendant is birth* as a process of delivery, and echoes how the native expresses themselves. *Childhood* is represented by the first four houses up to seven years old, and is the development of the personality (emotional body) within the home and family system. From the 5th house cusp back up to the 9th house cusp is the *Maturity Octave*, stretching to the end of life out in the world. There is also a *Transcendent Octave*, a higher level of gestation which influences the higher, more collective impulses that are often transpersonal, beyond the daily personal life.

The Life Time Arcs show a list of dates from Conception to Old Age in a logarithmic time scale, showing a sequence of planetary sensitive points (aspect angles from each planet's natal position) that show a succession of planetary patterns that describe the life in time. This sequence is similar to the structure of DNA and are sequenced in groups of three (like midpoints or triplicities) that show what happens as aging and growth occur.

=> For each arc there is a date, the aspect to the sensitive point, the radix chart point making the aspect, the native's age on that date, and the longitude of the sensitive point

- Using the gear icon  (top right) you can adjust the date format, and opt to also include detailed events prenatally as well

## 9) SUN

**SIGN** For use when doing Sun Sign columns etc. For the selected chart this sheet WHEEL shows 12 wheels, each with the Ascendent at 0° of a different zodiac sign  
S:

## 1 CHART - Traditional

1 ESSENT For each chart point - ruler, exaltation, triplicity, term, face, detriment, fall, the overall score for the planets out to Saturn

**DIGNIT** Also shows the planetary day and hour, and the hour of the day or night the chart time is

1 HOUSE Has a tabulation listing house cusp numbers, longitudes, dispositors and 1) DIGNIT almutens (using traditional rulerships).

IES:

1 PLANE

2) TARY

**SECT:** Comprises sect (distinction between day and night) information for the chart.

Diurnal  = the sun is above the horizon. Nocturnal  = the sun is below the horizon.

The first column ("Pt") is the planet, and the second column ("nature") is the intrinsic sect nature of the planet (diurnal or nocturnal).

The 3rd column ("Cht") is the sect of the whole chart which is the same as the sect of the Sun (so whatever it is it will be the same for all rows).

The "Plc" column shows the actual planet's sect (above or below the horizon).

The "Sgn" column shows whether that planet is in a diurnal (masculine) or nocturnal (feminine) sign.

If the planet's nature concurs with its placement, sign and the chart's sect, then it has a dignity known as "In Hayz".

If its nature opposes all of them, then it has a negative form of dignity known as "Ex Conditione".

The last column ("Munakara") delineates that the planet is in a state of *contention*. Planet A is in Munakara (state of contention) when it is ruled (using traditional rulers) by Planet B, which has a different sect nature to itself, and Planet B is ruled by Planet C which also has a different sect nature to itself.

E.g. the Sun (has a diurnal sect nature) is in Aries, and so is ruled by Mars (which has a nocturnal sect nature). Because Mars rules the Sun yet has a different sect nature to the Sun, potentially there may be discord between them.

Whether that potential discord will become actual then depends on the sect condition of the planet ruling Mars. If the sect nature of Mar's ruler is the same as the sect nature of Mars (nocturnal) no further disharmony is involved and the potential discord is unlikely to become actual. But if Mar's ruler has a different sect nature (i.e diurnal) to Mars sect nature (nocturnal), that means further disharmony is involved and the original disharmony between the Sun and Mars will manifest, and the Sun is in Munakara - a state of *contention*.

"*Munakara* gives us an idea of the dangers of crossing boundaries – twice – and the trouble a planet can get into when it moves through enemy territory. Imagine the youngest child in a family of three siblings. If the middle child is getting picked on by the eldest because they are suffering their own torments, then retaliation goes back to the smallest child, who risks danger from both its elder siblings.

Each of the planets reacts differently to being in munakara according to its own character and its significations are often areas of stress for the individual". Munkara information is from [Joy Usher](#), and her source is Al-Biruni, Book of Instruction in Art of Astrology, Notation 497, p. 308

- 1 DIGNIT A page of information => planetary day and hour, a 30° modulus strip
- 3) IES / HORAR => a list showing point glyph, longitude, speed, travel, declination
- Y: => a list showing point glyph, ruler, exaltation, triplicity, term, face, detriment, fall, score
- => a list showing a very few closest aspects with orb shown as time from exact

- 1 DIGNIT Shows the 16 closest Aspects, the Essential Dignities and the Planetary Sects.
- 4) IES/ SECTS:

### Time Lord activation in the Radix Chart

Planets become activated in a radix chart when they become "Time Lords". This means a planet becomes the highlighted planet in a chart via some technique's rules, and when it does then during a certain specified period of time it has an increased influence - in both the radix chart and also as transits to the chart.

These activations show when certain indications in the natal chart are most likely to manifest i.e. the planet ruling the activated sign will perform its best. The activations

work by stepping through the chart, (traditional) planet by planet (and for Firdaria also the lunar Nodes), giving each planet (or node) “rulership” over a period of time in an individual’s life.

There are three such Time Lord based techniques available in Astro Gold - Firdaria, Profecions and Zodiacal Releasings.

1 FIRDAR Firdaria show significant astrological periods from birth to age 100

5) IA: Each planet has a period of greater years and a period of lesser years  
 The individual’s life is broken up into time periods ruled by a planet or pair of planets  
 The quality of life at that time is shown by the nature of the planets involved, along with their condition in the natal chart  
 A Venus-Jupiter period would indicate great prosperity and joy, while a Mars-Saturn period would be one of hardship  
 The only thing you have to determine is whether the chart is diurnal or nocturnal  
 You then begin with either the Sun or Moon accordingly as the ruler of the first major period of life  
 Each major period is divided into 7 sub-periods, ruled in order by the other planets, beginning with the ruler of the major period

=> The list shows each planetary period and within that its sub-periods, when that period or sub-period begins and the native's age at that time

- In the gear icon  (top right) there are two options - Standard (Nodes come after all the planets) or Nodal Variation (Nodes come after Mars)

1 PROFE For the first year of life, *by default* the sign the *Ascendant* is in is the activated  
 6) CTIONSsign, and the ruler of that sign becomes the Time Lord for the first year

: After that, on your birthday each year, the following sign (in zodiacal order) becomes activated, and so the ruler of it then becomes the Time Lord for that year

Thus after 12 years all the signs in the chart have become activated, so in the 13th year the first sign becomes re-activated again, and so on

=> First nine 12 year periods in the native's life are listed, labeled with the native's age at the beginning of the period (the first period starting at the chart date)

For each 12 year period listed, the 12 years within it are shown, labeled with the native's age at the beginning of each year

For each of those years the activated sign is shown, and it's ruling planet (which is the Time Lord for that year),

plus the 12 months within it are also shown, labeled with the native's age at the beginning of each month,

along with the activated sign and the Time Lord ruler of that sign

- The initial activated sign doesn't need to be sign the Ascendent is in. Using the gear icon  (top right) you can select any sign, or the sign the following are in:

Ascendent, Midheaven, Sun, Moon, Lot of Fortune

1 ZODIAC Also divide a person's life into periods of time using activated signs, but the periods are longer e.g. decades

7) AL RELEASES: The number of years a sign is activated, is the same as the years of its ruler's planetary period (orbital period)

Any sign can be the sign that is (first) activated at birth, but by default the sign the Lot of Spirit is in is activated first. Use the gear icon  (top right) to choose Traditionally using the sign of the Lot of Spirit is best for things like worldly direction and career, and the Lot of Fortune for bodily health

Once the years associated with a sign have transpired in the native's life, the next period starts using the next sign in zodiacal order to the previous one, and so on

There are also sub-periods that are months as opposed to years long (level2), and sub-periods within those lasting weeks (level3) and within that sub-periods lasting days (level4)

In each level the same principle applies, i.e. the sign's ruler's planetary period is the number of years, or number of months, or number of weeks etc

=> Four levels are shown (years/months/weeks/days) with a list of activated signs applicable to each level, plus for levels 1 and 2 the native's age when each sign is activated, and for levels 3 and 4 the day and time when each sign is activated

Additionally under 1 Chart Traditional are Lunar Mansions...

1 LUNAR Are like a special zodiac just for the the Moon, based on the Moon's position relative to various groups of stars.

8) MANSIONS: There are 28 lunar mansions, corresponding to the average of 28 days it takes the Moon to circle the zodiac, are 12° 51' in the zodiac, starting at 0 Aries.

=> For all Displayed Points the Mansion number is listed, along with its English, Picatrix and Arabic name Clicking on a row in the list pops up a brief interpretation for the relevant Mansion.

- The gear icon  (top right) allows you to select the zodiac to use

## 1 CHART - Midpoints

1 MIDPOINTS For each chart point and midpoint - modality, sign, longitude, modulus used, house.

- LIST: The modulus used can be 22.5°, 30°, 45°, 60°, 90°, 120°, 180°, 360°  
The list can be sorted by - point, sign, modality, modality & sign, or by modulus (if using this to sort by you also need to specify the specific modulus to use as well).
- 2 MIDPOI For each chart point - shows any midpoints (or other points) the chart point is directly aspecting by the modulus used, and the orb involved.
- 0) NT TREES: The modulus used can be 22.5°, 30°, 45°, 60°, 90°, 120°, 180°, 360°  
The allowable orb can also be specified.  
The list is scrollable allowing trees of unlimited length

## 1 CHART - Minor Bodies

- 2 ASTER Shows a list of Asteroids => glyph, name, number, longitude, motion direction
- 1) OIDS (D/Rx), travel, latitude, right ascension, declination.
- LIST:
- Using the gear icon  (top right) you can select the individual set of minor bodies used (or all of the sets), sort by any column except motion, or save the list as a PDF file. And if you haven't already, you can download any additional asteroids and extra bodies that are available, as well as extend the calculation range for the asteroids that you are using (see [here](#) for details).
- 2 ASTER Shows the nearest aspects in a chart involving an asteroid or extra body,
- 2) OIDS sorted from smallest to largest orb.
- ASPECT S:
- Using the gear icon  (top right) you can display all the aspects in a single column (which you need to scroll down to see everything), or display just the aspects that will fit on one screen (using two columns).

### NOTES re the Minor Bodies

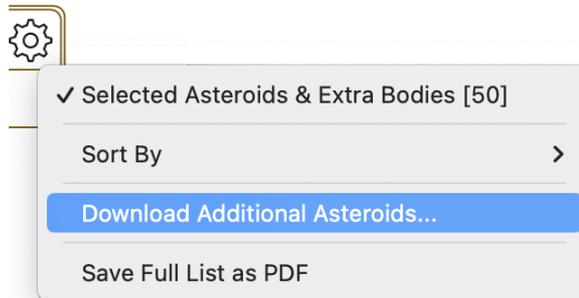
[A] The makeup of the minor bodies is:

- Standard asteroids (50) - originally shipped
- Martha Lang Westcott's asteroids (71) - additional asteroids that can be downloaded
- Zane Stein's Centaurs & Dwarves (42) - additional extra bodies that can be downloaded
- Egyptian Mythological Asteroids (19)
- Muse Asteroids (11)
- All Asteroids & Extra Bodies (154)

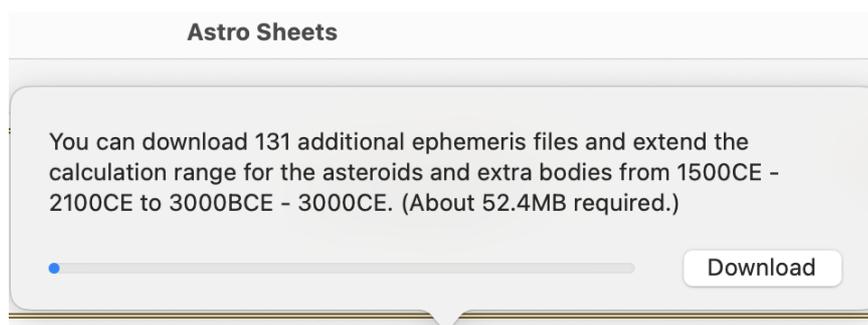
### >> **How to Download additional minor bodies, plus also extend their calculation range**

- 1) In the **View** menu click on **Astro Sheets**, or in the Toolbar click on the **Sheets** icon.

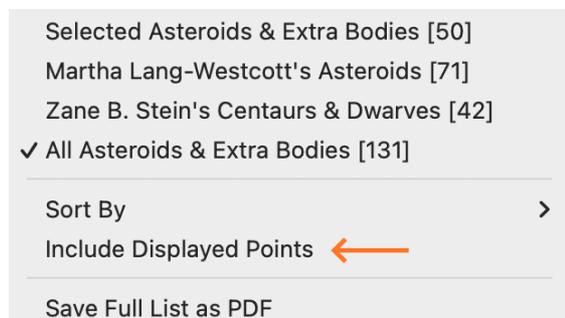
- 2) In the "Astro Sheets" window, in the left hand pane Tree menu, under the "1 Chart" heading, "Minor Bodies" sub heading, click on the **Asteroids List** sheet (see [Tree menu](#) if this sheet isn't visible).
- 3) In the top right of the "Asteroids List" sheet click on the **Gear** icon. The menu below will drop down...



- 4) Click on **Download Additional Asteroids**. A dialog will pop up at the top of the Astro Sheets window, as below ...



- 5) Click on the **Download** button to proceed, or click anywhere else in the Astro Sheet to cancel the download.
- 6) Once the downloading has finished, you need to turn the display of these additional minor bodies on. In the top right of the "Asteroids List" Sheet click on the **Gear** icon again. This time the menu that drops down is different...

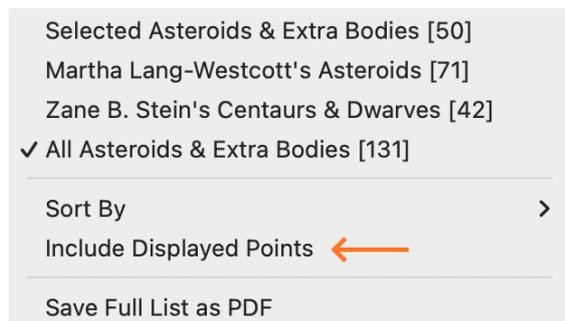


- 7) Select the set of **minor bodies** you want to be displayed in the Sheet.

**NOTE:** All of these additional minor planets will now also be available as **Extra Points** to put in charts along with all the other minor planets (see [Displayed Points](#)).

## >> How to easily see asteroid conjunctions to the displayed points of the currently selected chart

- 1) In the **View** menu click on **Astro Sheets**, or in the Toolbar click on the **Sheets** icon.
- 2) In the "Astro Sheets" window, in the left hand pane Tree menu, under the "1 Chart" heading, "Minor Bodies" sub heading, click on the **Asteroids List** sheet (see [Tree menu](#) if this sheet isn't visible).
- 3) In the top right of the "Asteroids List" sheet click on the **Gear** icon. The menu below will drop down..



- 4) Click on **Include Displayed Points**. Now the displayed points of the chart the Astro Sheets are for will be included as points in amongst the asteroids in the Asteroid List.
- 5) When the list is sorted by longitude and declination the asteroids that are conjunct these displayed points will be immediately before or after them in the list.

## 1 CHART - Lots/Parts

2 ARABICA list of Arabic Parts => name, longitude, house

3) LOTS

- LIST:
- Using the gear icon ⚙️ (top right) you can choose between Al Biruni's Parts, Bonatti's List of Commodities, Hellenistic Lots, or the Seven Hermetic Lots. You can also sort by any column, and save any list as a PDF.

2 ARABIC=> Aspects from either Al Biruni's Parts, Bonatti's Commodities, Hellenistic Lots

4) LOT or the Seven Hermetic lots to other points in the chart, sorted from smallest to ASPECTlargest orb.

S:

- Using the gear icon ⚙️ (top right) you can display all the aspects in a single column (which you need to scroll down to see everything), or display just the aspects that will fit on one screen (using two columns).

## NOTES re the LOTS

*Hellenistic Lots*: Source is **Dorian Gieseler Greenbaum**.

Dorian has practised and taught astrology since 1992. In 2009, she received her Ph.D. from the Warburg Institute, London.

Her book, based on her PhD, *The Daimon in Hellenistic Astrology: Origins and Influence*, was published in 2016. She is also known for her book *Temperament: Astrology's Forgotten Key* (2005).

Dorian lectures and teaches internationally (FAA, UAC, the British AA, University of Wales Trinity St David on the MA in Cultural Astronomy and Astrology). Her interests include astrological lots and how the daimon works in astrology while her current passion is to rename the Part of Spirit to its correct name, the Lot of Daimon.

*The Seven Hermetic Lots*: Source is **Chris Brennan**

Chris has a special interest in the history, philosophy, and practice of ancient astrology, and specialises in the Greco-Roman tradition of astrology known as [Hellenistic Astrology](#).

He is the former President of the Association for Young Astrologers, and the former Research Director of the National Council of Geocosmic Research. He was also an associate editor and columnist for *The Mountain Astrologer* magazine, and served on the board of Kepler College.

Chris now hosts of a weekly podcast called [The Astrology Podcast](#), and runs [The Denver Astrology Group](#).

*Tables of Sensitive Points in Hellenistic astrology, and according to Al-Burini*: can be found at: [Arabian Parts - Astrodienst Astrowiki](#)

## 1 CHART - Fixed Stars

2 STARS => name, magnitude, longitude, latitude, right ascension, declination

5) LIST:

- Using the gear icon  (top right) you can choose the Star Set to use, or which column to sort by

2 STAR => point glyph, aspect, star name, orb ...sorted from smallest to largest orb

6) ASPECT

S:

- Using the gear icon  (top right) you can choose the Star Set to use. Also whether to view all the aspects in a single column (that you need to scroll down), or the just those closest aspects that can be displayed on one screen in two columns.

The Star Sets available are:

- ❖ All Named Stars [507]
- ❖ Benhenian (Hermes) Stars [15]
- ❖ Brightest Stars (Mag < 2.0) [48]
- ❖ Ecliptic Stars (Lat < 10.0°) [132]
- ❖ Hermes Stars [15]

2 STAR Parans are mundane angles between stars and chart points that are (in any 7) PARAN combination of) rising, culminating, setting or located at the IC (the paran

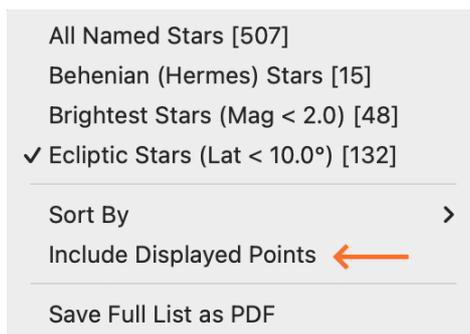
S: types).

=> point glyph, point paran (rises/culminates/sets), star, star paran, orb

- Using the gear icon  (top right) you can choose the Star Set to use, the maximum orb allowed, the paran types to display, and whether to view all the parans in a single column (that you need to scroll down), or just the closest aspected parans that can be displayed on one screen in two columns.

>> **How to easily see star conjunctions to the displayed points of the currently selected chart**

- 1) In the **View** menu click on **Astro Sheets**, or in the Toolbar click on the **Sheets** icon.
- 2) In the "Astro Sheets" window, in the left hand pane Tree menu, under the "1 Chart" heading, "Fixed Stars" sub heading, click on the **Stars List** sheet (see [Tree menu](#) if this sheet isn't visible).
- 3) In the top right of the "Stars List" sheet click on the **Gear** icon. The menu below will drop down..



- 4) Click on **Include Displayed Points**. Now the displayed points of the chart the Astro Sheets are for will be included as points in amongst the stars in the Stars List.
- 5) When the list is sorted by longitude and declination the stars that are conjunct these displayed points will be immediately before or after them in the list.

**1 CHART - Nodes & Apsides**

2 NODES/=> point glyph, point longitude, ascending (north) node longitude, descending (south) node longitude, geocentric distance, heliocentric distance, perihelion, LIST: aphelion

All planets (except the Sun) have north and south nodes, just like the Moon does.

Apsides are the two key distances in the orbit of a planetary body about its primary body. In our solar system Perihelion is where a planet comes closest to the Sun, Aphelion is where a planet is furthest from the Sun.

Clicking on a row will pop up Heliocentric orbital parameters for that point:

- ❖ status (approaching or receding from the Sun)
- ❖ distance info
- ❖ next exact apside date

2 NODES/=> point 1 glyph, aspect glyph, point 2 glyph, point 2 name, aspect orb

9) APSIDES

- ASPECT • Using the gear icon ⚙️ (top right) you can choose the Node/Apside Types and the Tabulation Mode.

S:

(nearest The Node/Apside Types available are:

- ❖ Ascending (north) Node
- ❖ Descending (south) Node
- ❖ Perihelion
- ❖ Aphelion

## 2 CHARTS

3 BIWHE A BiWheel showing one chart in the inner wheel and a second chart in the outer wheel

3 BIGRID: A BiGrid (square shape), with planets from one chart across the top, and planets from a second chart down the left

Where they intersect any aspect between the planet from chart and the planet from the other chart is shown

3 SYNASTA page of information for two charts => 2 biwheels with the charts in different rings, a synastry grid

=> a list showing chart 1 point glyph, aspect glyph, chart 2 point glyph, orb - sorted from smallest to largest orb

3 DUAL A page of information for two charts => each chart in its own single wheel, a synastry grid

S:

## 3 CHARTS

3 TRI- A TriWheel showing one chart in the inner wheel, a second chart in the middle wheel and a third in the outer wheel

3 THREE Three charts, each in their own single wheel

5) WHEEL

S:

## 4 CHARTS

3 QUADRA QuadriWheel showing one chart in the inner wheel, a second chart in the 6)I- inner middle wheel and a third in the outer middle wheel, and a chart in the WHEEL:outer wheel

3 FOUR Four charts, each in their own single wheel

7)WHEEL

S:

### NOTES:

Some of the available lists in Astro Sheets contain types of information not available in other places in Astro Gold, such as:

1. Scores for sign and house modes, elements and polarities. These scores are a measurement of the overall strength of the modality, element or polarity in the chart.

When calculating the scores for each of these items Astro Gold takes into account both the number of planets/points having that modality, element or polarity, plus the significance of each planet/point in the chart. Significance is related to how important in terms of everyday functioning that planet/point is on average, and the level of conscious access to that planet or point's energy/reality that is generally experienced.

Astro Gold initially assigns a score of 1 for each planet/point that belongs to a particular modality, element or polarity.

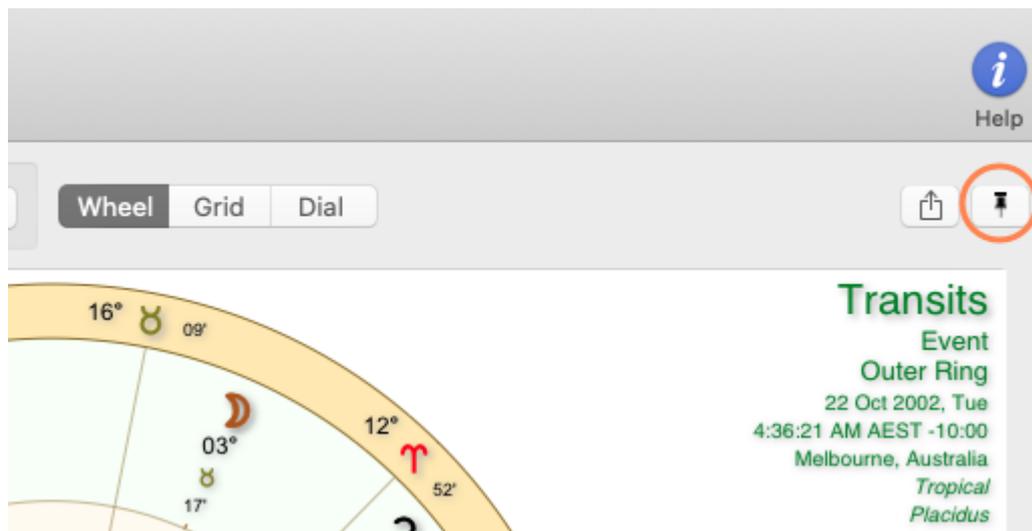
That initial basic score is then weighted according to it's significance, by multiplying it by the values below:

- a. Multiplier 3 - Sun, Moon, Ascendant, MC
  - b. Multiplier 2 - Mercury, Venus, Mars
  - c. Multiplier 1 - Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto
  - d. Multiplier 0 - All other chart points
2. A more detailed list of chart points' data, midpoint trees, firdaria, profections and zodiacal releasings, and star parans/aspects etc
    - a. Firdaria uses the "Standard" system - with nodes at the end of the sequence by default. However you can change the system used to "Nodal Variant" in Preferences, Calcs.
    - b. Star Aspects and Star Parans are fixed star listings that utilize one of 5 pre-supplied Star sets.
    - c. Asteroid listing and aspects.

### 7.1.1 Pinned Astro Sheets & Charts

Astro Gold has a multi-chart window capability via *pinned Charts & Astro Sheets*.

You can now pin any currently displayed wheel/dial/grid and any Astro Sheet using a Pin Button at the top right of respectively the Viewing Area or the Astro Sheets window. These *pinned views* (i.e. separate floating windows) can be re-sized, moved, minimized and remembered across Astro Gold sessions, until you choose to close them. An example of the Pin Button at the top right of a window is shown below (in this case in the Viewing Area), in the orange circle:



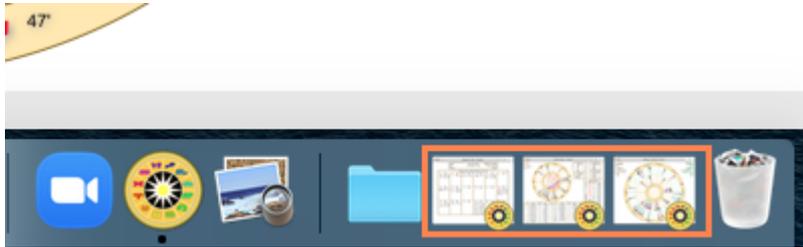
#### >> To Open a New Pinned Chart or Astro Sheet Window

- Click on the little **Pin** in top right of the Viewing Area of the Main Screen, or top right on any Astro Sheet, to open a new window containing what was displayed in the Viewing Area or that Astro Sheet.

#### Pinned Chart/Sheet Features

- 1) Each Pinned Chart or Sheet is interactive in the same way as a normal chart/dial/grid and Astro Sheet view is. You can double-click to get interpretations, use a right-mouse click to bring up chart/sheet options etc. This makes it possible for multiple Pinned Charts/Sheets for the same chart, in their various windows, to have differing options such as displayed points, selected modulus orbs, star sets etc.
- 2) You can re-size a Pinned Chart/Sheet window by using the mouse to drag the corner of the window in towards, or out away from, the center of the window. By shrinking the size down you can arrange Pinned Charts/Sheets side by side, or one above the other etc. Or you can just overlap them - clicking on one brings it to the front.
- 3) If you minimize a Pinned Chart/Sheet it will be placed on the App Dock, the area always at the very bottom of the screen - see below. The window icons in the orange

rectangle are all Pinned Charts/Sheets that were minimized. Click on a minimized Pinned Chart/Sheet to restore it to a window of its original size in Astro Gold.

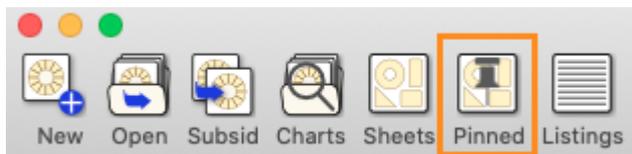


- 4) Each Pinned Chart/Sheet has a **star** in the top right-hand corner, just next to the Action Button. Click on it, and it will make that chart one of your saved favorites, stored for quick access in the Pinned Astro Sheets Manager (see below).

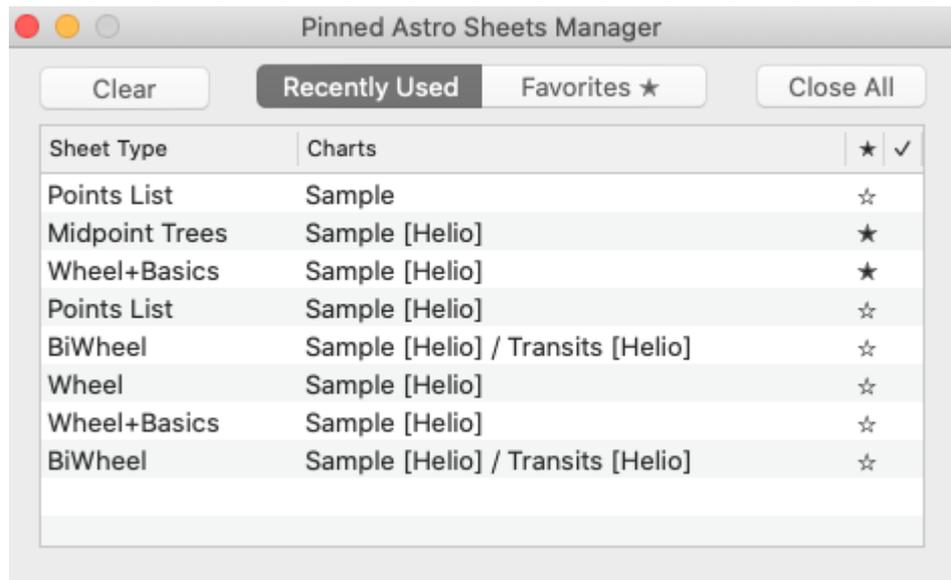


**>> To Open the Pinned Astro Sheets Manager**

After you have created your first Pinned Chart or Sheet, a large Pin icon will appear on the Toolbar.



- Click on the **Pin** icon and the "Pinned Astro Sheets Manager" will open.



### Pinned Astro Sheets Manager

Keeps two lists: all Pinned Charts/Sheets and all Charts/Sheets you marked as a Favorite.

So there are thus two tabs:

- Recently Used - these are recently opened (and maybe still opened, or now closed) Pinned Sheets or Chart windows.
- Favorites - these are Pinned Sheets or Chart windows you have made Favorites by clicking on the Star in a Sheet or Chart window.

"Recently Used" chart windows/sheets may also be "Favorites" of course, so some chart windows/sheets may appear in both lists - a filled in (dark) star indicates it's a favorite.

You can open any chart window or sheet regardless of which tab it is in by double-clicking on it. A check-mark (tick) next to a chart in either list indicates whether it is open or not.

- To open all Favorites at once click on the **Favorites** tab, then click on the **Open All** button. These sheets will then be added to the Recently Used list.
- In the Recently Used list, if a sheet isn't already a favorite, you can just double-click it's empty star to immediately make it a Favorite.
- In the Recently Used list, to just clear the list of Pinned Sheets click on the **Clear** button.
- In the Recently Used list, to actually close all currently opened Pinned Sheets click on the **Close All** button. Until cleared from the list these chart windows/sheets can all be opened again even by double-clicking on them, in subsequent Astro Gold sessions.

### Suggested usage

Making a chart window or a sheet a Favorite straight away is advantageous for several reasons.

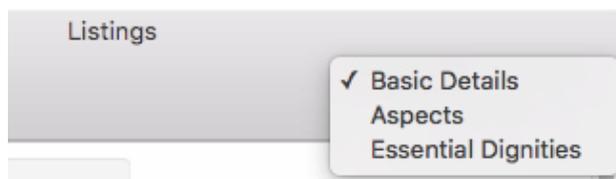
- It means it will always be on the Favorites list.
- You can open all favorites in one go in the Favorites tab using the "Open All" button, which is handy in subsequent Astro Gold sessions.
- You can remove an *individual* sheet/window from the Favorites list by double-clicking on its star in the list.

## 7.2 Listings

Listings are simple tabulated reports. There are three types of listing possible.

### >> To view a Listing report

1. Click on the **Listing** icon in the toolbar (at the top of the screen) - or in the **View** menu select **Listings** - to display the "Listings" window.
2. Click in the dropdown box called "Listing Type" on the right at the top of the "Listings" window to select the listing you want.



- Basic Details
  - For 1 chart lists the chart Points, Longitude, Declination and House, and you can sort by any of these.
  - For 2, 3 or 4 charts the list and sorting is exactly the same, just it is for all the charts, one after the other in reverse order to the selection order.
- Aspects
  - For Chart 1 lists the aspects *within* the chart as Point 1, Aspect, Point 2 and the Orb of the aspect, and you can sort by Point 1, Point 2 or Orb but not by aspect
  - If there is more than one chart selected the aspects to Chart 1 from each of the other selected charts is listed, one after the other, in reverse order to the selection order.
- Essential Dignities
  - For 1 chart lists the following: Point, Ruler, Exalted, Triplicity, Term, Face, Detriment, Fall and Score. Sorting is possible by Point or Score.
  - For 2, 3 or 4 charts the list and sorting is exactly the same, just it is for all charts, one after the other in reverse order to the selection order.

See [Essential Dignities](#) for more information.

Each listing can be sorted by clicking on the dropdown box called **Sort Order** on the left at the top of the Listings screen, and selecting a sorting option.

### 7.3 Dynamic Event Information

Dynamic Listings are reports of dynamic events (e.g. transits, progressions etc.) occurring for a radix chart over a period of time. You can access Dynamic Listings from the **View Menu**, or via the **Dynamic** icon on the Toolbar (if you need it [Screen Areas](#) shows where the Toolbar is).

An example of a Dynamic Listing is shown below. This is a listing for the radix chart called "Sample". Radix means the birth (or original) positions for a natal (or event) chart.

H1	P1	Asp	P2	H2	Evt	Meth	Date	Time	Age	Pos1	R	Pos2	R
3	♃	♈	♂	11	(X)	Tr-Ra	8 Mar 2025	12:03 PM	40.56	29°Pi09'	D	29°Sc09'	D
3	♃	♁	♃	12	(X)	Tr-Ra	27 Feb 2025	7:41 AM	40.53	28°Pi48'	D	28°Sg48'	R
3	♃	♁	♃	10	(X)	Tr-Ra	23 Mar 2025	10:12 AM	40.60	29°Pi42'	D	29°Li42'	D
3	♃	♁	♃	10	(X)	Tr-Ra	5 Nov 2025	10:09 AM	41.22	29°Pi42'	R	29°Li42'	D
5	♃	♈	♂	4	(X)	Tr-Ra	9 Jun 2025	7:57 PM	40.81	28°Ta35'	D	13°Ar35'	D
5	♃	♈	♂	4	(X)	Tr-Ra	13 Dec 2025	6:32 AM	41.32	28°Ta35'	R	13°Ar35'	D
5	♃	♁	♂	8	(X)	Tr-Ra	7 Jan 2025	10:03 AM	40.39	23°Ta30'	R	23°Le30'	D
5	♃	♁	♂	8	(X)	Tr-Ra	23 Feb 2025	3:01 PM	40.52	23°Ta30'	D	23°Le30'	D
5	♃	♁	♂	11	(X)	Tr-Ra	20 Jun 2025	8:34 AM	40.84	29°Ta09'	D	29°Sc09'	D
5	♃	♁	♂	11	(X)	Tr-Ra	29 Nov 2025	12:08 AM	41.29	29°Ta09'	R	29°Sc09'	D
5	♃	♁	♃	12	(X)	Tr-Ra	14 Jun 2025	12:57 AM	40.83	28°Ta48'	D	28°Sg48'	R
5	♃	♁	♃	12	(X)	Tr-Ra	7 Dec 2025	7:18 AM	41.31	28°Ta48'	R	28°Sg48'	R

Astro Gold ships with eight kinds of *Dynamic Jobs*.

A Dynamic Job contains all the instructions, settings and parameters for what dynamic events to generate in a Dynamic Listing:

- Transits of Outer Planets
- Transits of Inner Planets
- Lunar Transits
- Transits/Progressions 1 Yr
- Transits/Progressions/Directions 1 Yr
- Major Lifetime Transits
- Mundane Transits of Outers 1 Yr
- Transits to Radix and Progressions to Progressions

However you can create your own Dynamic Jobs as well, see [Preferences - Dynamic Listings](#).

These Dynamic Listings are only ever for the chart selected in the Dynamic Listing window, independently of, and regardless of whether one or more charts (Chart1, Chart2 etc) are selected in the main app window.

Once the report is generated Dynamic Listings can be viewed in one of two display formats.

a) Standard Listing format

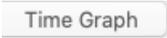
Just referred to as "Listing", this is the default format (shown above). It lists each event down the page, with the data (e.g. event date and planetary positions) for each event in columns extending across the page.

The number of events generated is determined by the Entering/Leaving setting.

To see the report in this format click on the Listing button  under the calendar icon.

b) Time Graph format

Each event is also listed down the page, and the data is also listed in columns. However a group of the column headings are actually points in the calendar over the time period used, and the peak (and optionally also duration) of each event is displayed in these columns, forming a plotted calendar of events. This allows you to see at a glance the timing of all events as a whole. The number of events generated is always the same.

To see the report in this format click on the Time Graph button  next to the Listing button.

With either format, by default blank section divider lines are automatically added (with sections automatically determined from the current sort order e.g. sorting by planet creates a section for each planet, sorting by date creates a section for each day, calendar month, year or decade depending on the duration of the report).

You can however control whether section breaks - blank (divider) lines - are included or not via the [Sort](#) menu.

## Multiple simultaneous Listings

You can generate multiple Dynamic Listings (for the same or different charts) and have them all in separate windows on the screen at the same time. To do this click on the "New Window" icon  in the top right corner of an existing listing's window.

### >> To generate a Dynamic Listing

1. *If no Dynamic Listing windows are currently open* - click on the **Dynamic** icon in the Toolbar (at the top of the screen) - or in the **View** menu select **Dynamic Listings** - to display the "Dynamic Listing" screen.

Otherwise if you have previously generated a Dynamic Listing *and want to keep it*, to create a new separate listing (complete with its own settings) click on the "New Window" icon  in the top right corner of the existing listing's window title bar.

2. Click in the **dropdown box** across the very top of the screen to select the kind of Dynamic Job you want to use to generate the report with.
3. When a Dynamic Listing window is initially opened, whatever chart is currently selected as Chart 1 in the main app window will automatically be displayed to the right of the "Chart" button, which is directly underneath the "Dynamic Job" dropdown box. If you had more than one chart selected in the main app window, and you want the listing to be for one these other charts, then click the **Chart** button, and choose that other chart.
4. Click on the **Location** icon  near the top right of the window above the "PDF" icon, if you want to change the location for the dynamic events. Once changed click the **Apply** button.

*TIP:* If regardless of location you want times for the listing to be in universal timezone (UT) simply check the **UT** checkbox in the bottom right hand corner.

5. Fill in the **Starting** date or click on the **Calendar** icon  and select a date.

*TIP:* you can click on "Now" or "Radix" above the selected date field ... to immediately select the current date, or the date of chart (who the dynamic events are being generated for)

6. Set the duration of time for the listing - by clicking in the **unit of time dropdown box** to select between Days, Months or Years, and entering the number of time units to use in the textbox labeled **For** to the left of that, to define the actual period to generate dynamic events for.

You can enter a date before 0 AD, i.e. a BC or BC date, from the calendar, or by putting a "-" sign before the year in the "Starting" textbox, to indicate the number of years before 0 AD the Start date is. Remember that there is no actual year 0 in the BE/AD system. So -14 years (an astronomical expression) does not equate to the year 14 BC (a Julian Calendar expression), it equates to 15 BC.

7. Click the **Run** button. The report is generated.

### List display format

When the display format is "Listing" the Dynamic list has the following columns ('radix' means the Base Chart, usually a natal or event chart) :

- House the Dynamic Point is in (H1)
- Dynamic Point (P1)
- Aspect (Asp)
- Radix Point (P2)
- House the Radix Point is in (H)
- Event stage - entering, exact or leaving (Evt)
- Event Method e.g. transit to radix, secondary progressed to radix, solar arc to radix (Metho)
- Date
- Time
- Age - as at the event date/time, the lapsed time since the radix chart date/time
- Point 1 zodiac position (Pos1)
- Point 1 movement direction - retrograde or direct (R)
- Point 2 zodiac position (Pos2)
- Point 2 movement direction - retrograde or direct (RD)

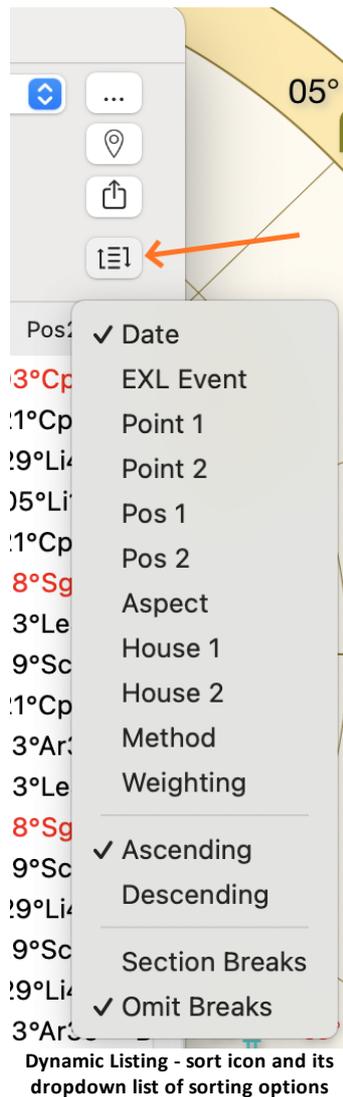
H1	P1	Asp	P2	H	Evt ^	Metho	Date	Time	Age	Pos1	R	Pos2	R
1	♃	♆	♃	8	(X)	Tr-Ra	3 Jan 2021	11:19 AM	64.72	01°Aq54'	D	01°Sg54'	R
11	♃	♆	♃	1	(X)	Tr-Ra	1 Feb 2021	8:29 PM	64.80	19°Pi17'	D	04°Ta17'	D

>> **Showing more or less dynamic events in the list**

1. Click on the **Entering/Leaving** icon (  E/L ) to see when the event (e.g. the transit) enters into orb of exact aspect with the radix planet, and also leaves orb of exact aspect with the radix planet. It goes dark (  E/L ) when switched on. Click on it again to switch it off. When switched off aspects of the dynamic point to the radix point (hits) are shown only if they are exact.
2. To delete an event or a blank line from the list click on the event or line, then press the **delete** key on the keyboard. Deleted rows are restored whenever the Listing is re-sorted or re-run.

>> **Ways to sort the report**

1. Clicking in any **column header** sorts the listing with that data in ascending order (all except the Time and Point movement columns).
2. Clicking on the **Sort** icon in the Dynamic Listing screen enables you to select a sort option from a list that drops down - see below.
3. If you don't want the report divided into different sections with blank (divider) lines then make sure **Omit Breaks** is ticked.



### >> To see an Interpretation for an event

- Double-click on the event. A window pops up with the interpretation in it.

### Time Graph display format

When the display format is "Time Graph" the report has the following columns ('radix' means the Base Chart, usually a natal or event chart) :

- Dynamic Point (P1)
- Aspect (Asp)
- Radix Point (P2)
- Event Method e.g. transit to radix, secondary progressed to radix, solar arc to radix (Metho)
- Calendar Point columns.

The Calendar Point column headers are either a series of contiguous days, months, quarters or years, or a mix of these, depending on how long the report period spans.

Each event, regardless of whether Entering/Leaving is on or off, is listed only once down the page, on the left. To the right of the event, if Entering/Leaving is on, the entering, exact and leaving moments are marked in the column where those occur, all connected by a line (example as below). If Entering/Leaving is off, only the exact event is marked in the column where it occurs. If there are several exact events occurring for an event within the report duration, these exact events are all connected with a line running through them (not shown).

P1	Asp	P2	Metho	2021								2022			
				Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar
♃	♈	♃	Tr-Ra				E X L					E X L			
♃	♈	♃	Tr-Ra	L			E X L					E X L			
♃	♈	♃	Tr-Ra	X	L			E	X	L		E	X	L	

### >> Showing more or less dynamic events in the list

1. Click on the **Entering/Leaving** icon (  E/L ) to see when the event (e.g. the transit) enters into orb of exact aspect with the radix planet, and also leaves orb of exact aspect with the radix planet. The icon goes dark (  E/L ) when switched on. Click on it again to switch it off. When switched off aspects of the dynamic point to the radix point (hits) are shown only if they are exact.
2. To delete an event or a blank line from the list click on the event or line, then press the **delete** key on the keyboard. Deleted rows are restored whenever the Time Graph is re-sorted or re-run.

### >> Showing on dates on the TimeGraph

- Click on the **Dates** icon (  Dates ) to see the date when the event (e.g. a transiting point aspecting a radix point) starts ("E" for enters into orb), becomes exact ("X"), and ends ("L" for leaves orb).
- An orb is the amount (in degrees, minutes and optionally seconds) of longitude, separately before and also after an exact aspect between two points, in which the aspect is considered "active". For example there can be 1° (in longitude) of orb before an aspect becomes exact i.e. meaning the aspect becomes active 1° before actually becoming exact (0°); and 1° (in longitude) of orb after an aspect becomes exact, meaning the aspect remains active 1° after actually becoming exact.
- The icon goes dark (  Dates ) when switched on. Click on it again to switch it off.
- You can see at the bottom of the screen the date an event starts or ends by hovering the mouse crosshair cursor over the "E" or "L" of the event span icon (E--X--L).

- When the Dates icon is switched off you can still see when events happen using the same method - by hovering the mouse crosshair cursor anywhere over the Time Graph, and as you do so it displays the date for the position where the cursor is, at the bottom of the screen.

### >> Ways to sort the report

- Clicking on the **Sort** icon  in the Dynamic Listing screen enables you to select a sort option from a list that drops down. EXL, Point 1, Point 2, Aspect or Method - and in Ascending or Descending (based on event start and finish dates).

### >> Resizing the TimeGraph window

- Hover the mouse over the edge of the window until it turns into a single or double-pointed arrow. Then holding the mouse button down drag the window edge to the position where you want it to be, then release the mouse button.

### >> To print the list, export the list as a PDF file, or send it to a Calendar

- 1) Click on the **Share** icon  to the right of the "Run" button
- 2) if you choose Print, it will print in landscape.
- 3) To save as a PDF file, select **PDF** and then give the new PDF file a **name**, a **tag** if wanted, and select which **folder** you want to put it in, then click **Save**.
- 4) To send to a Calendar click on **Calendar** (see [Calendar Export](#) for more info).

## 7.3.1 Calendar Export

Astro Gold allows you to export dynamic listing events as calendar entries into your preferred existing calendar source or app, or to an iCalendar file which can be sent to someone to import into a calendar on their own computer. This means that you could, for example, run a dynamic job for someone else, and then send them the iCalendar file to import into their own calendar.

You can generate calendar events for your future transits or other types of dynamic listing events and have these placed into the selected calendar. Each calendar event also has its own notes, which can optionally include an interpretation of the event (if available in the Astro Gold's interpretation files).

After sending events to your calendar, they generally show up there quite quickly. There has been initial successful testing done using Google calendar and Apple's calendar app. However note that calendar apps all differ a little in how they work and present information, so if you do have problems please let us know.

Note that this feature *only* exports future dated events - hence if you run a dynamic report which has past events included in it, none of those will be exportable to your calendar

See [How to export Dynamic Events to a Calendar](#) for info on how to do this.

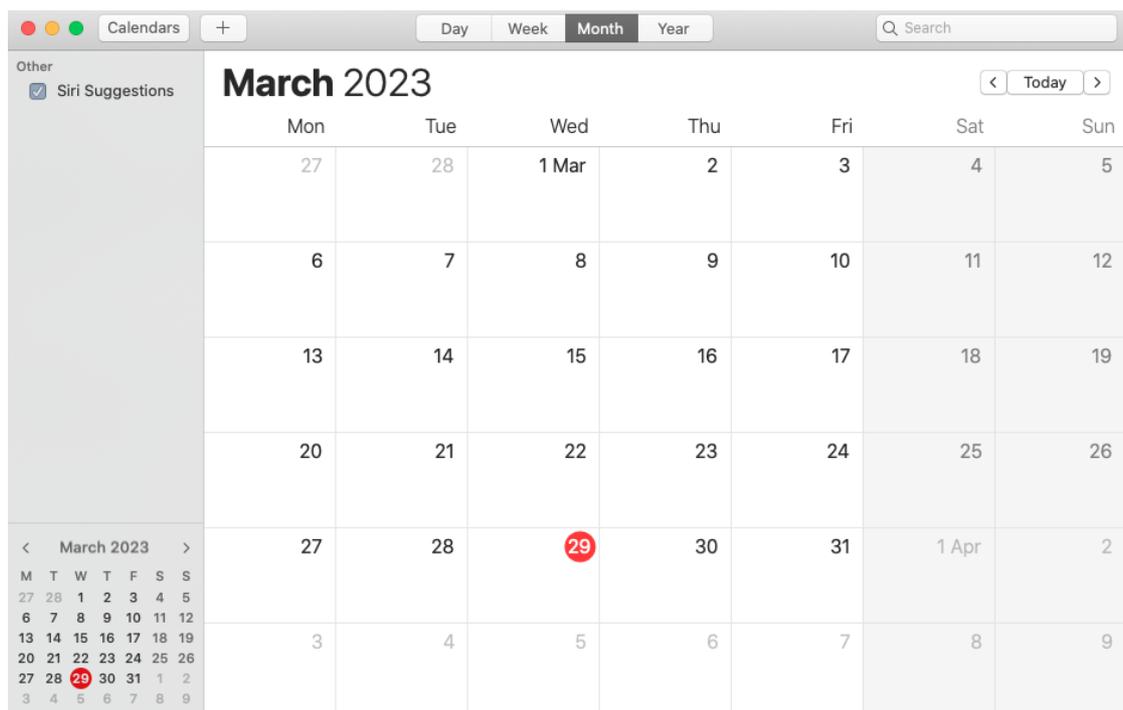
## 7.3.2 How to export Dynamic events to a Calendar

Once you have created a Dynamic Listing you can then export those events to either a calendar on your computer, or one in the cloud.

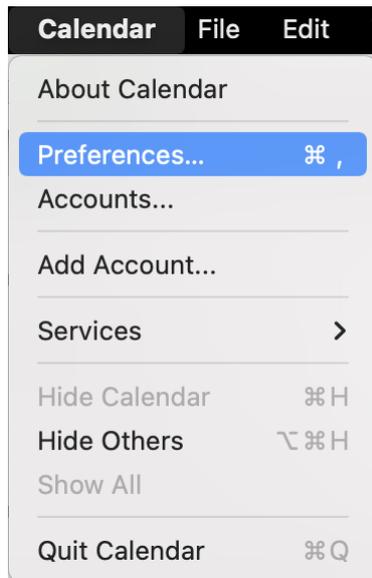
If you want to send the events to a calendar in the cloud you'll need to make sure you have iCloud calendars enabled on your Mac. To do that then see below, otherwise skip to [How to export Events to a Calendar](#).

### >> To enable iCloud Calendars on your Mac

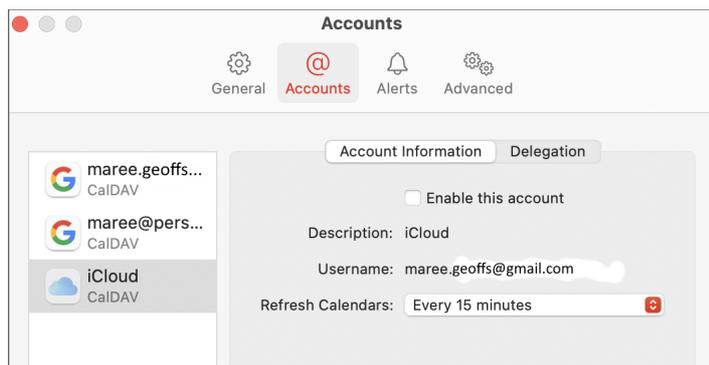
- 1) Open Calendar by clicking on the **Calendars icon** in the taskbar . This will open the "Calendars" window. If you have no existing calendars on your Mac, and iCloud calendars are not enabled either, it will look similar to below...



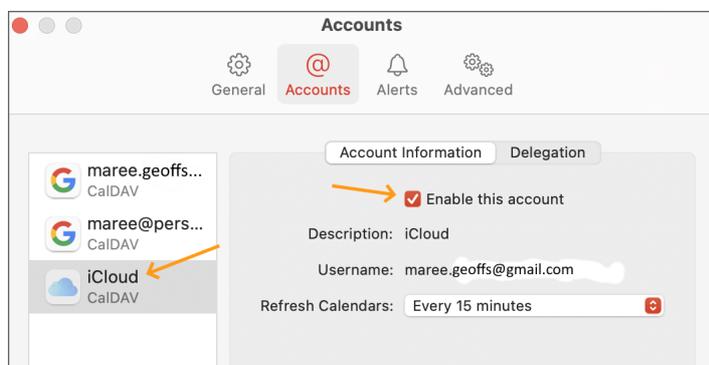
- 2) On the Calendar menu click on **Preferences**



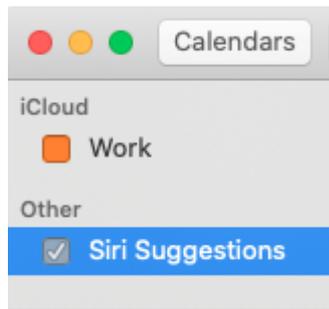
3) A dialog similar to the following will be displayed...



4) In the left-hand list click on the **iCloud** entry, then click in the checkbox labelled **Enable this account**, then close the dialog.

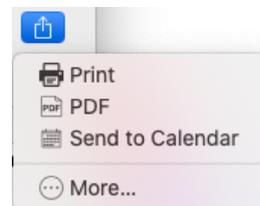


5) The Calendars window will be displayed, this time showing your iCloud account calendars in the left hand column, similar to below...



>> To send Dynamic events to a Calendar

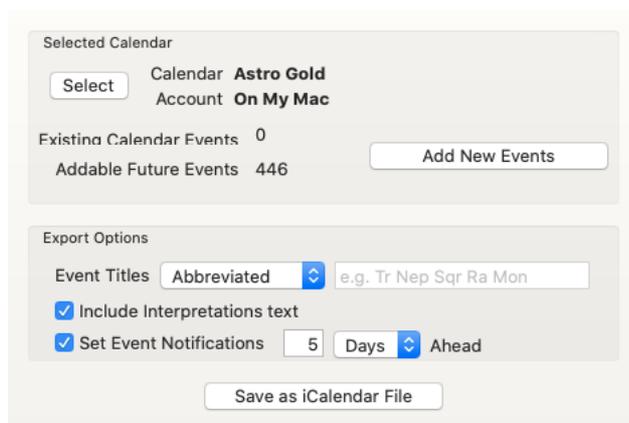
- 1) Generate a Dynamic listing (see [Dynamic Event Information](#) for how to do that)



- 2) Click on the **Share** icon  which pops up this dialog then click on the **Send to Calendar** dropdown menu option.

If you have exported events to a calendar previously these items will have the previous values preselected for you, and if you want to continue using those you just need to add events to be exported.

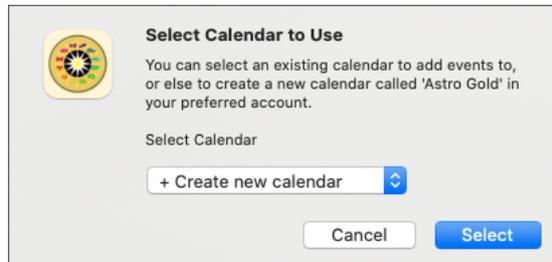
However if this is the first time you are exporting events to a calendar it will display a dialog similar to the following, with no account calendar selected, and no existing or future events (this is because no account or calendar have been selected).



"Send To Calendar" dialog

3. There are two parts to setting up for exporting dynamic events to a calendar:
  - a. Selecting an account, that contains calendars, to use

- b. Selecting a calendar in that account to export events to
4. In the "Selected Calendar" section of the dialog (at the top) click on the **Select** button. This will open a further dialog.



5. As it says, in one of your calendar accounts you can either create a new calendar (called "Astro Gold") or select an existing calendar. You do this in two steps.
  - a) Click on the **dropdown list** with "+ Create new calendar" displayed in it. This will show you all the calendar accounts available and the calendars in them.
    - i. There will always be the [On My Mac] account displayed.
    - ii. And if you have enabled iCloud Calendars (see [here](#) for to do that) the [iCloud] account will also be displayed.
    - iii. If you have previously created one or more calendars in either account you will see them listed under that account. And always "+ Create new calendar" will be an option in these lists too.

NOTE: It is recommended that you opt to create a new "Astro Gold" named calendar which is reserved just for these types of events, initially anyway, in order to keep your existing calendars clean and unaffected (i.e. choose the "+ Create new calendar" menu item).

- iv. Click on the calendar under the account you want to use. You'll be returned to the dialog above with the calendar you chose displayed in the dropdown list.
  - v. Click on the **Select** button.
- b) The dialog will close... and then reappear. If you are happy with the selections you previously made click the **Select** button again - otherwise repeat the steps in (a) above.

6. You will now be back at the main "Send To Calendar" dialog.
  - a. If you haven't actually generated any dynamic events yet -as in step (1) above- or you did but this is the first time you are exporting events to a calendar then "Existing Calendar Events" and "Addable Future Events" will be showing 0. This

doesn't mean there are no events to export, it's just that the total for them isn't showing yet.

- Clicking anywhere away from the "Send To Calendar" dialog will cause it to close. If you previously had generated some dynamic events then clicking again on the Share icon , and selecting the "Share To Calendar" menu item the "Send To Calendar" dialog will be re-displayed and this time the "Addable Future Events" will show how many dynamic events from the current date or later have been generated.

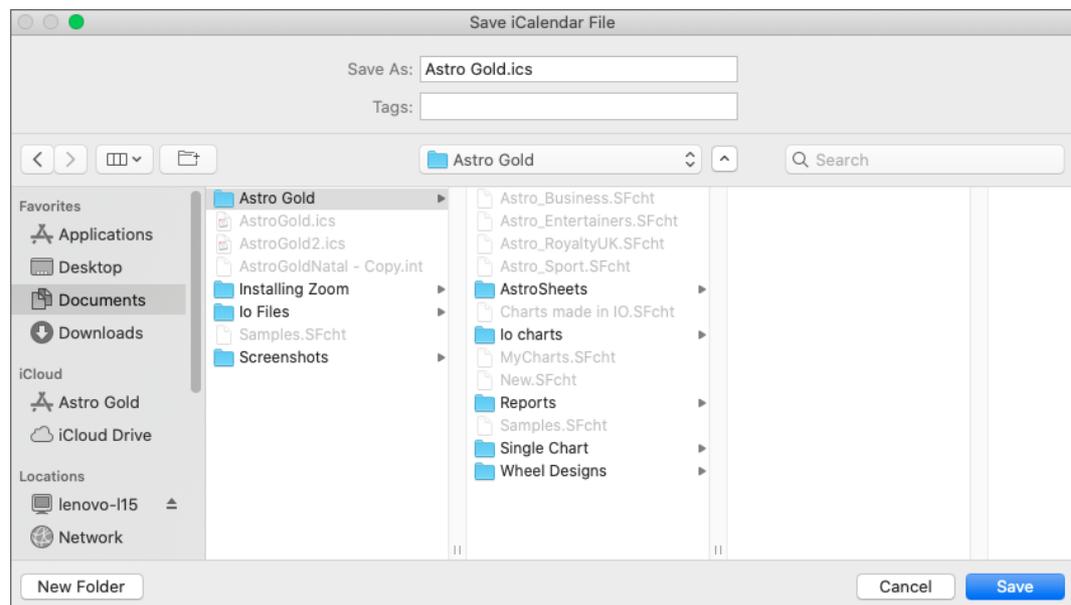
- If you have previously generated some dynamic events -as in step (1) above- then "Addable Future Events" will be showing how many dynamic events from the current date or later have been generated. This will be showing now as an account and a calendar have been selected.

"Send To Calendar" dialog

- Click on the **Add New Events** button. The addable events will be added to the selected calendar, and the "Add New Events" button will be replaced with three different buttons, shown below.

"Send To Calendar" dialog

8. The "Append New Events" button will always be displayed if there are pre-existing events in the selected calendar. Since in this scenario there have just been 438 events added to the currently selected calendar, then that condition applies now, so this button is displayed.
  - a) If you were to now select a different calendar to add these generated events to, and it had pre-existing events in it which you wanted to keep, then you would click on the "Append New Events" button to do just that.
  - b) If however you didn't want to keep those pre-existing events you would not use this button.
9. If the "Replace Existing Events" button is clicked then whatever events are in the selected calendar will be replaced by the currently generated events.
10. If the "Clear Existing Events" button is clicked then whatever events are in the selected calendar will be removed.
11. In the "Export Options" section you can specify your preferences, if you want an interpretation of the event to be stored with each event click on **Include Interpretations text** until the checkbox is ticked. If you don't want them then click until the checkbox is *unticked*. You can also do the same regarding specifying event alarms to be active in the Calendar (**Set Event Notifications**) along with setting the amount of notice you'd like for the alarms.
12. Once you have finished adding events to your calendar, and specifying the "Export Options", click on the **Save as iCalendar File** button. This will open a dialog that looks similar to that below. Navigate to, or create if necessary, the folder where you want to save the iCalendar file (that will contain all the events you are exporting) then click on the **Save** button.



"Save iCalendar file" dialog

13. Open the Calendar you saved the events to and see them displayed on the days they occur.
14. Also, now that you have saved the events as an .ics file, if you want to send the events to someone else you can email it as an attachment. When the email is opened the attached file can be saved to the device it's received on, then (usually) just double-clicking the saved file will load it into the default calendar on that device. That always occurs if MS Outlook is the default calendar, for other calendar types a different process may be required.

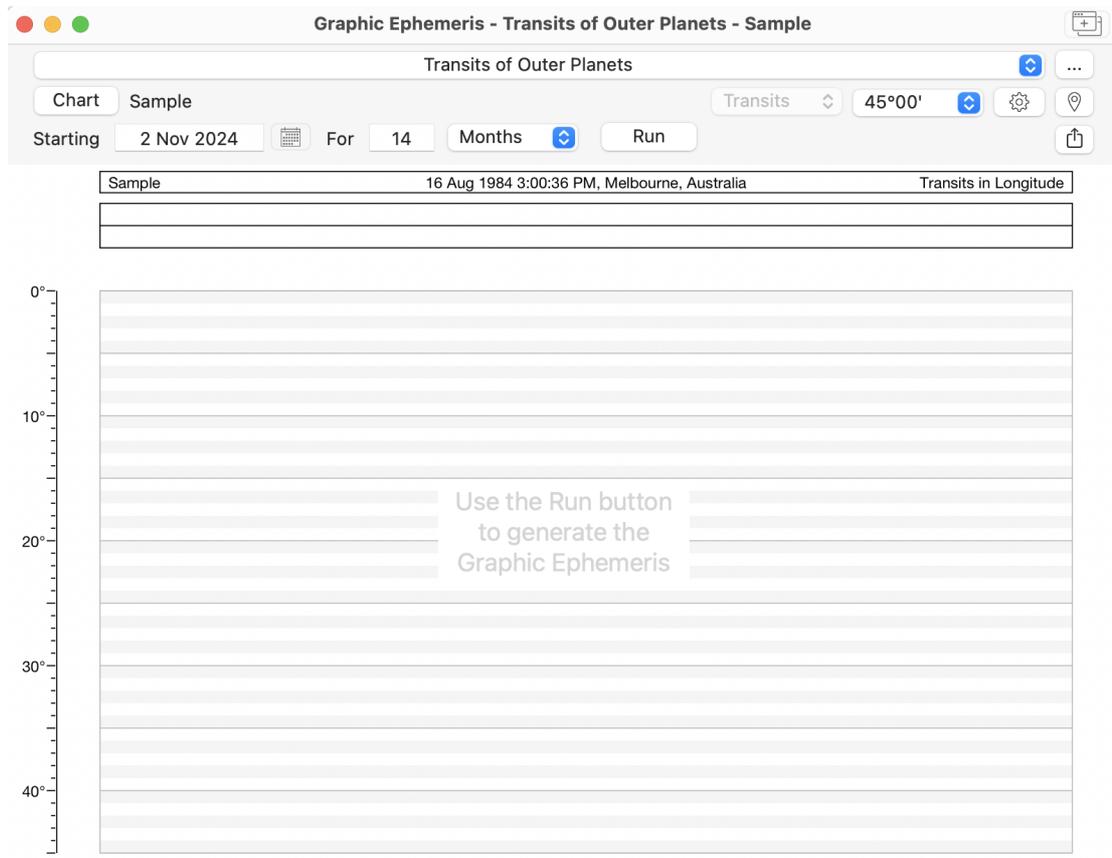
## 7.4 Graphic Ephemeris

As the name suggests a Graphic Ephemeris is a picture based view of the dynamic movements of planets on a graph. The longitudinal movements of transiting, secondary progressing or solar arcing planets can be shown on the graph, either by themselves or in relation to the static positions of a natal or subsidiary chart's planets.

### >> To generate a Graphic Ephemeris

- *If no Graphic Ephemeris windows are currently open* - click on the **GrEph** icon in the Toolbar (at the top of the screen) - or in the **View** menu select **Graphic Ephemeris** - to display the "Graphic Ephemeris" screen.

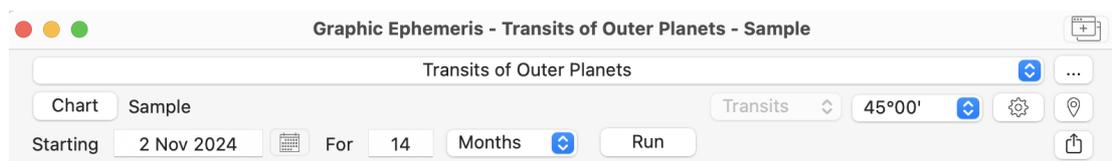
Otherwise if you have previously generated a Graphic Ephemeris *and want to preserve it*, to create a new separate ephemeris (complete with its own settings) click on the "New Window" icon  in the top right corner of an existing Graphic Ephemeris window title bar.



The Graphic Ephemeris

You can optionally expand the Graphic Ephemeris window by clicking on the small green "maximize" system button in the top left of the Ephemeris window . This will put the Ephemeris window in Fullscreen mode, which will also hide the Astro Gold menu (see [Window Size](#) for more information).

- A.** The first thing to do before you can use the report is decide what you want to see and set the general Graphic Ephemeris Options accordingly. You set the options in the top area of the window.



## >> TIME and DURATION

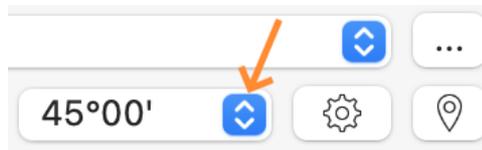
1. The **Starting** point in time for the planetary movements (transits, progressions or solar arcs).

Click on Calendar icon  to the right of the "Starting" date field ... to immediately select the current date, or the date of radix chart (the chart who the graphic ephemeris is being generated for), or navigate to an alternative date.

2. The duration of time that the graph will display transits for. Click on the  to the right of the **unit of time dropdown box** to choose between **Days, Months or Years**, then enter a number of time units to use in the **For** box to the left of that, to define the actual period to generate dynamic events (in this case transits) for.

## >> MODULUS

3. Select the ephemeris **modulus angle**, from 30° to 360° - click on the  to the right the **angle dropdown box** to drop down the list of angles available.



### Background

Modulus angles are the basis of planetary aspects and are derived by dividing a circle into parts. When this is done the continuous "curved line" that defines the circle itself is divided up into segments (arcs) of equal length. The arcs produced by dividing the circle are identified by the angle each makes from the same starting point on the circle. Relating this to the natural 360° zodiac circle of signs (Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer etc), the starting point we use is the beginning of Aries which we have labeled as 0°, the beginning point in the whole zodiac circle. As the numeric factor used to divide the circle becomes larger (from 2, 3, 4, 5 .... and upwards) the arcs produced by that division become smaller in length and therefore also smaller in angular relationship to that 0° starting point.

Dividing the 360° circle by 2 produces two equal arcs, both being 180° segments of the circle, from 0 to 180° and from 180° to 360°. Because the division point (180° of the whole circle, or 0° Libra in the zodiac circle) is exactly opposite our starting point of the circle (0° - 0° Aries) we call this division an "opposition aspect". Likewise dividing the 360° zodiac by 3 produces three equal arcs, each being 120° segments of the circle, from 0 to 120°, from 120° to 240° and from 240° to 360°; when two planets are 120° apart on the zodiac circle (e.g. one at 10° Aries and the other at 10° Leo) we call this a "trine aspect". Dividing by 4 produces four arcs each 90° of the circle ("square aspects"); by 5 five arcs that are 72° of the circle ("quintile aspects") and so on.

We know from observation and correlation that all planetary aspects based on dividing the circle by 2 form a group that generally manifest in a similar way i.e. in a conflicted or tense way. To elaborate on what "based on dividing the circle by 2" means, consider that if we further divide that initial division of the circle by 2 (i.e. dividing the 180° arc by 2 giving four 90° arcs), that this is the same result as just

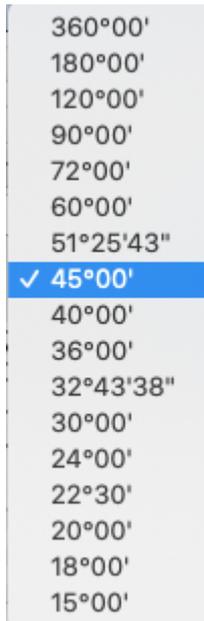
dividing the circle by 4 in the first place (a whole divided into 4 equal parts is the same as 2 halves divided again by 2, also equaling 4 equal parts). So whether we divide the circle by 2 then divide those halves again to produce quarters, or just divide the circle by 4 in the first place, we will still end up with quarters. So 4 as a divisor is in the 2 based division group. The commonly used list of angles based on dividing the circle by 2 are 180° (opposition aspect), 90° (square aspect) and 45° (semi-square aspect). And it has also been observed that three 45° angles combined (resulting in a 135° angle called a "sesquiquadrate" aspect) also acts as a hard/tension type factor, which is what one would expect with an angle derived from combining any of the angles from the "conflicted, tense" group together into a different angle that is the sum of all the ones being combined.

Likewise we know that all planetary aspects based on dividing the circle by 3 form a group that generally manifest in a soft or flowing way. In this group are the 120° angle (trine aspect), 60° (sextile aspect) and 30° (semi-sextile aspect). And there are other groupings, for instance the division by 5 (quintile, bi-quintile aspects etc) which relate to creativity. The situation where two planets are at the *same point* on the zodiac circle, e.g. both at 0° Aries or both at 12° Gemini, is called a "conjunction" aspect. It is not based on the division of the circle at all, or if it is it is based on a division of 1, and since 1 divided by 1 is still 1 there is no division. A conjunction aspect is represented by the 0° modulus angle and represents unity.

#### Selecting a modulus angle

When you choose a modulus angle what you are doing is deciding how the 360° zodiac circle will be divided into equal parts. And then in the graph each part is going to be overlaid exactly on top of the other parts. If you choose a modulus angle of 180° for example, you will get all transiting oppositions to the radix planets displayed in the Graphic Ephemeris, whereas if you choose 90° you will see these oppositions just the same, but you'll also see all the transiting squares to the radix planets as well. To see all the hard aspects choose 45°. Likewise if you choose 120° you'll only see transiting trine aspects to the radix planets, but if you choose 60° you'll see sextiles as well. And if you want to see all of the main hard *and* soft aspects choose 30°, as all the main hard and soft aspects can be divided evenly by 30°; namely oppositions, quincunxes, trines, squares, sextiles and semi-sextiles. And because 0° is included in any division of the circle as it's the starting point for the division in the first place, conjunctions will always be displayed no matter what modulus angle you choose. A conjunction (0°) always represents a union of the planets involved in the conjunction, but depending on what those planets are the union will manifest as a 2-type aspect (conflicted, tense) or a 3-type aspect (soft, flowing) or as another kind, or manifest in a mixed way.

These are the modulus angles available:



### >> INFORMATION Displayed

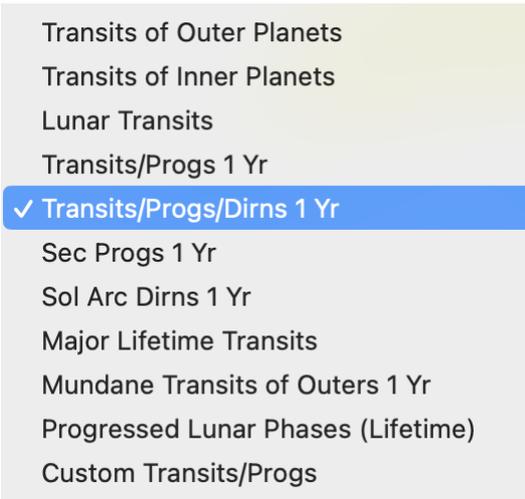
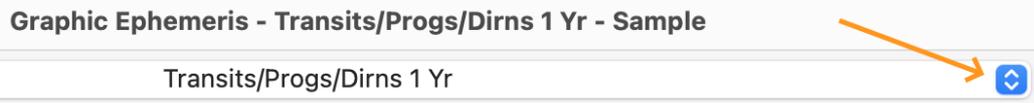
4. View the *Display Options* by clicking on the display options icon . Select the following by clicking on them in the list to toggle them on (or off):
  - a) **Show Radix Positions:** show the radix (natal or subsidiary chart) planet zodiac positions in the graph. If you set this on the graph will display transits to the radix chart's planets. Otherwise it just displays the zodiacal movement of the transiting planets over the time period selected.
  - b) **Show Radix Aspects:** show transiting planet aspects to radix planets. If (a) is set on, and you also set this on, the aspect glyphs for the transits to each radix planet will be displayed in the graph.
  - c) **Show Lunations:** displays Full and New moons in the graph.
5. View the *Location Options* by clicking on the location options icon . Select **Natal**, **Home** or **Other** as the location ("Home" is selected by default). If you select "Other" you can enter in the location information directly on the Ephemeris screen.

*TIP:* If regardless of location you want times for the Graphic Ephemeris to be in universal timezone (UT) simply check the **UT** checkbox in the bottom right hand corner.

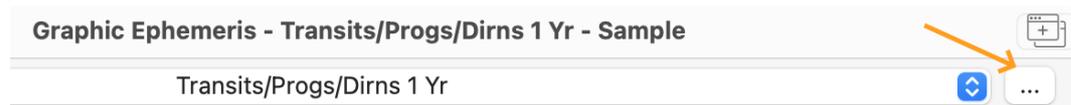
### >> DYNAMIC Points Used

6. Select the **Dynamic Job** for the Graphic Ephemeris - these are the same Dynamic Jobs that are used for the Dynamic Reports - which will determine the transiting planets used. You can select the Dynamic job by either:

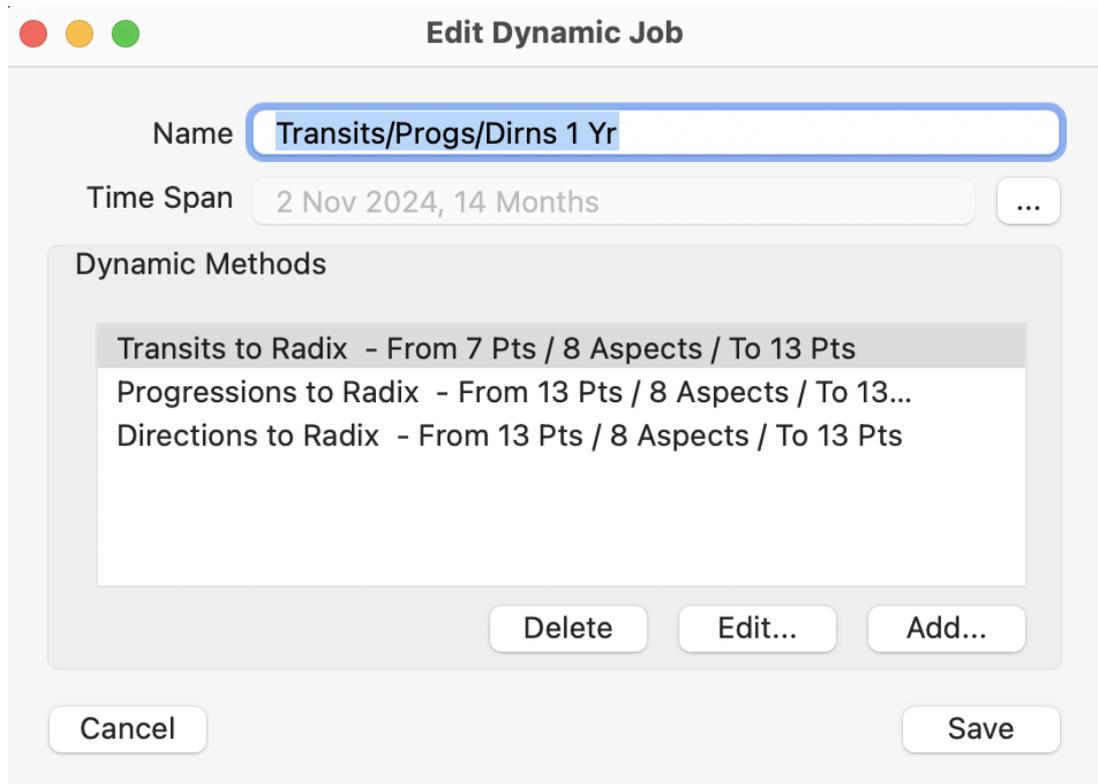
- a) clicking on the  to the right of the currently displayed Dynamic Job to dropdown the list of Dynamic Jobs to select one from:



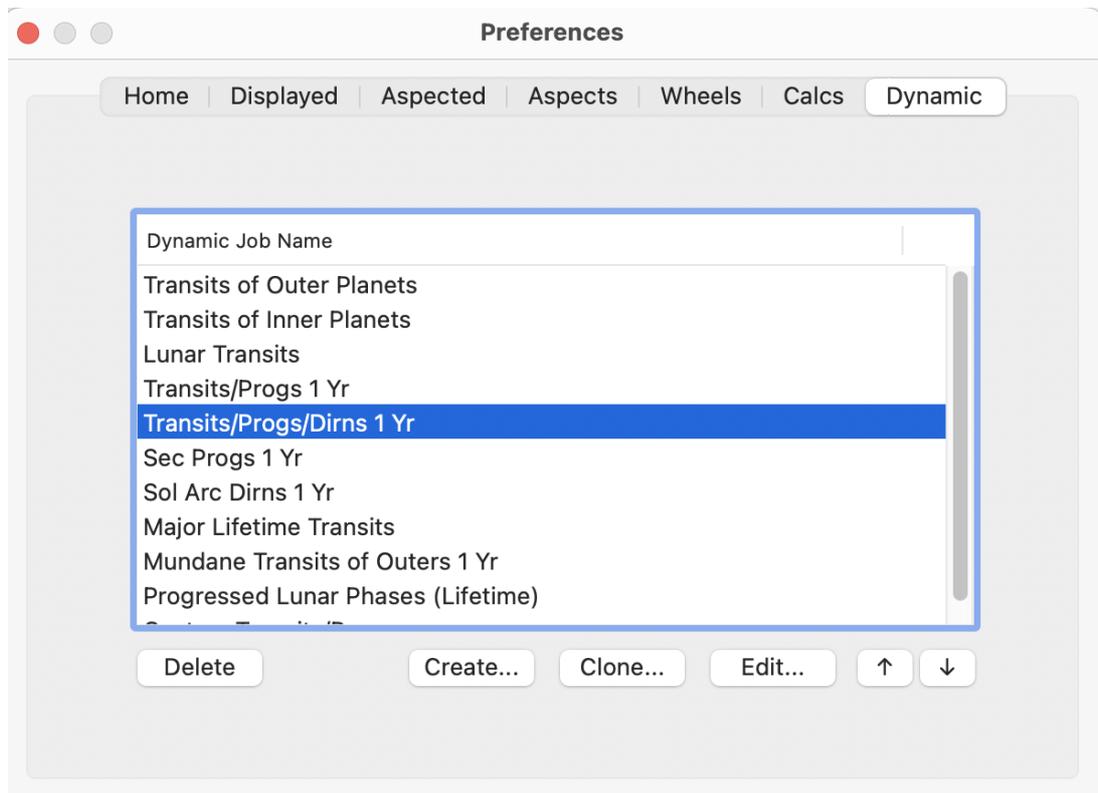
- b) or clicking on the **Job Actions** icon  to the very right of the currently displayed Dynamic Job will open a popup menu with two menu items on it:



- i. **Edit Job** - opens the "Edit Dynamic Job" dialog, where you can directly edit the currently selected Dynamic Job, in situ.



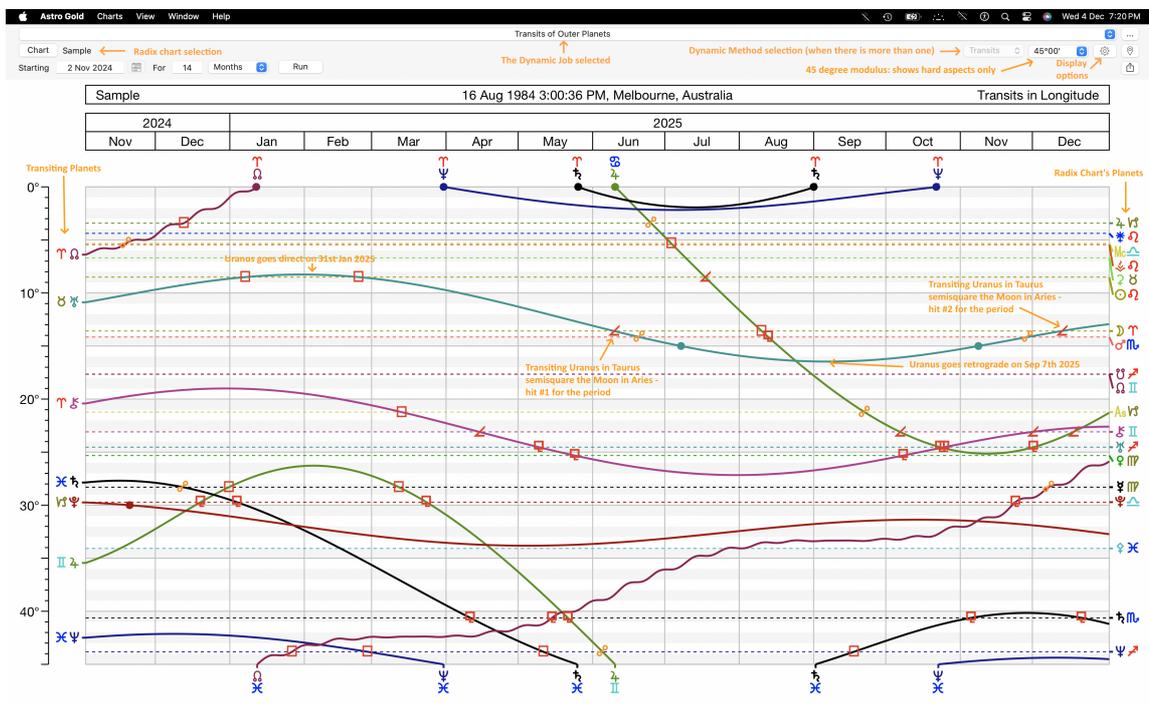
- ii. **Manage Job** - opens the "Preferences" window with the "Dynamic Jobs" tab selected. You can then select the Dynamic Job you want to use.



While you're in the Preferences window you can also create new Dynamic Jobs, or edit or delete any existing ones, or edit preferences in other tabs. Be aware though that if you also use these Dynamic Jobs in Dynamic Listing reports those reports will also reflect any changes you make to any Dynamic Job those reports are based on.

When you're finished close the Preferences window by clicking on the small red **Close** button in the top left of the Preferences window, and you'll return to the Graphic Ephemeris window.

7. If you selected a Dynamic Job that is comprised of more than Dynamic Method, then only one of those methods can be used in the Graphic Ephemeris. By default it will always be the first method in the method list. There is a dropdown list of the methods for the Dynamic Job to the left of the Modulus dropdown, where you can override that.
- B.** With all the general, display and location options set you're ready to generate the Graphic Ephemeris. To do that click the **Run** button next to the period unit of time (months etc). Depending on your settings the graph will look more or less similar to below (this example screen has been annotated in orange text to highlight some significant points).

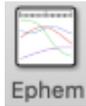


### 7.4.1 Tutorial

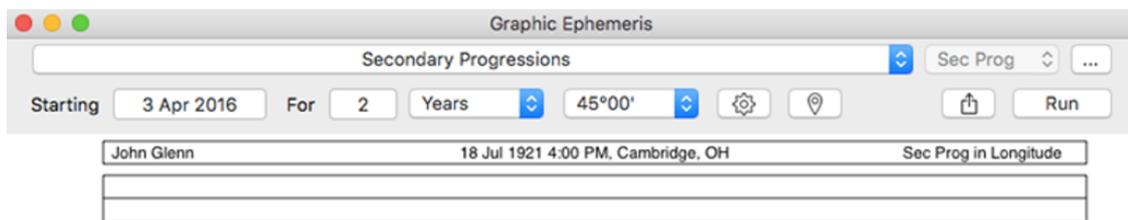
Here is a brief tutorial on how to set up a Graphic Ephemeris.

#### >> To set up a Graphic Ephemeris

1. Create or select a natal or event chart to use as a base chart in the **Chart 1** position. See [Quick Start](#) for how to create a new chart. You may also opt to select an already created chart - see [here](#) for how to do that.



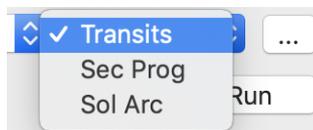
2. Click the **Ephem icon** in the Toolbar, or in the **View** menu click on **Graphic Ephemeris**. You should now see the "Graphic Ephemeris" window where you can set up your ephemeris calculations.



3. At the top of the window, over near the *right hand side* just next to the button with 3 dots on it, clicking on the quite small dropdown menu  will give you the option to choose one of the following calculation methods:

- Transits
- Secondary Progressions
- Solar Arc Directions

Although it is showing "Transits" highlighted below for this tutorial we will select **Sec Prog** (secondary progressions).



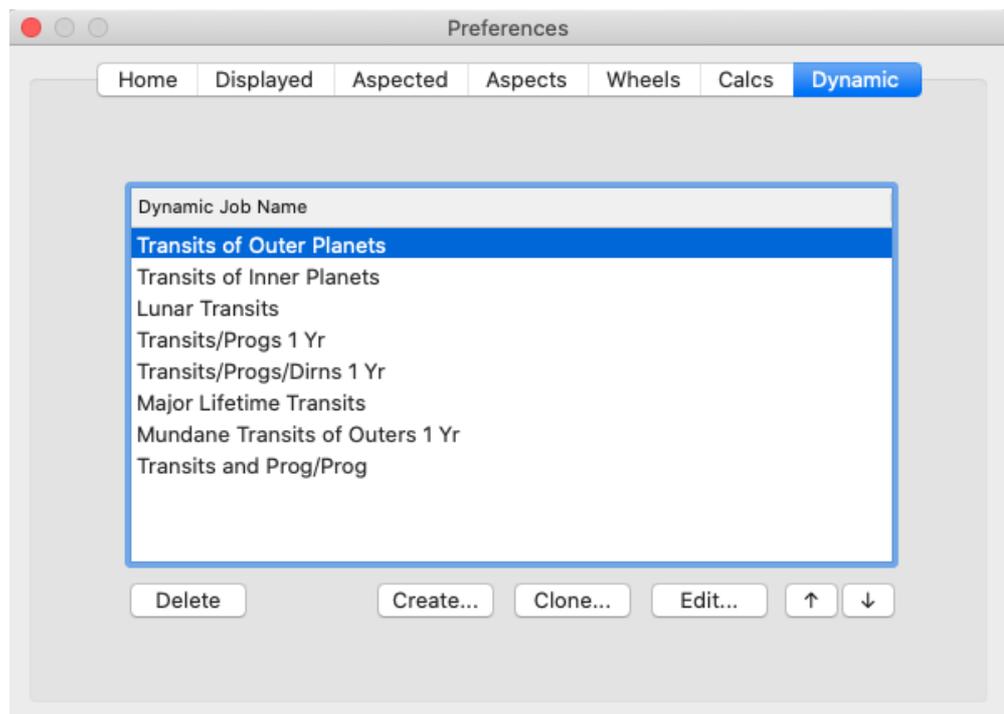
4. Based on what you choose here Astro Gold then automatically selects a "Dynamic Job" (which it displays at the top at the center, in the wide dropdown list) that will be able to make the appropriate calculations for the event type you have just chosen (progressions). And normally this is all you need to do at this step.

However whichever dynamic type you choose (transits, progressions or solar arcs), if you don't like the way the "Dynamic Job" associated with that dynamic type is set up you can easily modify it, or even create a new one.

You can do that from the Graphic Ephemeris window by clicking on the **3 dots**  at the very top right of the window to open the "Preferences" window on the "Dynamic Jobs" tab.

When you edit a Dynamic Job, or create a new one, you can choose which points will be the moving transits, progressions or directions, which will be the static natal or event points, which aspects you wish to use and their orbs, as well as choosing whether to show when the planets/points cross house cusps, change signs, or after being in direct or retrograde motion become stationary.

See [here](#) for details on creating or editing a Dynamic Job to suit your needs.

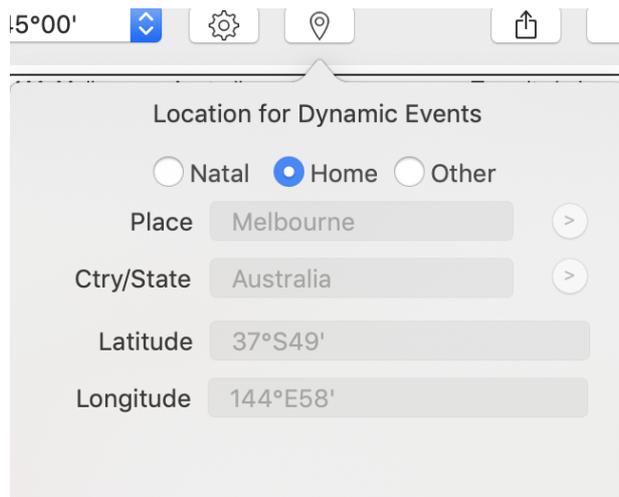


Preparing to edit a Dynamic Job

5. Click on the gear icon and you can choose to show or not the radix (base) chart positions, aspects, and the mundane moon's phases in the ephemeris display.



6. Click on the "Location" icon and you can choose the location where the Dynamic events are calculated (they default to the Home Location).



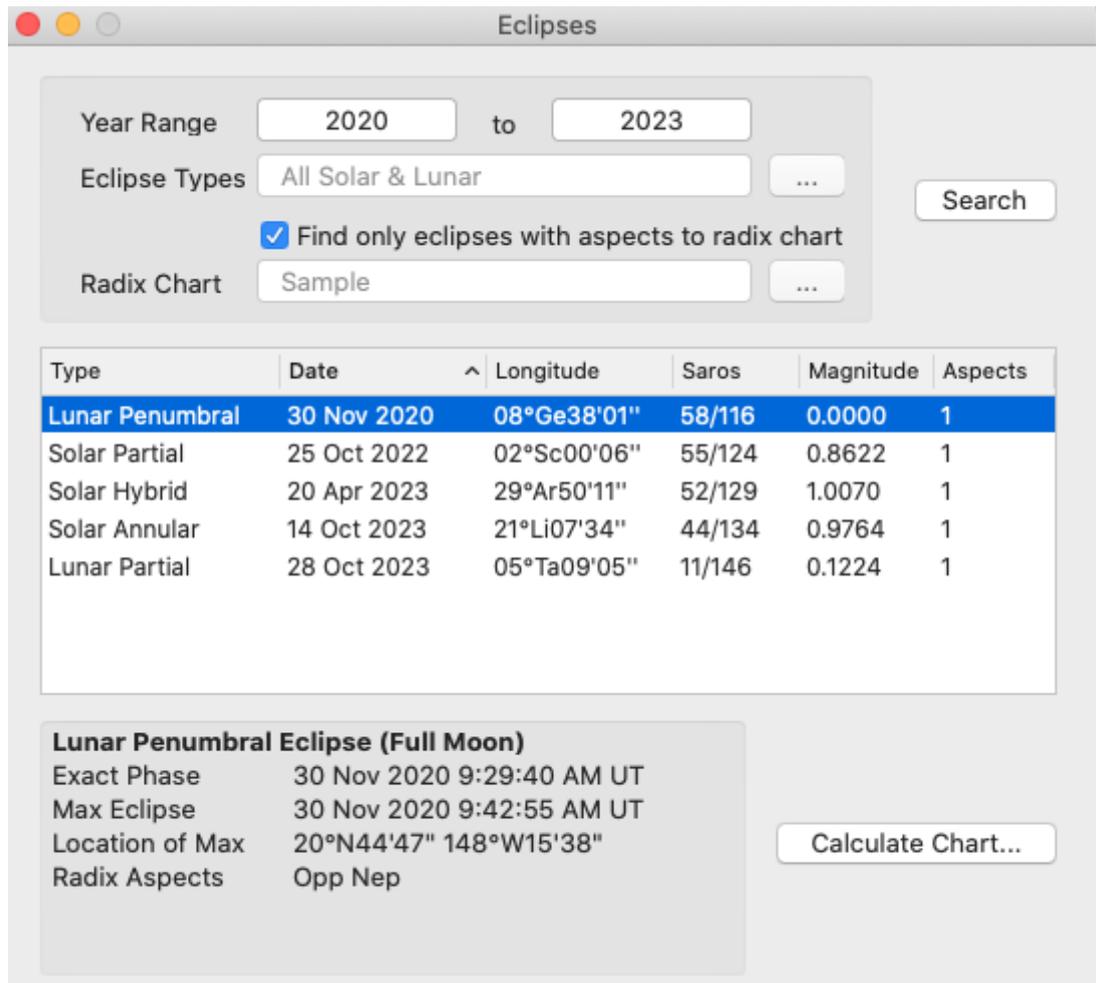
7. Once you have the settings ready, it's time to frame the time for your Graphic Ephemeris. At the top pick a starting date, a length of time, and the degree range for the vertical axis (for example, you may want to only show 30 degrees, or 45, or 180, or even a full 360).
8. If everything meets your satisfaction, you can go ahead now and click the **Run** button to create the Graphic Ephemeris.
9. There's one more setting you should know about. Click on the "Action Button"  and you can choose to save your resulting ephemeris, print it, or post it on a popular social media website etc.

#### 7.4.1.1 Eclipses

The Eclipse Search module allows searching for any eclipses from 1200BCE to 2400CE, selectable or sortable by eclipse type, date, longitude, saros number, magnitude or by number of aspects made to a selected radix chart.

#### >> To Open the Eclipse module

- Click on the **Eclipses** icon in the Toolbar (at the top of the screen) - or in the **View** menu select **Eclipses**



## Setting the default calculation time

Astro Gold gives a choice of which time to use for its eclipse calculations...

- **Use Exact Phase** – using this option the eclipse chart titles always have "(NM)" or "(FM)" as a suffix to indicate that they are the times of the exact new moon or full moon respectively e.g. "Lunar Penumbral Eclipse (FM)"
- **Use Max Eclipse** – using this option there is no suffix on the eclipse titles e.g. "Lunar Penumbral Eclipse"

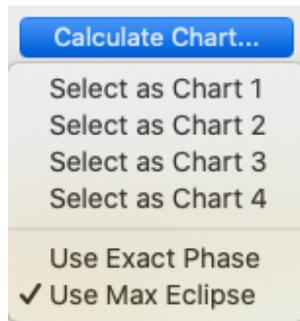
The *maximum eclipse time* occurs the instant the Moon passes closest to the axis of Earth's shadow, or when the Moon's shadow passes closest to the Earth's center.

The *exact lunar phase time* (exact conjunction of Sun and Moon for a solar eclipse, or their exact opposition for a lunar eclipse) occurs simply when the conjunction or opposition is exact in longitude.

These two times are usually different. The Moon usually has non-zero latitude, and so the time of closest approach between the Sun and Moon (the maximum eclipse time) is slightly different, the difference varying by 15 minutes or more.

### >> To set the default calculation time

1. Click on the **Calculate Chart** button. A menu drops down.



2. Click on either of the **bottom two** menu options. This selection will remain as the default until changed.

### >> To search for Eclipses

1. In the *Year Range fields* enter the **beginning year** and **ending year**.
2. To select an *Eclipse Type* click on the **three dots** on the right of that row, and click on the type.
3. Regarding only seeing eclipses if they make aspects to a radix chart, click on the **checkbox** labeled with that until it's ticked/unticked accordingly.
4. If you ticked the checkbox then click the **three dots** on the *Radix Chart* row and **select the chart** that you want to see aspects from an eclipse to.
5. Once you have all the search criteria entered, click on the **Search** button, which will refresh the list of eclipses occurring within the period specified.
6. Select which eclipse in the list you want to calculate a chart for.
7. Click on the **Calculate Chart** button, then click on which **chart position** (in the Selected Charts pane) you want the calculated eclipse chart to use. The chart will be displayed in the Viewing Area.

## 7.5 Ephemeris Listing

The Ephemeris Listing module generates listings of selected chart point positions and/or speeds, at user-selected regular time intervals, ranging from seconds to years. A listing may then be exported to a PDF file, or to a CSV type file which can be opened as (or imported into) a spreadsheet application.

An example of an Ephemeris Listing is below.

Ephemeris Listing

Melbourne, Australia (AE... Points 7 (Mon to Sat) ...

Starting 10 May 2024 Columns 5 cols ...

Duration 1 Months Notation Decimal ...

Intervals 1 Days Run

Date	Time	Day	Moon Long	Moon Lat	Sun Long	Sun Lat	Mercury Long	Mercury Lat	Venus Long	Venus Lat	Mars Long	Mars Lat	Jupiter Long	Jupiter Lat
10 May 2024	12:00:00	A	68.650170	4.174914	49.430774	0.000066	23.241759	-3.136923	42.444236	-0.999748	6.869188	-1.253422	56.136706	-0.743823
11 May 2024	12:00:00	Sat	82.525584	4.792649	50.397737	0.000087	24.222079	-3.168432	43.675355	-0.969732	7.635287	-1.251414	56.372363	-0.742351
12 May 2024	12:00:00	Sun	96.006449	5.123585	51.364219	0.000100	25.252249	-3.188112	44.906333	-0.939044	8.400773	-1.249262	56.608138	-0.740905
13 May 2024	12:00:00	Mon	109.082044	5.174347	52.330205	0.000105	26.330617	-3.196220	46.137158	-0.907707	9.165625	-1.248967	56.844002	-0.739484
14 May 2024	12:00:00	Tue	121.775559	4.966762	53.295688	0.000101	27.455682	-3.193008	47.367824	-0.875744	9.929828	-1.244527	57.079929	-0.738089
15 May 2024	12:00:00	Wed	134.137401	4.530927	54.260666	0.000089	28.626100	-3.178725	48.598330	-0.843175	10.693367	-1.241943	57.315897	-0.736720
16 May 2024	12:00:00	Thu	146.237024	3.900262	55.225142	0.000071	29.840670	-3.153618	49.828678	-0.810023	11.456237	-1.239214	57.551886	-0.735377
17 May 2024	12:00:00	Fri	158.155046	3.108878	56.189125	0.000046	31.098335	-3.117929	51.058872	-0.776312	12.218429	-1.236339	57.787880	-0.734066
18 May 2024	12:00:00	Sat	169.976496	2.190907	57.162627	0.000017	32.398174	-3.071898	52.288922	-0.742063	12.979941	-1.233317	58.023863	-0.732801
19 May 2024	12:00:00	Sun	181.785292	1.181148	58.115663	-0.000015	33.739396	-3.015768	53.518837	-0.707301	13.740770	-1.230147	58.259756	-0.731604
20 May 2024	12:00:00	Mon	193.659716	0.116385	59.078251	-0.000049	35.121330	-2.949778	54.748629	-0.672047	14.500916	-1.226829	58.495553	-0.730299
21 May 2024	12:00:00	Tue	205.668548	-0.963231	60.040411	-0.000083	36.543424	-2.874174	55.978312	-0.636327	15.260378	-1.223361	58.731403	-0.729013
22 May 2024	12:00:00	Wed	217.867719	-2.013306	61.002163	-0.000116	38.005226	-2.789207	57.207897	-0.600163	16.019155	-1.219743	58.967193	-0.727785
23 May 2024	12:00:00	Thu	230.297547	-2.985340	61.963531	-0.000145	39.506385	-2.695133	58.437399	-0.563580	16.777247	-1.215974	59.202897	-0.726590
24 May 2024	12:00:00	Fri	242.980964	-3.828279	62.924536	-0.000170	41.046630	-2.592221	59.666830	-0.526603	17.534651	-1.212053	59.438504	-0.725420
25 May 2024	12:00:00	Sat	255.923260	-4.491982	63.895201	-0.000189	42.625763	-2.480755	60.896201	-0.489257	18.291359	-1.207979	59.673996	-0.724272
26 May 2024	12:00:00	Sun	269.113878	-4.929517	64.845544	-0.000200	44.243640	-2.361036	62.125519	-0.451566	19.047362	-1.203752	59.909356	-0.723145
27 May 2024	12:00:00	Mon	282.530314	-5.105986	65.805584	-0.000204	45.900154	-2.233389	63.354790	-0.413556	19.802646	-1.199372	60.144561	-0.722038

## >> To generate an Ephemeris Listing

- 1) Click on the **View** menu, then on **Ephemeris Listings** -OR- click on the Toolbar icon . This opens the Ephemeris Listing window.
- 2) In the top left of the window controls click on the **Location** icon  and the following dialog pops up:

Location for Dynamic Events

Natal
  Home
  Other

Melbourne >

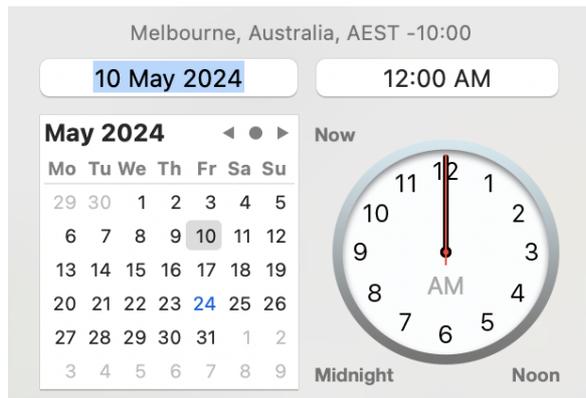
Ctry/State Australia >

Latitude 37°S49'

Longitude 144°E58'

Apply  UT +0:00

- a. Select the **Natal** chart location, your **Home** location, or **Other** location (and enter the details the same as when you are creating a chart). This will determine which timezone the dates/times are listed in.
  - b. Optionally however click in the **UT** checkbox if, regardless of location, you want the dates/times listed for the UT timezone.
  - c. Click on the **Apply** button.
- 3) Below the location entry enter the "Starting" date. You can do this by manually entering the date in the **Starting** textbox -OR- by clicking on the Calendar icon to its right  which pops up the following dialog:

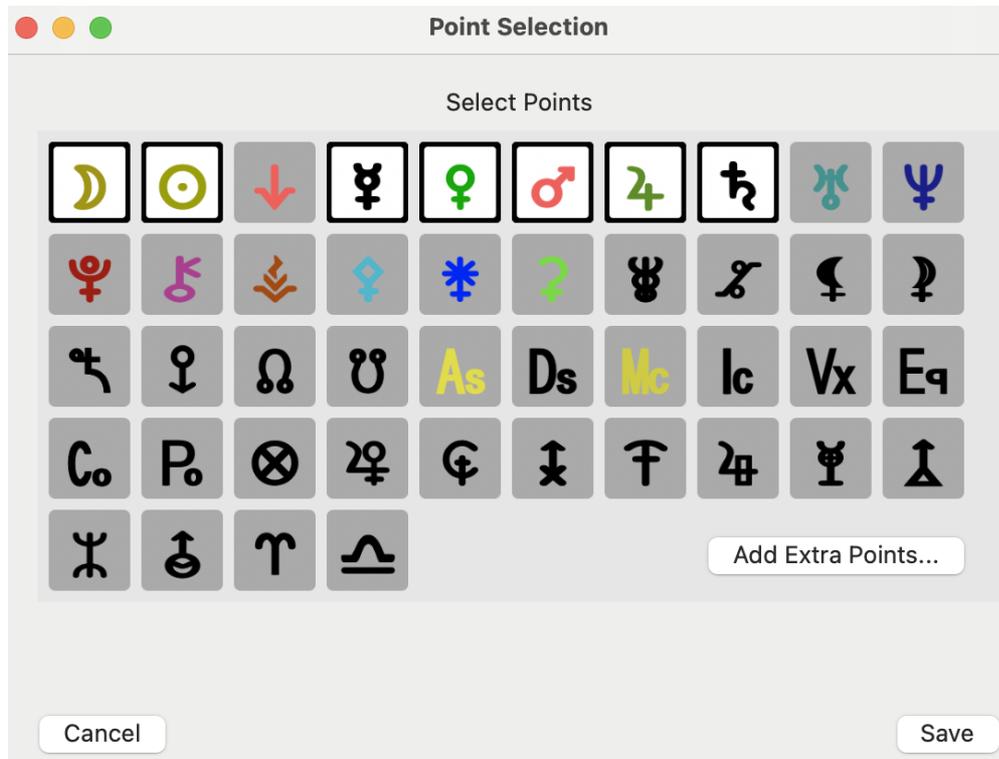


- a. You can also manually enter the **Starting Date** here too, in the top left textbox, and the **Starting Time** in the top right textbox.
- b. Alternatively select the "Starting date" in the Calendar graphic...
  - i. You can click on the **dot** in the top right of the calendar (between the arrow icons) to set the clock date to whatever date is entered in the "Starting Date" textbox.
  - ii. You can click on the < and > icons in the top right of the calendar to move to the previous or next month.
- c. You can also specify the **Starting time** in the Calendar graphic...
  - i. Use the mouse to move the clock's second hand to where you want it to be (or to temporarily move it away from the minute or hour hand)
  - ii. Use the mouse to move the minute and hour hands to where you want them to be.
  - iii. Click on the grey **AM** or **PM** icon in the middle of the clockface to toggle the time between am and pm
  - iv. Alternatively click on the **Midnight** or **Noon** icons under the clockface to set those as the starting time

OR... Click on the **Now** icon at the top left of the clockface to set the current date and time.

- 4) Click in the **Duration** dropdown, and choose a time unit from those displayed (Years, Months, Days, Hours, Minutes, Seconds).
- 5) Enter the number of time units in the **Duration** textbox (which is to the left of the "Duration" dropdown).
- 6) Click in the **Intervals** dropdown, and choose a time unit from those displayed (Years, Months, Days, Hours, Minutes, Seconds).

- 7) Enter the number of time units in the **Intervals** textbox (which is to the left of the "Intervals" dropdown)
- 8) Select the points you want information for from the **Points** dropdown (click on the ... to the right of the "Points" textbox)



- 9) Select the information you want from the **Columns** dropdown (click on the ... to the right of the "Columns" textbox)

- Initial columns -

- Date
- Time
- Zone
- Dayname
- Julian Day (UT)
- Sidereal Time

- For each Point -

- Longitude
- Speed of Longitude
- Latitude
- Speed of Latitude
- Distance
- Speed of Distance
- Right Ascension
- Speed of Right Ascension
- Declination
- Speed of Declination
- Azimuth
- Speed of Azimuth
- Altitude
- Speed of Altitude

10) Select the notation you want by clicking in the **Notation** dropdown and selecting from "Decimal", or "Deg/min/sec".

11) Click the **Run** button to generate the listing.

## >> To export an Ephemeris Listing

1) Once you have generated a listing click on the **Share** icon  and the following dialog pops up:

 **Ephemeris Listing**

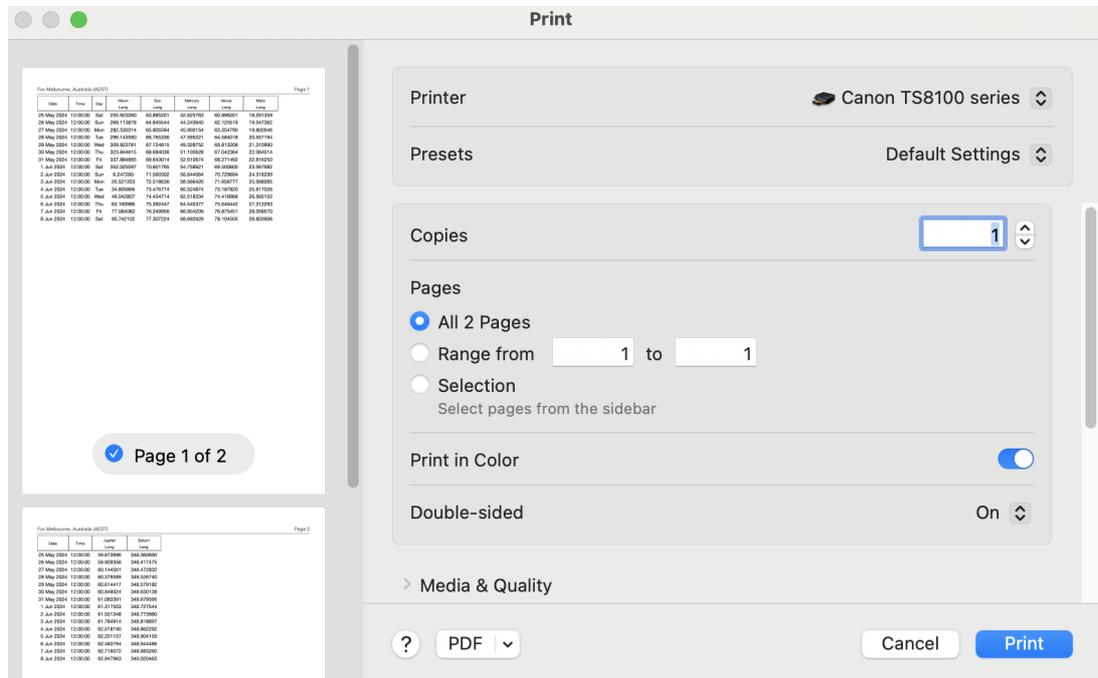
---

 Print

 PDF

 CSV File

- a. Click on **Print** to send the listing to the Printer. You'll see a dialog similar to the one below. If necessary select the printer to use. Then check the other settings are correct, then click on the **Print** button.



- b. Click on **PDF** button to save the listing as a PDF file. In the **Save As** textbox give the file a name, navigate to the folder where you want to save it to, then click on the **Save** button.
- c. Click on **CSV** button to save the listing as a CSV file (comma separated values file - this file can be opened and its data displayed by spreadsheet applications). In the **Save As** textbox give the file a name, navigate to the folder where you want to save it to, then click on the **Save** button.

## 7.6 Interpretations

### Interpretation Reports

Astro Gold has the ability to provide interpretations for the following astrological categories:

- Natal charts
- Solar Return charts
- Lunar Return charts
- Transits to Natal charts
- Secondary Progressions to Natal charts
- Synastry between two Natal charts (relationship)

## Getting Pop-up Interpretations

When charts are displayed in a wheel in the "Viewing Area", clicking on a planet in a chart ring inside the wheel will cause an interpretation for that planet to pop up.

When you click on a planet in a chart ring in the wheel, the interpretations that pop up (natal, return, progressions or transits) will relate to whatever kind of chart is in that ring, if it is natal, return, progressed or transits type of chart. If there is more than one chart selected resulting in a bi, tri or quadriWheel being displayed, then the house that the planet is considered to be "in" is always the house of the innermost chart, and thus the planet's pop-up house interpretation will refer to that house.

Aspects are between the planets in the selected ring's chart and the innermost chart, limited to 2 deg orb if the selected ring's chart is of type transits or progressions (for consistency with orbs used in dynamic listings, for example).

The size of the interpretation window that pops up is the size set by the last inter-chart interpretations window.

**NOTE:** In the list of Planets and Points on the left, notice at the bottom an orange arrow pointing to Lilith\*. The asterisk after the name denotes this is referring to the asteroid Lilith, and not the Black Moon Lilith.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Natal Interpretations" with a sub-header "For Sample". On the left is a sidebar menu with a tree view. Under "Planets And Aspects", "The Moon" is expanded to "In 4th House", and "Aspects of The Moon" is selected. Below this, a list of aspects is shown: Qnx Mercury, Pll Mercury, Sqg Mars, Tri Uranus, Opp Midheaven, Cpl Midheaven, and Opp Lilith\*. Further down, other celestial bodies are listed: The Sun, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto, Chiron, Lilith, The North Node, The South Node, The Ascendant, The Midheaven, and Lilith\*. An orange arrow points to the "Lilith\*" entry. The main content area displays several interpretation boxes:

- Aspects of The Moon**: The Moon has 7 aspects to other chart points.
- Quincunx Mercury Orb 00°S16' (Strong Influence)**: You have difficulty making decisions. You need to take into account how you are feeling before taking action.
- Parallel Mercury Orb 00°A51' (Weak Influence)**: This aspect is not included in this set of interpretations.
- Sesquisquare Mars Orb 00°A34' (Strong Influence)**: No text available for this topic.
- Trine Uranus Orb 04°S02' (Medium Influence)**: You are a unique individual with many enterprising ideas. You enjoy the freedom of expressing yourself in unconventional ways and may be attracted to exciting and different activities in which you excel.
- Opposite The Midheaven Orb 08°A15' (Weak Influence)**: Most people are influenced by their home and family. However, you are particularly sensitive to the ebb and flow of family life. As a young child you enjoy spending time in your home, relating to those who share your household as well as extended family members. If you grow up in a warm and supportive family environment then you are likely to enjoy an equally happy household as an adult. If you suffer at the hands of your family then your journey may be rockier. At some stage you are likely to break away, determined to create a sense of security in your own home. You may start a family of your own with the view of developing a warm and safe household. Safety and security at home are vital factors for your health and happiness. You need a safe haven. Your home does not necessarily need to be a large mansion, but you do need to feel comfortable. You are likely to be a force to be reckoned with in your family life. Other family members may come and go, but you are the one likely to be a guiding hand and a comfort for family members. You may be the keeper of family memories with photographic displays, books, and stories to tell. The family history fascinates you, perhaps even compelling you to research and record facts and stories.

1 Chart, natal aspect interpretations

### >> To see Interpretations for a chart, or multiple charts in combination

1. In the "Selected Charts" pane select the chart or charts that you want to see interpretations for. In a multi-chart wheel or dial only the outermost ring and innermost ring are used to determine which charts to display interpretations for, and the kind of interpretations that are displayed is automatically determined by the types of the charts that are involved (natal, subsidiary etc).
2. Click on the **Reports** menu, then the **Interpretations** menu item, and the Interpretations window will be opened to display the interpretation text. Or click on the **Interps** icon in the Toolbar. Alternatively click on the **Interps** icon in the Toolbar.

### >> To re-size the Interpretations Window

1. Hover the mouse over the edges of the Interpretations window until the mouse cursor becomes a horizontal double-headed arrow.
2. Press the mouse button and while holding it down drag the mouse to shrink or enlarge the window as desired, for example to make the interpretation items in the left pane more readable.
3. When that edge of the window is in the place you want it release the mouse button.

### >> Determining the points interpreted

Interpretations are not available for every possible point displayed in a chart. Interpretations exist for the following points:

- Moon
- Sun
- Mercury
- Venus
- Mars
- Jupiter
- Saturn
- Uranus
- Neptune
- Pluto
- Chiron
- Vesta
- Pallas
- Juno
- Ceres
- Hygeia
- Astraea
- Black Moon Lilith
- White Moon Lilith

- Sedna
- Eris
- The Lunar North Node
- The Lunar South Node
- The Ascendent
- The Midheaven
- The Vertex
- The Part of Fortune
- Lilith\* (the asteroid)

However to get interpretations for these points they need to be in the set of points currently selected in [Displayed Points](#) in Preferences.

### Quick Steps

- To get Natal interpretations for a single chart first select it - it can be in any position (1-4) - then swap its position to the Chart 1 position. Then select Chart 1 in the "Selection Panel."
  - If you want Synastry interpretations for 2 natal charts cast them first and then swap the chart positions so that one is in the Chart 1 position and the other is in the the outermost Chart position.
  - If you want Transits interpretations get the natal chart into the Chart 1 position, then in the outermost Chart position select "Current Transits" to be the chart.
- When you are ready click on the **Interps** icon in the toolbar, or in the **View** menu click on **Interpretations**.

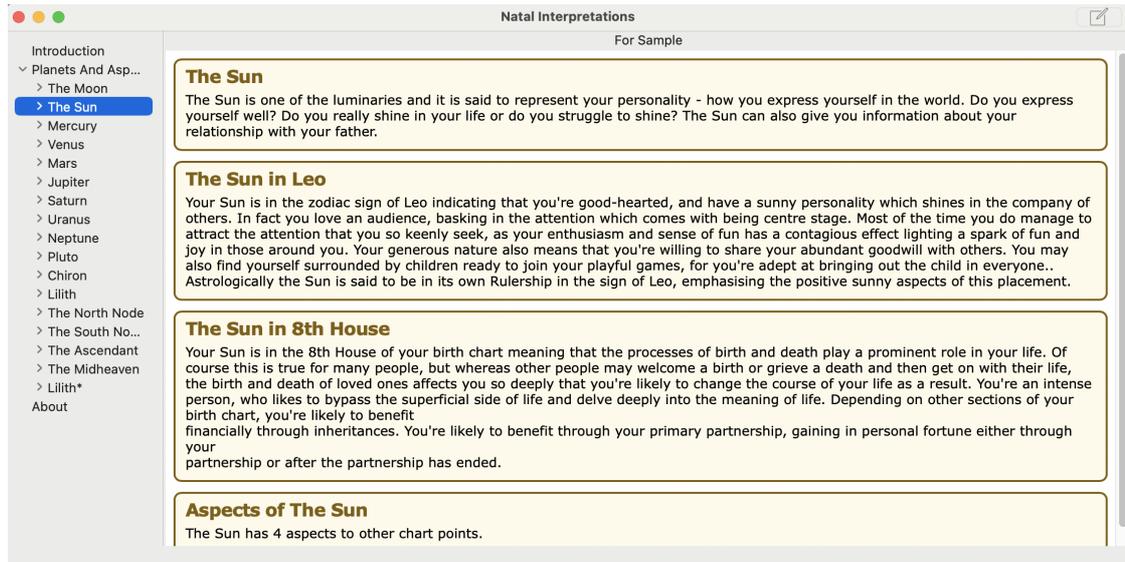
### Multi-chart Results

When 2, 3 or 4 Charts are selected, if the innermost chart is a natal or event chart and the outermost chart is...

- a transits chart: then Transit Interpretations are displayed
- is a progressed or directed chart: then Progression Interpretations are displayed
- is a natal or return chart: then Synastry Interpretations are displayed (even if 4 charts are selected the interpretations are only based on the outermost and innermost charts)

### **Natal Interpretations**

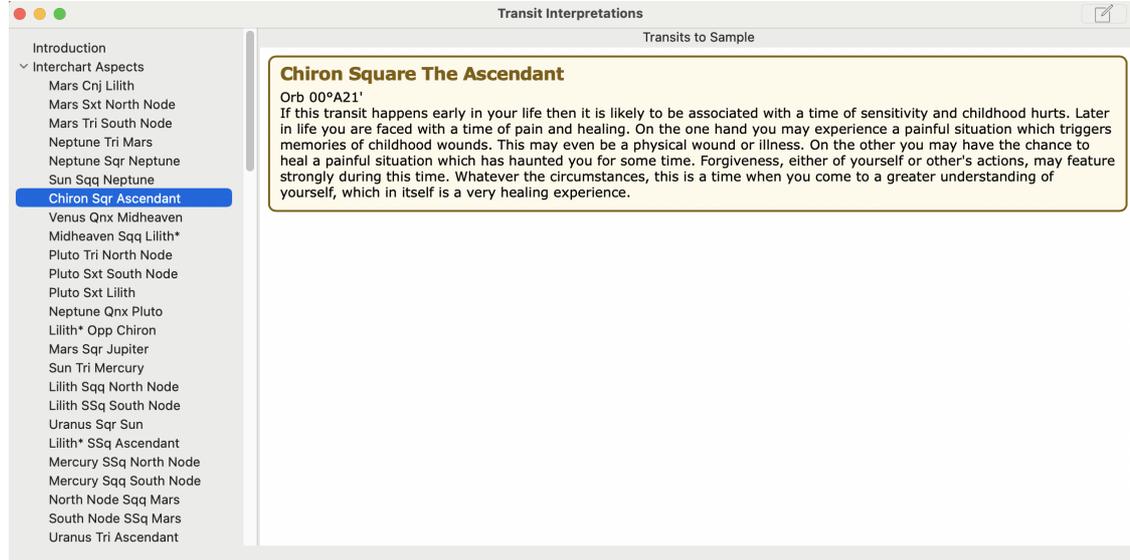
For a natal chart.



Natal chart Interpretations

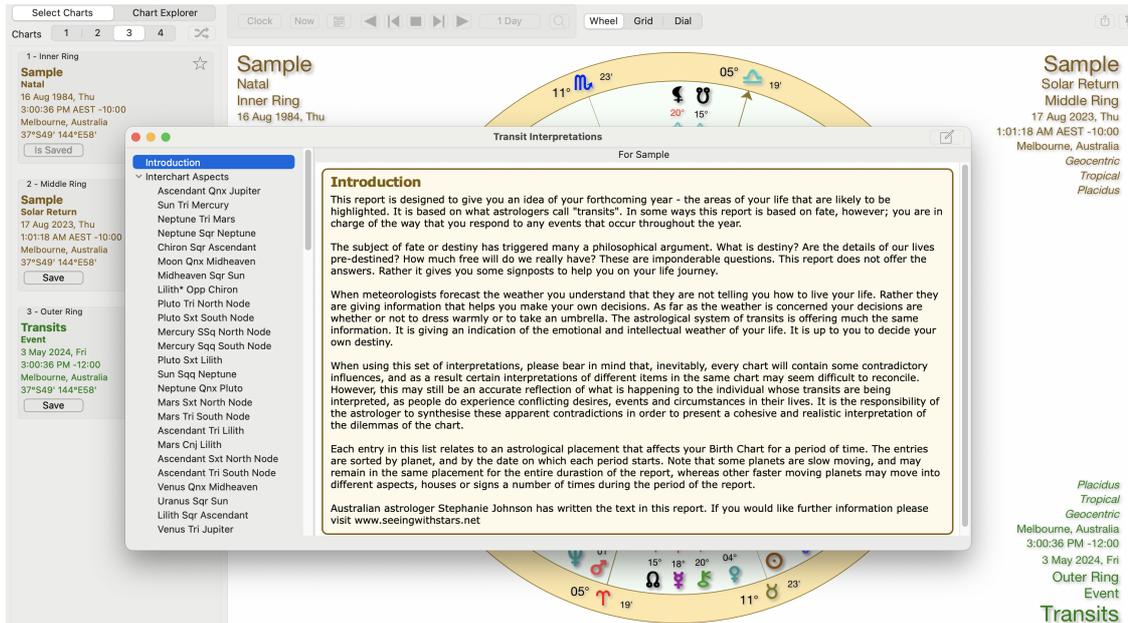
## Transit Interpretations

In a two ring wheel where the inner ring is a Natal chart and the outer ring is a mundane (Event) chart, interpretations for transits to the inner (natal) chart are displayed.



Transits to Natal chart Interpretations

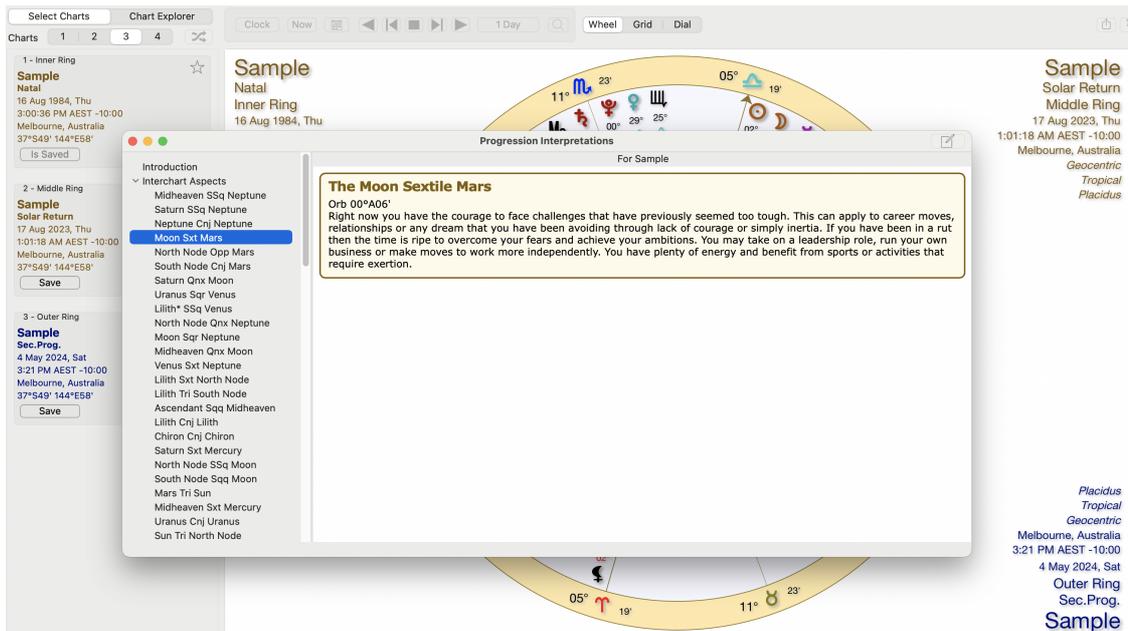
In a three or four ring wheel, only the outer ring and the inner ring are used for interpretations - the middle ring(s) is(are) ignored regardless of what type of chart it is. In the screen below you can see Transit interpretations between the outer and inner charts.



Transits in a 3 ring wheel - outermost chart to innermost chart

## Progression Interpretations

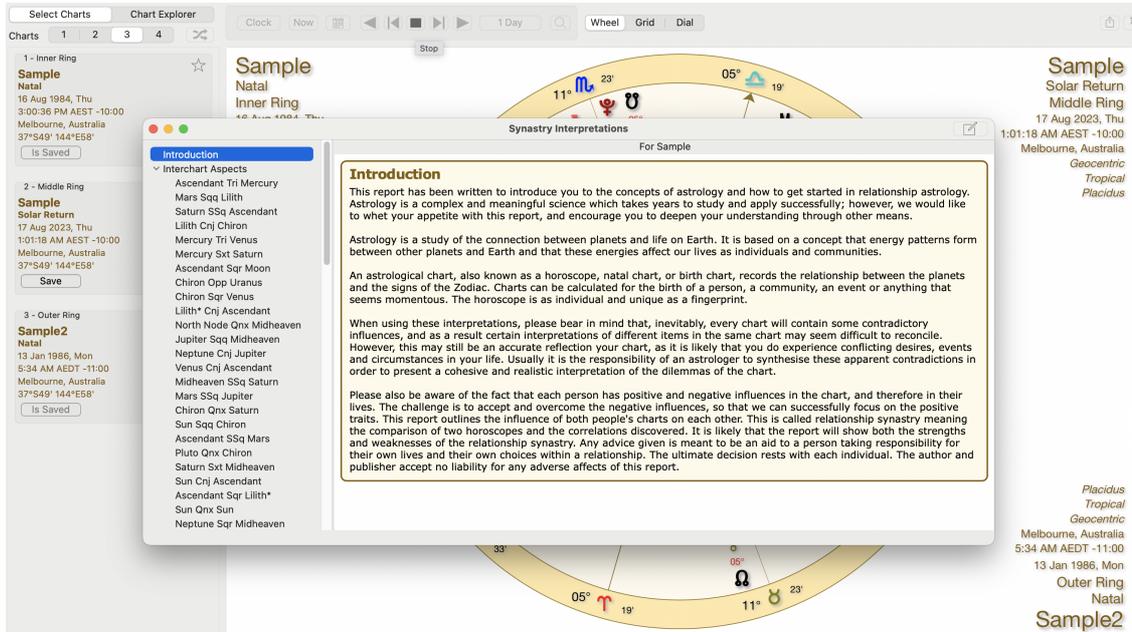
In a three or four ring wheel, only the outer ring and the inner ring are used for interpretations - the middle ring(s) is(are) ignored regardless of what type of chart it is. In the screen below you can see Progression interpretations between the outer and inner charts. This is because the outermost chart is a Progressed chart for the innermost Natal chart.



Progressions to Natal chart Interpretations

## Synastry Interpretations

If you display Natal charts in both the innermost and outermost rings of the wheel or grid, then when you select **Reports, Interpretations**, Synastry interpretations between the two charts will be displayed.



Synastry between outermost and innermost charts, both being Natal charts

## Midpoint Interpretations

You can see interpretations for midpoints in Astro Sheets, in the "Midpoints" section. When you click on a midpoint item in either the Midpoints List or Midpoint Trees, interpretations for that midpoint, or midpoint on point, will be displayed.

- Prog Lunar Phases
- Life Time Arcs
- Sun Sign Wheels
- ▼ **Traditional**
- Essential Dignities
- House Dignities
- Planetary Sect
- Dignities/Horary
- Dignities/Sects
- Firdaria
- Profections
- Zodiacal Releasings
- Lunar Mansions
- ▼ **Midpoints**
- Midpoints List
- Midpoint Trees
- ▼ **Minor Bodies**
- Asteroids List
- Asteroid Aspects
- ▼ **Lots/Parts**
- Arabic Lots List
- Arabic Lot Aspects
- ▼ **Fixed Stars**
- Stars List
- Star Aspects
- Star Parans

Midpoints List - By Mode & Sign						
MP	Mode	Sg	Long	Mod 30°	Hs	
♃ + ♀	Crd	♂	00°Ar00'03"	00°00'	12th	
♀ + ♄	Crd	♂	00°Ar13'50"	00°13'	12th	
♃ + ♄	Crd	♂	01°Ar19'58"	01°19'	12th	
♂ + ♃	Crd	♂	04°Ar21'49"			
♃ + ♁	Crd	♂	04°Ar57'26"			
♀ + ♂	Crd	♂	05°Ar10'26"			
♀ + ♁	Crd	♂	05°Ar46'03"			
♃ + ♂	Crd	♂	06°Ar16'34"			
♃ + ♁	Crd	♂	06°Ar52'11"			
♁ + ♀	Crd	♂	08°Ar04'36"			
♀ + ♁	Crd	♂	08°Ar53'06"			
♃ + ♃	Crd	♂	09°Ar59'53"			
♀ + ♃	Crd	♂	10°Ar48'30"			
♃ + ♃	Crd	♂	11°Ar54'38"			
♃ + ♃	Crd	♂	12°Ar49'33"			
♃ + ♃	Crd	♂	17°Ar16'44"			
♃ + ♃	Crd	♂	18°Ar05'21"	18°05'	12th	

**Interpretations**

**Moon|Mars at 06°Ar16'34"**

The Moon-Mars midpoint blends your emotional instincts with your assertive energies. When this midpoint is activated, it drives you to take action based on your feelings, offering a powerful boost in situations that demand courage and emotional directness. This can be crucial when you need to defend your or others' emotional boundaries or when you're motivated to initiate projects driven by your passions. For example, if you are facing challenges that require you to assert yourself emotionally or to engage in physical endeavours that are emotionally charged, this midpoint provides the energy and determination needed to act confidently and protectively.

Interpretation for a midpoint in the Midpoints List.

Midpoint Trees - Modulus 45°00' - Orb 1°00'

Planet	Sign	Orb												
♃	♌	0°07'	♂	♌	0°08'	♃	♌	0°03'	♃	♌	0°03'	♃	♌	0°12'
♃	♌	0°15'	♂	♌	0°08'	♃	♌	0°24'	♃	♌	0°07'	♃	♌	0°13'
♃	♌	0°20'	♂	♌	0°12'	♃	♌	0°06'	♃	♌	0°19'	♃	♌	0°22'
♃	♌	0°20'	♂	♌	0°40'	♃	♌	0°26'	♃	♌	0°28'	♃	♌	0°34'
♃	♌	0°28'	♂	♌	0°40'	♃	♌	0°28'	♃	♌	0°31'	♃	♌	0°41'
♃	♌	0°32'	♂	♌	0°43'	♃	♌	0°29'	♃	♌	0°36'	♃	♌	0°42'
♃	♌	0°34'	♂	♌	0°56'	♃	♌	0°42'	♃	♌	0°41'	♃	♌	0°38'
♃	♌	0°41'	♂	♌	0°58'	♃	♌	0°55'	♃	♌	0°57'	♃	♌	0°48'

**Pluto = Jupiter | Saturn Semisquare (Orb 0°28')**  
You can work compulsively towards a goal or an objective, using vast energy resources if needed. You can be extreme at work and in your search for a meaning.

Interpretation for midpoint on point in the Midpoints Tree

In natal charts if you have a set of Displayed Points that includes Extra Points such as midpoints, stars, parts or minor bodies, then any interpretations that exist for midpoints involving these extra bodies will be displayed the same as normal displayed points in natal charts.

Sample Natal  
16 Aug 1984, Thu  
3:00:36 PM AEST -10:00  
Melbourne, Australia  
37°S49' 144°E58'

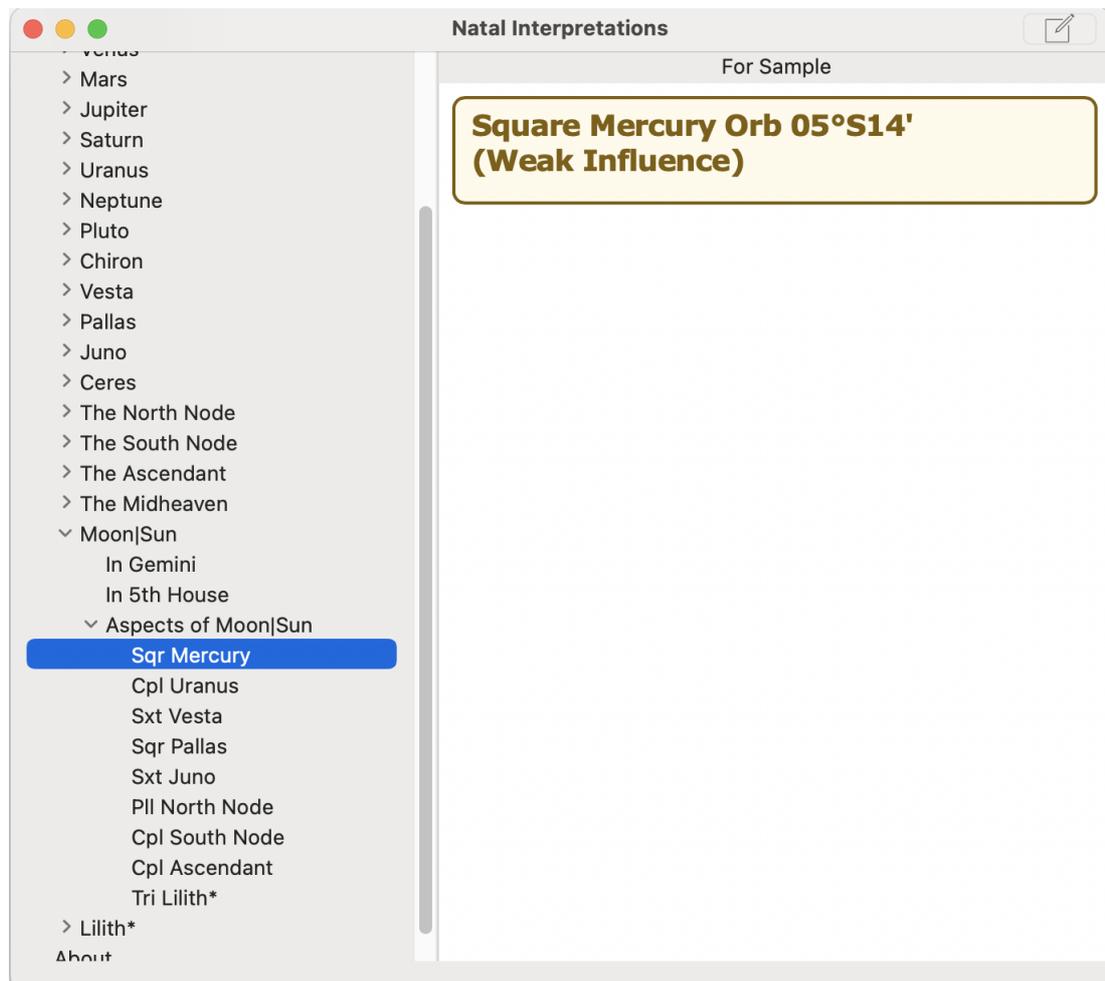
**Moon|Sun**  
The Sun-Moon midpoint is about aligning your actions with your feelings. When this midpoint is activated, it signals a need to ensure your goals and emotions are in sync. This alignment aids in making decisions that feel right both logically and emotionally. It is particularly useful when facing choices that impact both your personal and professional life. For instance, if you're considering a career move or a significant relationship decision, checking this midpoint can provide insights into whether your plans align with your emotional well-being, leading to more satisfying outcomes.

**Moon|Sun in Gemini**

**Moon|Sun in 5th House**

**Aspects of Moon|Sun**  
Moon|Sun has 9 aspects to other chart points.

Midpoint interpretations via the Natal Chart.



Midpoint aspect interpretations via the Natal Chart

**Note:** The midpoint interpretations have been written by Johannes Lockwood of Denmark. These interpretations cannot be edited by the user.

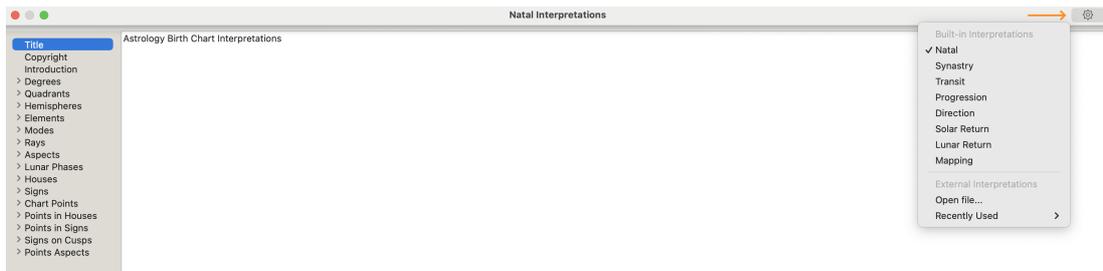
### >> To edit the Interpretations

- 1) [Open interpretations](#) for any chart (e.g. for a natal chart), for viewing in the normal manner.
- 2) In the Interpretations window on the Title Bar, click on the "Edit" **icon** on the right hand side.

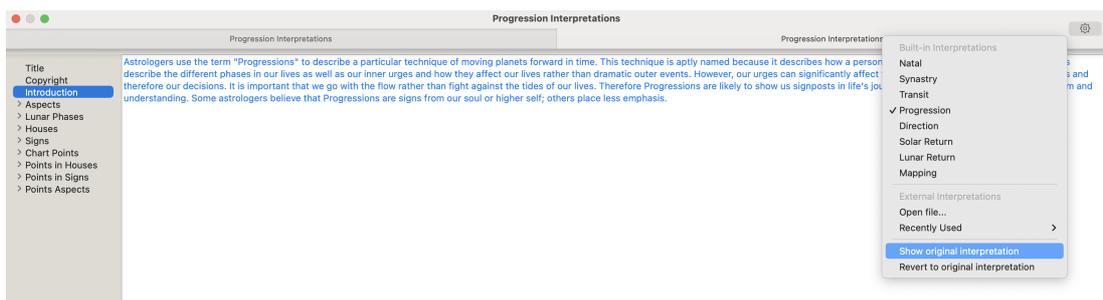


- 3) This will open the Interpretations Editor for the type of chart displayed. You are however also able to edit any other built-in interpretation sets, by clicking on the Settings (gears) icon on the right of the Title Bar of the Editor, and selecting the interpretation set you want to edit.

**NOTE:** An advanced option on this menu also allows you to open any “external” interpretations (\*.int) file and edit it directly - using the **Open file...** menu option. In this case, unlike editing any of the built-in interpretations, any changes you make are saved to the original file as soon as you commit the change and those changes cannot be reverted. This functionality is intended primarily to be used as an administrative tool, and unlikely to be useful to most users.



- 4) You can simply edit any individual items within the interpretations set you have selected. Any items you edit are shown with a blue font, versus a black font for the built-in version. The font shown above is black as it hasn't been edited.
- 5) Once you edit some text in the interpretations the font changes to blue. Also now when the Settings menu is opened, there are two new options on it:
  - a. **Show original interpretation.** This just temporarily displays the original text in a black font - if you close Astro Gold and then view this text again your changes will be displayed in the blue font.
  - b. **Revert to original interpretation.** This permanently discards your changes without any confirmation, and displays the original interpretation text in a black font.



- 6) If you edit the built-in Copyright notice, then when the copyright is displayed anywhere in the app, the built-in copyright notice remains displayed as a prefix to your additional added/edited copyright text.
- 7) To create a new line in the interpretation text use the **Option** and **Return** keys together - press the Option key down and keep holding it down, then press the Return key down, then let both keys go.

## 7.7 Astro Locality Maps

Astro Locality is based on the projection of astrological factors onto a map of the world.

An astrology chart will change as its location changes, firstly because its angles (ASC, MC, DESC, IC) will change, which in turn will usually change which house each chart point is in, plus the aspects of the chart points to the chart angles. When one spends time in a different location to one's birth place, then one experiences one's chart in an altered way because of these reasons. Using astro locality mapping techniques we can see what in our chart will change as we move to various places on the globe.

The primary function of astrology locality mapping is to draw lines across the map showing where a particular astrological factor would occur. In Astro Gold there are two main kinds of calculation used to do this, giving rise to two similar sets of lines: Culminating/Anti-Culminating/Rising/Setting lines (in Mundo) and MC/IC/ASC/DESC lines (Zodiacal).

- 1) In Mundo calculation - which is based on the right ascension and declination of each planet in the chart, and thus can show where on the map a planet will be rising at the eastern horizon, culminating overhead, setting at the western horizon or crossing underneath one's feet on the other side of the globe. These lines are based on mundane measurements.
- 2) Zodiacal calculation - which is based on the celestial counterparts to these measurements, celestial longitude and latitude, and shows where on the map a planet will be rising at the Ascendant (ASC), or conjuncting the Midheaven (MC), Descendant (DESC) or Imum Coeli (IC). These lines are based on ecliptical measurements.

Astro Gold also produces a third type of line based on the local horizon and meridian, called Local Space lines. These lines reflect the fact that the In Mundo or Zodiacal calculations do not produce lines on a map that are very different from each other - this is because whether one uses right ascension and declination (In Mundo measurements) or ecliptical latitude and longitude (Zodiacal measurements) to pinpoint the "position" of a planet in the sky, the position of the planet in the sky doesn't change much.

However to an observer on Earth the position of a planet in the sky, relative to the observer's position, does change a great deal when observed from different places on the globe.

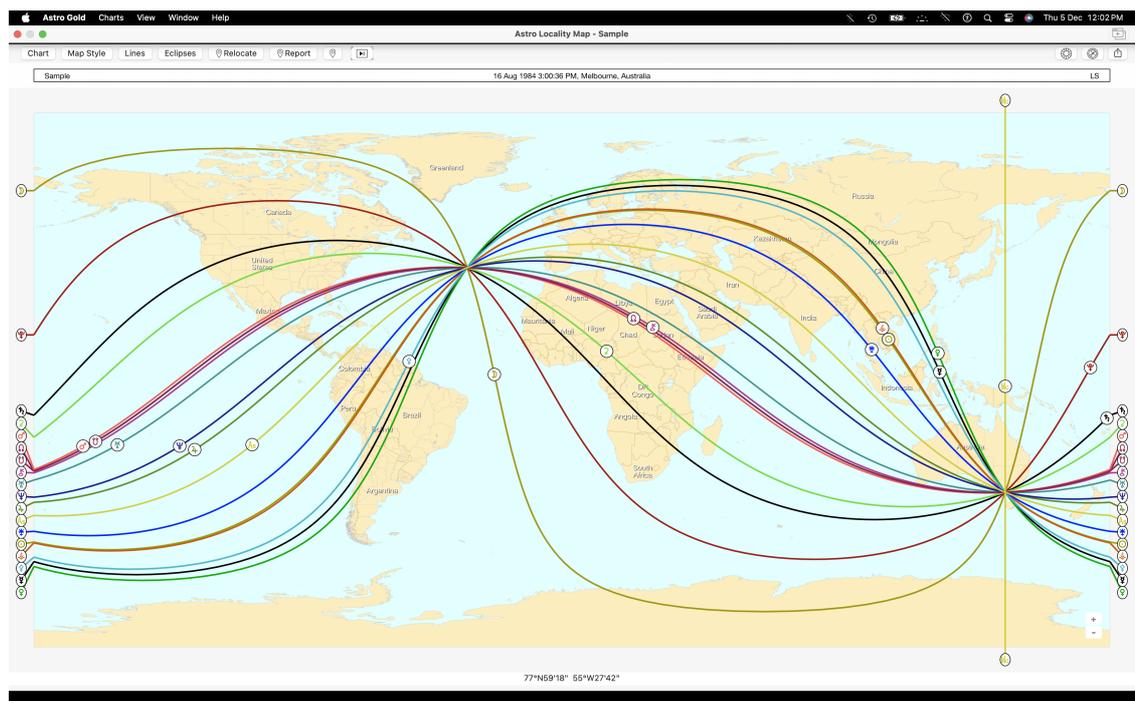
The most obvious case of this is when someone observes a planet from the northern hemisphere and the planet appears to them as being on their southern horizon, while someone else looking at the same planet from the opposite side of the globe (and thus also in the southern hemisphere) will observe it as being on their northern horizon.

With Local Space lines the azimuths of the planets are drawn on the map. These lines extend out from the chart's location, following a path towards the observable position of the planet in the sky at the time of the chart until the line comes to the horizon, and disappears out of view as it continues around the globe, eventually to return to the chart's location from the opposite horizon from which it started towards.

See [Astro Locality Principles](#) for a more detailed explanation of the basic principles upon which astrology locality mapping is based.

### >> To open the Astro Mapping Module

- If the Astro Mapping module isn't already open - click on the View menu, then click on Astro Locality Maps. Alternatively click the globe icon  in the Toolbar. Chart 1 will be displayed in a world map.
- ❖ Alternatively in the "Selected Charts Pane" on the left, for the chart you want to display in the Astro Mapping module, click its **Select** button, then on **View in Maps**. This will display that chart in a world map.
- Otherwise if you wish to preserve the currently displayed map, you can open a separate new map (complete with its own settings) by clicking on the "New Window" icon  in the top right corner of an existing map window title bar.



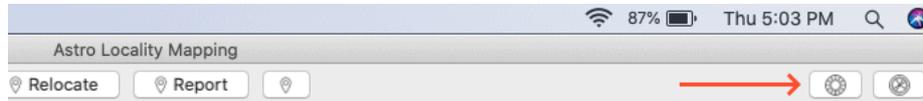
Astro Locality Map: Local Space planetary direction lines displayed

### >> To select a different Chart

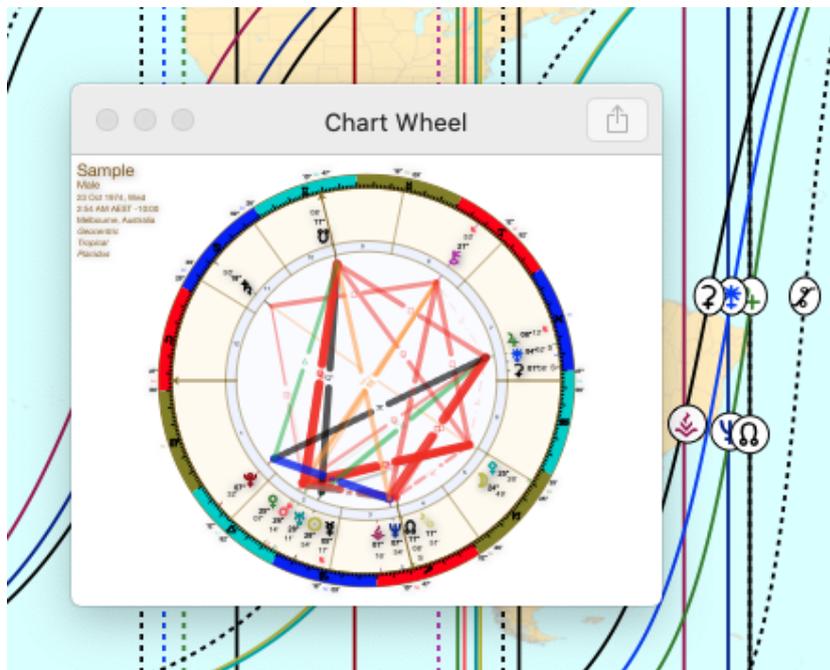
- In the top left of the Maps screen click on the **Charts** button. This will open up a menu listing all charts selected in the main app window, from which you can select another chart to use in the currently displayed Map.

## >> To display the map Chart in a wheel on top of the Map

- In the top right of the Maps screen there are two small circles.



Clicking on the **first small circle** displays the Map chart in a small wheel.

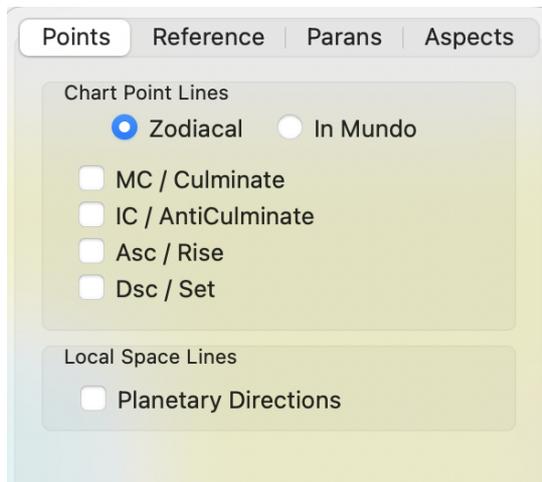


## >> To change how the Map itself appears

- 1) Click on the **Map Style** button - a menu will dropdown.
  - a. In the top half of the menu you can choose between seeing the map normally (Plain Map) or as a Satellite view.
  - b. In the bottom half of the map click on **Countries** to show country names only, or **Cities** to show major city names only, or **None** for no labels at all.
- 2) Zoom into the map via mouse left button double-click; and unzoom with mouse right button double-click or holding down the Control key while mouse left button double-clicking.
- 3) Use the scroll bars on the right and bottom of the Map window to pan the map (if you don't see scroll bars change the setting for that option in in System Preferences).

## >> To determine which lines are drawn on the Map

- Click on the **Lines** button to display the "Lines" dialog box, which will display the menu shown below, with different types of lines available under different tabs.



The Lines menu for the Map

### Points

- 1) First decide on which type of Chart Points (if any) - **Zodiacal** or **In Mundo**.

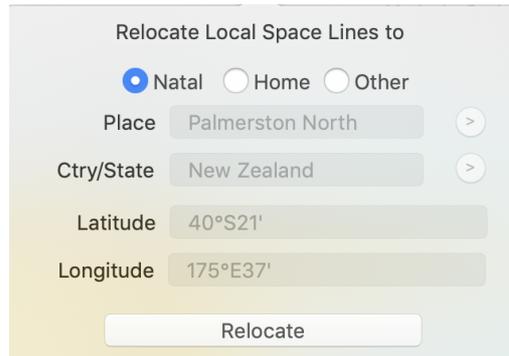
- Then decide which lines of that type of Chart Point you want to see by clicking in the check-box of each of the next four items.
- *Zodiacal* points are based on the ecliptic intersecting with the meridian or the horizon, and are the MC/IC/ASC/DSC.
- *In Mundo* Points are based on the meridian or horizon only and are Culminate/AntiCulminate/Rise/Set.

**TIP:** You can toggle all four lines all on, or all off, at once - by repeatedly double-clicking anywhere in the Chart Points area.

- 2) As well, or instead of, Chart Points lines, you can choose Local Space lines.

- If you choose Local Space lines by clicking on *Planetary Directions* the lines will be the same regardless of the Chart Points you have chosen, and will include the chart angles.

Because Local Space lines emanate across the Map from the chart's actual location, it is necessary to change the chart's location to see how that would change the Local Space lines. To do this click on the **Relocate** button, and enter in the new chart location details.



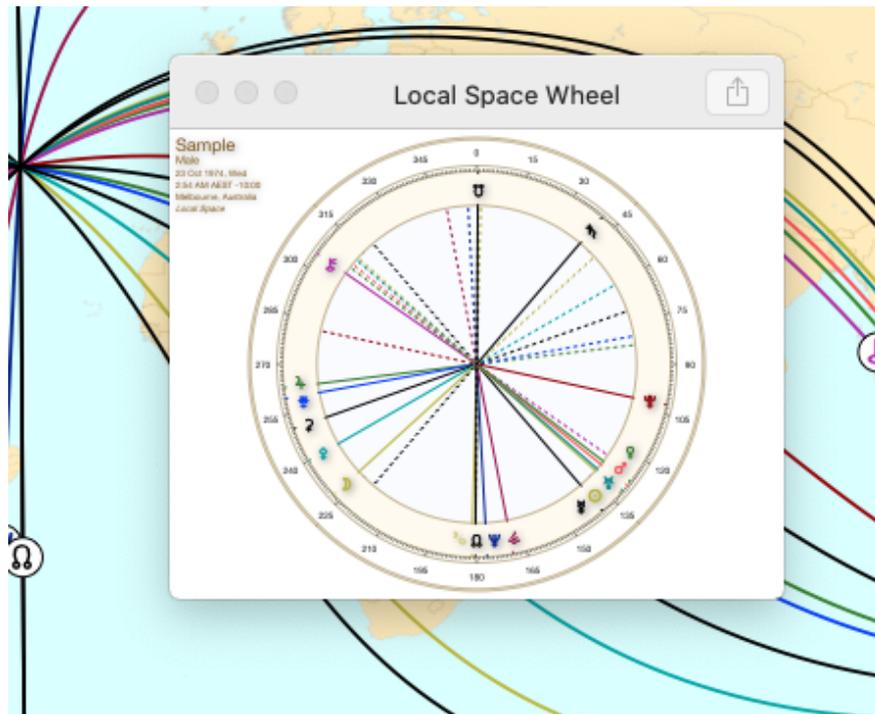
The map changes and the local space lines are redisplayed according to the new location.

You can also display a Local Space Wheel (also called a Local Space Chart) on top of the map by clicking on the second of two small circles in the top right of the Maps screen.

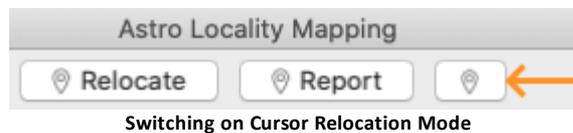


Clicking on the **second small circle** displays a small Local Space wheel window that sits on top of the map. Click on that small circle at the top of the screen again and the wheel is removed

By hovering the mouse over the left or right edge of the Local Space wheel window the cursor changes into a small double-pointed arrow. If you then click on the mouse button, and while continuing to hold it down, you can then drag the window edge to the left or right to make the whole window bigger or smaller.



Finally, relocating the chart can be animated. This is done by clicking on the **Cursor Relocation Mode** button, shown below.



In *cursor relocation* mode, when you move the mouse over the map Astro Gold relocates the chart to where the mouse cursor is positioned, in real time. Therefore, when switched on, the Planetary Directions lines change to reflect the constantly changing relocation point on the map as the mouse is moved. And if the Local Space wheel is displayed it also updates in real time relevant to the constantly changing relocation point on the map as the mouse is moved.

When in *cursor relocation* mode, clicking on a location on the map fixes the chart wheel(s) and maps local space lines at that location (after which *cursor relocation* mode can be restarted, if still desired, by clicking on the *cursor relocation* mode button again).

## Reference

- 1) In the Celestial group of lines you can opt to display for all locations where the **Ecliptic** lies, plus what **Sign would be on the MC** at any location, and what **Sign would be on the ASC** at any location. The signs are shown in the currently selected sign colors.

And to avoid ambiguity, if only lines for "Signs on ASC" is selected, **or** only "Signs on MC" is selected, whatever option is selected will be annotated at the edges of the map and also on the intersection with the ecliptic line.

If both options are selected, then only the "Signs for Asc" are annotated on their intersection with the ecliptic line.

- 2) In the Geographical group of lines you can opt to display the **Equator** and the **Tropics**.
- 3) Finally under Zodiacal Offset the "Geodetic" option affects the MC/IC/Asc/Desc lines, displacing them by a specified geodetic longitudinal offset.

That is, you can specify a meridian (longitude), and then the signs will align to 0 Aries being at that meridian. By default the meridian will be the the one at Greenwich, but you can enter any meridian and that will be used instead. If you click on the 3 dots to the right of the longitude textbox, a pop menu will be displayed allowing quick selection of the Greenwich meridian, the Pryamid of Giza meridian, or the most recently used meridian. See [Geodetic Equivalents](#) for more info.

## Parans

Parans occur when two points are simultaneously conjunct a chart angle e.g. Venus is on the ASC while Saturn is on the MC. In the local space reference a paran is formed whenever two planetary lines cross.

- To show Paran lines click on the **Parans** tab then in the **Show Parans** checkbox until it has a tick in it. To turn Paran lines off click in the **Show Parans** checkbox until it doesn't have a tick in it.

The first time you show Paran lines all the possible parans for every planet will be displayed, which is a huge amount of information which might cover most of a screen. Therefore it's best to either use the *filtering* options, or else to zoom into the map to an area of interest as much as possible, to avoid overcrowding of the display. To filter the paran lines turn on one of the following filters by clicking its checkbox until it has a tick in it. To turn the filter off click its checkbox until it doesn't have a tick in it.

### Paran Filters

You can select one or the other, or neither, of these filters.

#### **a) Rise/Set to Rise/Set only**

These lines show the latitude where each respective pair of planets will both be either rising (on the ASC) at the same time, one rising and one setting (on the DESC), or both setting.

#### **b) Rise/Set to Culm/ACulm only**

These lines show the latitude where each respective pair of planets will be either one rising and one culminating (on the MC), or one rising and one anti-culminating (on the IC), one setting and one culminating (on the MC), or one setting and one anti-culminating (on the IC).

#### Point Filter

You can select parans involving just one point in **Parans only of Point**.

#### Latitude Filter

You can limit parans to a specific band of latitude north and south of the equator e.g. from 15  $\text{N}$  to 15  $\text{S}$ . For that you would enter 15 into the **Limit of Latitude** textbox.

### **Aspects**

Aspects are an important part of astro locality mapping, with the conjunction to the angles being the most important. Other aspects to the chart angles also provide significance however.

To display Aspect Lines click in the **Show Aspects** checkbox until it is ticked, likewise to turn aspect lines off click it until it isn't ticked.

### **>> To search for and display Eclipses**

- Click on the **Eclipses** button. This opens the "Eclipse Search" dialog where you can search for Solar eclipses.

Year Range  to

Eclipse Types

Type	Date	Longitude	Saros	Magnitu...	Aspects
Solar Total	8 Apr 2024	19°Ar24'02"	30/139	1.0287	
Solar Annular	2 Oct 2024	10°Li03'48"	17/144	0.9666	
Solar Partial	29 Mar 2025	09°Ar00'05"	21/149	0.9380	
Solar Partial	21 Sep 2025	29°Vi05'09"	7/154	0.8554	

**Solar Annular Eclipse (New Moon)**

Exact Phase 2 Oct 2024 6:49:13 PM UT  
 Max Eclipse 2 Oct 2024 6:45:04 PM UT  
 Location of Max 21°S57'03" 114°W31'27"  
 Global Duration 6h 03m 42.5s  
 Max Local Totality 0h 07m 24.8s

Retain Chart Lines

- 1) Set the **Year Range**, and choose the **Eclipse Types** (to change the type of Solar eclipse to search for click on the three dots to the right of the "Eclipse Types" textbox).
- 2) Click on the **Search** button, and any eclipses found will be displayed in the list.
- 3) Select which list you want to display on the map by clicking on it.
- 4) Before displaying the eclipse lines on the map - if you want the currently selected map lines to stay drawn on the map click in the **Retain Chart Lines** checkbox until a tick appears (and vice versa).
- 5) Click on the **Select** button and the selected eclipse lines will be displayed on the map.
- 6) To remove the eclipse lines form the map, click on the **Eclipses** button and then on the **Remove** button at the bottom of the "Eclipse Search" dialog.

### >> To activate CycloCartoGraphy (the Chart Stepper)

- 1) In the top left of the Maps screen click on the **Charts** button, then choose a dynamic type chart (transits, progressions etc) to display in the map (unless you already are displaying a dynamic type chart). If no charts are of a dynamic type you'll need to select one in the Chart Details area in the Main Screen, then come back to this.

- 2) Click on the **Chart Stepper** icon  in the Maps window Toolbar (the shortcut is to simultaneously press the Option+Command+right arrow keys).
- 3) The "Chart Stepper" is an exact replica of the Chart Stepping facility on the main screen. For info on how to use it see [Stepping through time](#).
- 4) One way to make use of this facility is to display a natal chart in the Map, then display one or more dynamic charts (say a progressed chart and transits chart) for that natal chart in their own separate Maps windows (to do that click on the "New Window" icon  in the top right corner of the Map window title bar for each dynamic chart you want to display in its own separate window). Then when you use the "Chart Stepper" to step through time the dynamic chart maps will be displayed in windows on top of the main map which is displaying the natal chart.

### >> To relocate Local Space Lines on the map

- 5) If you have local space lines (e.g. Planetary Directions) turned on then you can change what location on the map they originate from by clicking on the **Relocate** button.
- 6) In the "Relocate" dialog you can quickly select the radix chart location (the **Natal** option), or the **Home** location (the default app location), or enter a new location (**Other** option).
- 7) Click on the Relocate button and the local space lines will be redrawn from that new location.

### >> To determine coordinates of and distances between specific places on the Map

- 1) Use the **Angular Distance** measuring tool...
- 2) Click once anywhere on the Map to engage the tool.
- 3) Now, wherever you hover the mouse the coordinates of the place you are hovering over will be shown at center of the bottom of the Map.
- 4) To see the distance between two locations click on the first location and holding the mouse button down drag the mouse to the other location and stop there but continue to hold the mouse button down. A line will be drawn between the two locations, and the distance between them will be shown to the right of the coordinates at the bottom center of the Map.

### >> To get interpretations

- 1) For individual planets and signs click on the **planet's or sign's symbol** in the line or at the end of the line. Specific interpretation text for that line will pop up.

- 2) To get a full report about the effect of relocating to somewhere on the globe other than the chart's location click on the **Report** button. Enter the location details of the place you're interested in, then click on the **Generate PDF** button.

Create Relocation Report for

Natal  Home  Other

Place  >

Ctry/State  >

Latitude

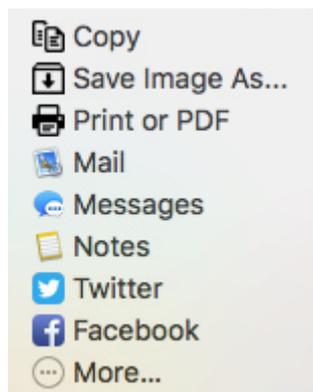
Longitude

As well as the Planet/Angle (Astro\*Carto\*Graphy) and Planet Direction (Local Space) lines, a section in the report will include a listing of any Paran lines within a 2 degree orb of the selected location to relocate to.

**NOTE:** The fixed maximum orb used for azimuths in relocation reports is 10 degrees. This is split into 3 equal parts to determine what are classified as strong, medium and weak aspects.

### >> To Save, Copy, Print or Share the Map

- Click on the **Action** button  at the top right. A menu will drop down, giving you these options and more. See [Printing](#) for more information about printing the map or saving it to a PDF file.



Map; Action button menu

## 7.7.1 Astro Locality Principles

To get the most out of Astro Locality mapping it's helpful to understand the basic principles upon which it's based.

## Astronomical Components of an Astrology Chart

At a basic level, in an astrology chart there are two main components:

- a) **The Sun, Moon, lunar Nodes & Planets.** These are what comprise the *immediate* celestial environment - the bodies and points in space surrounding Earth in our Solar System.

The most obvious thing about our solar system environment is that there are these large bodies in the sky, and that they are moving. However we know the Sun doesn't move relative to the other bodies of the solar system. It is the central point around which all the remaining bodies (planets, asteroids etc) orbit around - except the Moon of course which orbits around us here on Earth.

And obviously one of these planets that orbits around the Sun is Earth itself. The nearly circular *path* that Earth takes as it orbits around the Sun is called the **Ecliptic** (shown in **gold** as an extended plane out in space).

Simultaneously as Earth is orbiting the Sun, it is also rotating on its Polar (north-south) axis - causing our day and night. Exactly midway between these poles, at right angles to the Polar axis, is an imaginary circle around the bulge at the middle of the Earth, which is called the **Equator**.

This Polar axis is not vertical like that of the ecliptic, but rather tilts away from a vertical line. So the Earth rotates on a different plane to its orbit around the Sun (shown in **green** as an extended plane out in space).

- Where these two extended planes intersect creates the beginning of a core framework (the Tropical Zodiac) with which to measure where Earth is in relation to its immediate celestial environment. We begin the definition of the Tropical Zodiac at these two intersecting points, which are called:

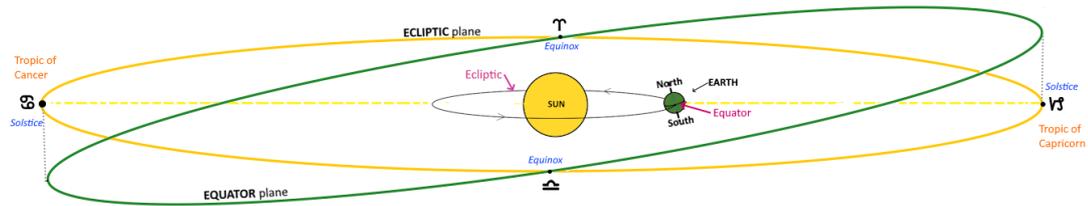
- **Aries** (♈) in the East and, directly opposite that **Libra** (♎) in the West

In Earth's journey round the Sun, the Sun is seen at these two intersection points twice a year, at the Equinoxes.

- Additionally, the Sun is seen to be furthest from Equator plane twice a year at the Solstices, at the two midway points distance-wise from where the two planes intersect. These two points are called:

- **Cancer** (♋) when the Sun is North of the Equator plane, and directly opposite that **Capricorn** (♑) when the Sun is South of the Equator plane

### The formation of the Tropical Zodiac



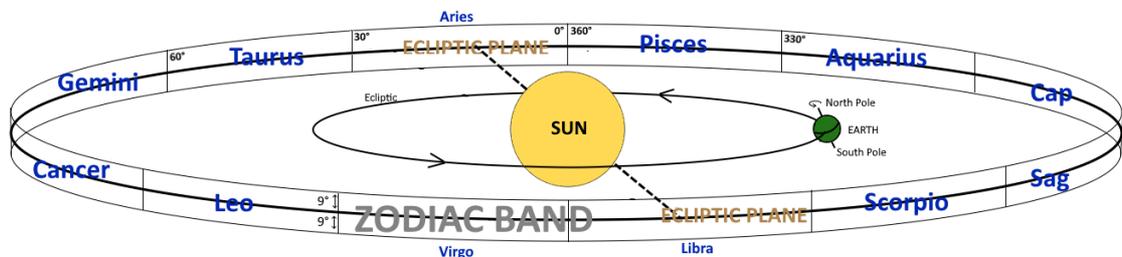
### The Ecliptic, ECLIPTIC plane, and the ZODIAC band

When the ecliptic is extended out beyond the edges of the solar system like this, as a 360° circle, it is called the *Ecliptic plane* (usually just the **Ecliptic** for short).

As each planet orbits the Sun it travels on or close to the **Ecliptic** plane. And although the Moon and its nodes orbit Earth instead, they do so approximately in the same plane as the Ecliptic plane (so also travel on or close to the **Ecliptic** too).

The Zodiac is an approximately 9° band of space extending north and south either side of the **Ecliptic** plane like a 18° wide belt in space.

The 12 *signs* of this Tropical Zodiac (which are nothing to do with the constellations of stars by the same name) are arranged around the 360° **Ecliptic**, each sign being 30°, with the beginning of the first sign, Aries, being 0°, and the end of Pisces, the last sign, being 360°.



We identify where a body or point is on the **Ecliptic** by how far around (along) the **Ecliptic** it is when observed from Earth, stated in degrees (of celestial longitude from 0° to 360°) e.g. 204°, or alternatively as a Zodiac Sign degree (from 0 to 30°) e.g. 24° Libra.

So at any point in time each planet or node will be seen in a certain part (degree) of the **Ecliptic** (as well as simultaneously being at a certain corresponding Zodiac Sign degree).

And these planets and nodes will all have specific relationships with each other (*aspects*).

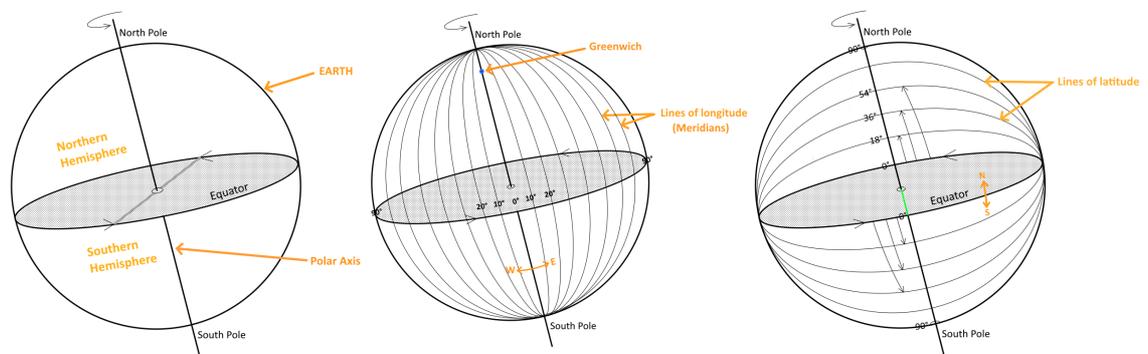
This all comprises our immediate Celestial environment. Coming from (relatively) distant space as it does, the information we can get from a snapshot of this environment at any particular time, which is shown by the astrology chart, will apply to all people on Earth at that time.

**NOTE:** As noted above, the **Ecliptic** plane is slightly different to the plane of Earth's **Equator**. It is exactly the same when the Sun (as seen from Earth in its orbit around the Sun) is at the beginning of Aries or Libra, otherwise when Sun (as seen from Earth in its orbit around the Sun) is in different signs it is a bit varied from that (peaking in variance at when the Sun is in Cancer or Capricorn).

b) **EARTH in relation to this Celestial Environment** (more specifically, at any point in time, the relationship of a *specific location* on Earth in relation to this celestial environment).

We determine this specific location on Earth using a coordinate system based on Earth's 24hr day/night spinning on its North-South polar axis, and the **Equator**, which is exactly midway between these poles at right angles (perpendicular) to the polar axis.

The **Equator** thus divides the globe into the Northern and Southern hemispheres.



The Polar axis and its related **Equator** give rise to geographical:

- i. **Longitude:** measurement of distance around (along) the **Equator** (from 0 to 180° east in one direction, and 0 to 180° west in the other direction).

With the starting point of 0° being anywhere in a north-south alignment with Greenwich in London, England. That location being just an arbitrary point decided upon to be the starting point.

So anywhere on the great circle that runs from the North pole, down through Greenwich, and further on down to the South pole, and returning up the other side of the globe to the North pole, is 0°. The degrees increase as one moves

eastwards from this circular line (e.g. from England towards Russia) and westwards from this circular line (e.g. from England to the USA).

For any location, the great circle running from the North pole directly overhead to the South pole (also crossing over the **Equator** at some point as it does so) is the **Meridian** of that location - each **Meridian** therefore having a specific longitude.

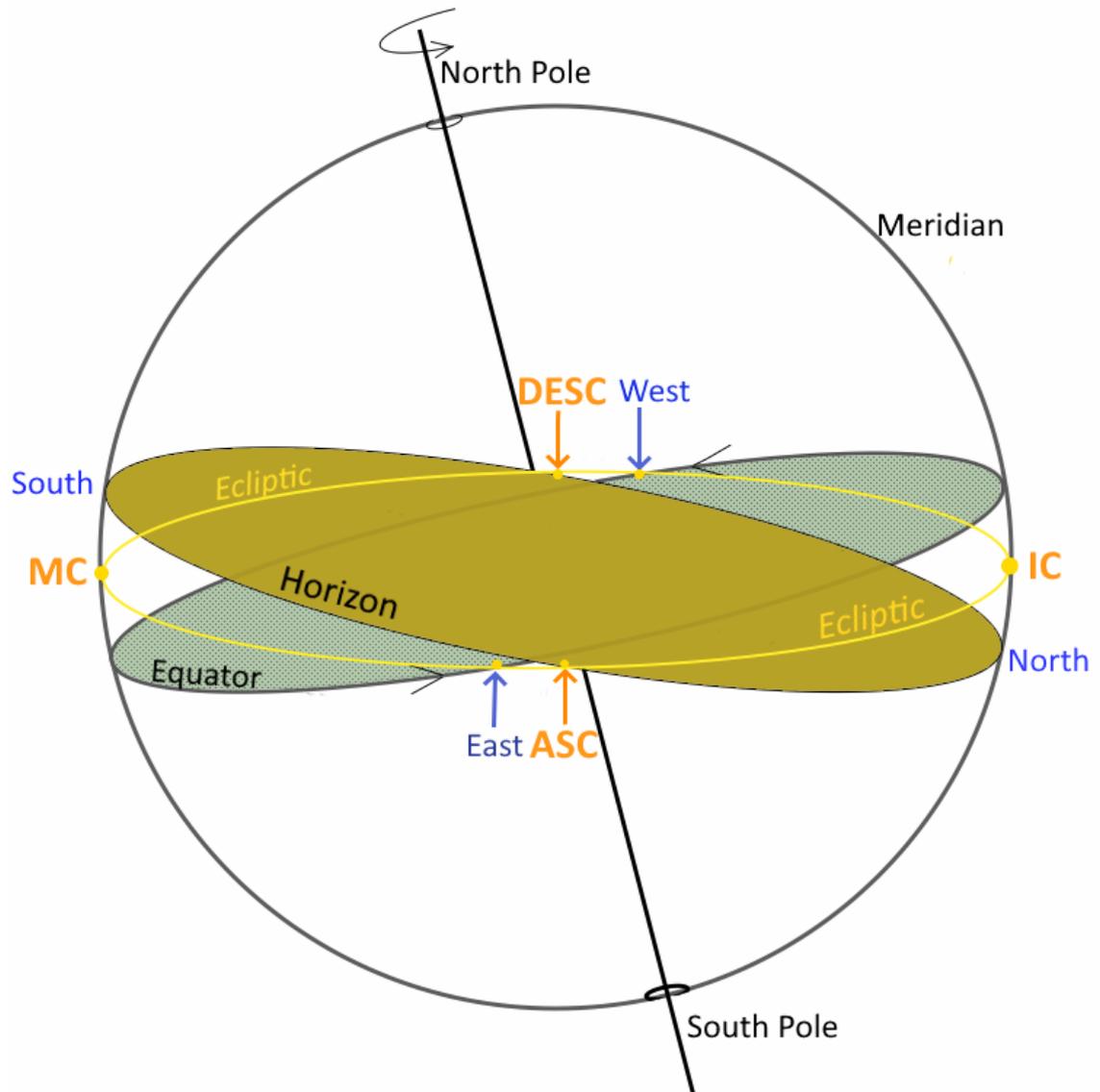
- ii. **Latitude**: measurement of distance up or down from the **Equator**, with anywhere on the **Equator** being 0°, and movement from there towards the north pole (from 0 to 90°) or from there towards the south pole (from 0 to 90°).

So any location on Earth will have a specific **longitude** degree and **latitude** degree.

And any specific location (a certain *longitude* & *latitude*) will also naturally have its own unique **Horizon**.

- a) moving east or west changes your *longitude*, and with it your **Horizon**.
- b) moving closer to or further away from the **Equator** changes your *latitude*, and also with it your **Horizon**.





Illustrating that the Zodiacal points (ASC/DESC) are close to the In Mundo points (Rising/Setting)

In more detail...

Any **Meridian** is directly related to the polar axis (it joins the poles).

Where we are on Earth always establishes our **Horizon**. If we hold a plumb line anywhere on Earth it shows us the direction of gravity, which will be at right angles to our horizon. The direction of gravity points upwards to the point in space directly above us (the Zenith), and downwards to the point in space directly below us (the Nadir).

The **Horizon** is related to the **Meridian** - as wherever we are the **Meridian** of that location always passes directly overhead from one pole to the other, and in so doing will intersect our **Horizon** in two places, creating the north and south points on our **Horizon**.

The **Meridian** and the **Horizon** are thus both directly connected, and are the two planes that orient us on Earth (giving rise to north, east, south, west).

And it is where both the **Meridian** and **Horizon** of a location respectively intersect the **Ecliptic** that the two core elements in the astrology chart are produced which represent our fundamental Earth location - the **MC** (where the **Meridian** intersects the **Ecliptic**) and the **ASC** (where the **Horizon** intersects the **Ecliptic**).

It is through these two points of intersection that the two components of the chart - our Earthly situation (local space), and our near Celestial environment (relatively "distant" space) - interface. It is through these two points that the macro and micro come together.

We know the common basic meanings given to the **ASC** and **MC** in the chart. Aligning naturally to the Aries archetype, the **ASC** correlates to our instinctive and spontaneous approach to life and situations generally. It can indicate our likely appearance, the ways in which we assert ourselves, act independently and push out into new experience. It is the primary innocent (or naive) experiencing of ourselves just as we innately are.

On the other hand the **MC** aligning with the Capricorn archetype correlates to our external worldly life and public situations of all kinds, our responsibilities, achievements, reputation and status. It denotes the way in which we will make our peak contribution to society.

We can see how vital these two core elements of the chart are - they make the chart personally relevant to an individual, via the individual's location. Without these core elements the chart would mean much the same for anyone born at or close to that time. But these two core elements anchor the zodiac signs and their inter-relationships to a specific location on Earth. And all that needs to be done to make that anchor full and complete is to add houses to the chart.

Most house systems incorporate the **ASC** and **MC** as part of their system, with the **ASC** becoming the cusp (beginning) of the 1st house and the **MC** becoming the cusp of the 10th house. For these systems that leaves only four more houses to calculate and mirror, and we now have an astrology chart that fully connects the Solar System (relatively "distant" space) with a specific location on Earth (our local space).

### **Changing locality on Earth (local space)**

We have seen how we connect a specific location on Earth to the Solar System surrounding Earth, as part of the process of casting an astrology chart for any point in time. And how in doing that we can get information highly specific to us as an individual. All because the astrology chart anchors our local space into our near celestial environment. But what happens when we move to a different location, i.e. our local space changes? Then along with that, all that information highly specific to us as an individual, also changes!

To measure or ascertain these changes AstroGold provides **Astro Locality Mapping**.

Simplified, in a nutshell this is basically just creating a new chart, based on the original one (the time remains the same), but changing the location used.

Since the location affects the longitudes of the **ASC** and **MC** (and usually thus the houses), when we change the location of a chart as well as the **ASC** and **MC** changing, the houses also all change. This also means the aspects from the Sun, Moon, Planets, Asteroids and nodes to the **ASC**, **MC** etc and house cusps all change as well.

**Astro Locality Mapping** gives us the tools to explore our actual current local space in detail. Plus ascertain what the changes would be if we moved to any other place on the globe. The advantage of this of course is that we can ascertain what the result of possible relocations etc. would be in terms of personal and public situations and experiences before making any decision to actually move to those locations.

### 7.7.2 Geodetic Equivalents

The Geodetic Equivalent map is useful for a variety of things e.g. looking at major transits that are impacting a particularly large area of the world, perhaps spotlighting the cause of a hurricane or earthquake. But what are geodetic equivalents?

While the idea was played around with by astrologers as far back as Ptolemy, pioneering work on the subject was published in a book around 1925 by the astrologer Sepharial (aka Walter Gorn). He suggested that if you take the Prime Meridian (the zero longitudinal degree line that passes through Greenwich) and associate it with 0 degrees Aries on the MC of a chart, each succeeding sign placed likewise at 30 degree intervals (thus 30 degrees east = 0 Taurus, 60 degrees east = 0 Gemini, etc.), you have what he called "the Geodetic Equivalent of longitude." This technique was expanded on, and written further about, by astrologer L. Edward Johndro.

Some people use it as an adjunct to help understand how various cultures sprang up in the world. For example, almost the entire continent of Australia has Leo for its Geodetic Equivalent MC. Perhaps this says a lot about the very ancient Indigenous cultures that developed there.

#### >> To apply the Geodetic Equivalents to an Astro Locality map

1. Open any chart (you can use a natal chart, the chart for an event, any chart you would like to "map")



2. Click the globe icon  in the toolbar to open the world map
3. In the "Astro Locality Mapping" window click the button on top of the map that says **Lines**. If the "Points" tab isn't displayed click on the **Points** tab.
4. At the top of the "Points" window choose **Zodiacal**.

5. If you just want to see the Geodetic equivalent sign lines, you can untick the first four boxes (**MC/Culminate, IC/AntiCulminate, Asc/Rise, Dsc/Set**). However leave them ticked if you want to see the planetary lines.
6. Untick the **Planetary Directions** box.
7. Click on the **Reference** tab.
8. Under "Celestial Lines", tick checkboxes for **Ecliptic, Signs on MC,** and **Signs on Asc.**
9. Under "Geographical Lines" ticking the checkboxes **Equator** and **Tropics** boxes is optional.
10. Under "Zodiacal Offset" tick the checkbox **Geodetic**.
11. Click on the **three dots** to the right of the meridan textbox and a popup menu will be displayed.
12. Select **Greenwich Meridan**. Press the Esc key on the keyboard to close the pop up menu.

You will now see the Geodetic Equivalent MC (and Asc) lines.

And if you have any doubt that the planet lines are different in Geodetic than in the regular Locality map, untick the **Geodetic** checkbox and watch them all change on the map.

## 7.8 Essential Dignities

Essential Dignities/Debilities are part of a wider system of measuring the impact (positive or negative) a planet will have in a chart.

Conditions of placement in a chart wherein a planet's influence is strengthened, are termed Dignities; if weakened they are termed Debilities. These are of two varieties: Essential and Accidental. A planet in a Sign in which it is strengthened, is in one of its Essential Dignities; in a House in which it is strengthened, in its Accidental Dignity. This report covers Essential Dignities/Debilities.

The Essential Dignities are:

1. When a planet is in a Sign of which it is the Ruler, when it is said to be in its own Sign, or in its Domal Dignity. If the Sign which a planet rules is on the cusp of the House in which the planet is posited, the planet may be described as the Lord of the House: but the strength as such depends upon its Essential Dignity by virtue of its Sign placement. Some authorities deem that placement in any other Sign of the same element as that of which it is the Ruler confers a degree of Dignity.
2. When it is posited in the Sign in which it is said to be Exalted, wherein its strength is augmented and its virtues magnified. A planet in its Exaltation is only slightly less favorably placed than when it is in its own Sign.
3. By ancient precepts, the placement of a planet in the same Triplicity as that of which it is the Ruler, in the same Term, or in the same Face, were deemed to be Essential Dignities of varying degree.

A score for a planet is computed by points as follows:

- In the sign of Rulership = 5
- In the sign of Exaltation = 4
- In the Triplicity - of the sign of the sect ruler (Sun or Moon) = 3
- In one of its Terms = 2
- In one of its Faces (Decans) = 1
- In Mutual Reception by Sign = 5
- In Mutual Reception by Exaltation = 4
- In Mutual Reception by Triplicity = 3
- In Mutual Reception by Term = 2
- In Mutual Reception by Face = 1

The above values apply in all cases regardless of whether the "MR Ignored" option is selected or not. When it is selected mutual receptions (MRs) are ignored for the matter of **peregrine status** only, and not for dignity scoring, for which MRs are always included.

#### Essential Debilities

In the opposite Sign to that which it rules, a planet is said to be in its Detriment; which is to say, in opposition to its most congenial environment, hence materially weakened. In the opposite Sign to that in which it would be in its Exaltation, it is said to be in its Fall.

The scale of Essential Debilities is:

- Detriment = - 5
- Fall = - 4

A planet in its Debility is generally to be interpreted as an indication of weakness in that it increases the bad effects of a "malefic", and lessens the possibilities for good of a "benefic".

A planet is Peregrine when it lacks any essential dignity - that is if it does NOT occur in:

- a) the sign it rules
- b) the sign it is exalted in
- c) one of its Faces (also known as decanates or decans, which is a division of the signs into 10° sections, each of which is governed by one of the planets).
- d) a sign of its rulership Triplicity (fire, earth, air or water)
- e) one of its Terms (specific degrees within the signs the planet rules)

NOTE: However whatever debilities a planet does or does not have is not relevant when assessing if it is peregrine or not.

Such a planet scores:

- Peregrine = - 5

## 7.9 Professional Reports

You can purchase optional Report Type add-ons allowing you to create clear, informative, beautifully illustrated professional reports which you can print out, save, or email to others. Once you purchase a particular add-on, you can then run as many reports of that report type as you want, for no extra charge.

The Report Types that can be purchased as an add-on are:

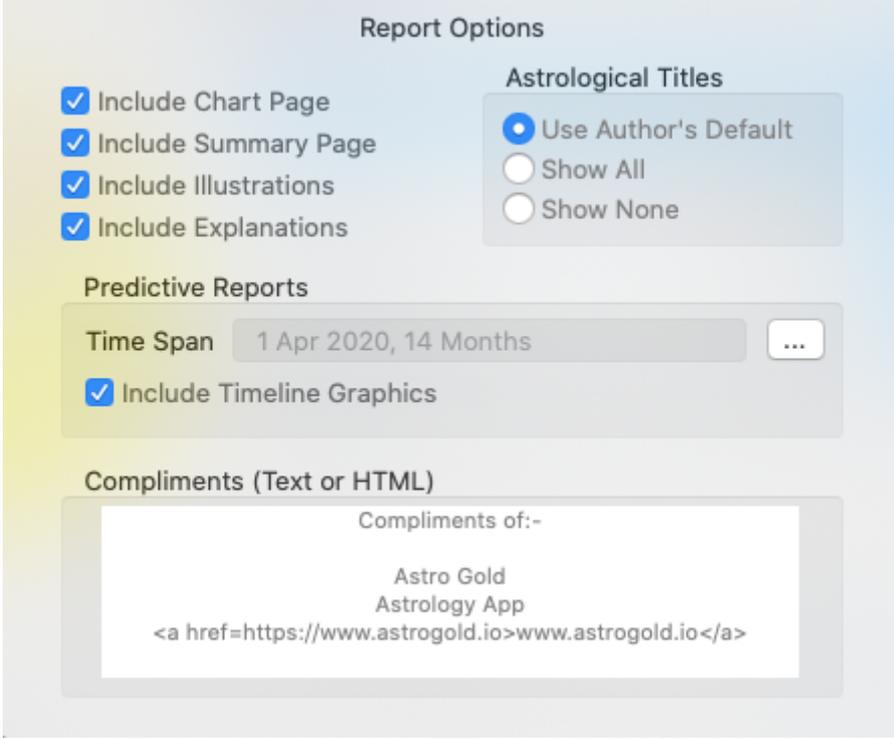
- Birth Chart Report
- Child Report
- Adolescent Astrology Report
- The Big Three Astrology Report
- Family Astrology Report
- Relationship Report
- Predictive Report
- Vocation Astrology Report
- Birthday Report
- Lunar Return Report
- My Pet Report



Professional Report selection

## Report Options

To see the Report Options and enter compliments for your reports click on the Gear icon  and the following dialog window opens:



Report Options

Include Chart Page

Include Summary Page

Include Illustrations

Include Explanations

Astrological Titles

Use Author's Default

Show All

Show None

Predictive Reports

Time Span 1 Apr 2020, 14 Months ...

Include Timeline Graphics

Compliments (Text or HTML)

Compliments of:-

Astro Gold  
Astrology App  
<a href=https://www.astrogold.io>www.astrogold.io</a>

Select the options you want. You can also enter the compliments you want used for the reports.

### >> To purchase a Report Type license

Here is an example of the ordering process. The content on the webpages involved may change over time - however this shows you what the process generally entails.

- 1) Click on the **Report Type** you want to purchase.
- 2) Click on the **Get License...** button. The Fastspring Order Form web page will load (shown below). The prices are subject to change. This an example only of what the order form looks like.
- 3) Make sure the country whose currency you will be using to pay for the purchase is selected in the top right corner. Normally the country your device is in will automatically be selected for you. The actual cost of the purchase will be in US dollars, but the estimated cost for the
- 4) In the "Reports selection" click in the radio button (small round circle) in front of the report type you want to purchase until it becomes a filled blue circle (an example the Professional Predictive Report is selected below)
- 5) Click on the **Order Now** button.

**Cosmic Apps Store**

Australia



**Professional Reports for Astro Gold**

Would you like to know more about your own birth chart, written by a professional astrologer and writer?

These are carefully-crafted, beautifully illustrated astrology reports, written by experienced, professional astrologers. They are perfect for any astrology enthusiast wanting to create high-quality astrological reports on their Mac.

Once you have created your report you can read it, email it, message it, copy it, send it, print it or export it as a PDF file to other apps that accept PDF files, such as iBooks or DropBox.

These reports also make wonderful gifts for family, friends and acquaintances!

Types of reports that are available:

- \* Adolescence - a report for teenagers.
- \* Birth Chart - An illustrated report interpreting your natal chart.
- \* Family - insights into the experiences that shape you as a person, and how you operate in your family.
- \* Predictive - Interpretations and timing of transits for the year ahead.
- \* Relationship - Interpretation of the synastry between two people's birth charts.
- \* Child - A birth chart report for a child or youth.
- \* Birthday - A Solar Return report.
- \* Lunar Return - A monthly report for lunar returns.
- \* My Pet - A report for your dog, cat or other pet.
- \* Vocation - Psychological insights into Vocations.
- \* The Big Three - is designed to provide a short introduction to the Sun, Moon and Ascendant.

The reports all have an easy to read introduction and astrological interpretations for each of the sections.

To learn more about exactly what is included in each report type, in the Astro Gold app:

- \* Read "About" - obtain a more detailed description of each particular report type by selecting the report, and then selecting the "About" button.
- \* Create a Sample Report - you can create one or more samples of any report type just by selecting the report and then selecting the "Sample PDF" button. This generates a report based on a randomly named and dated chart, and saves it to your list of saved reports, in exactly the same manner as if you had licensed the report.

*Please note that use of these reports requires the Astro Gold v2.4 or higher to be running on your computer. Use Astro Gold / Check for Updates to make sure you are up to date.*

**Reports selection**

- Professional Adolescent Report USD 195.00

- 6) The Cosmic Apps Store webpage is displayed (see below).
- 7) Fill in the Order Details - contact information, mailing address and email address.
- 8) Select the payment method by clicking in the radio button (small round circle) in front of the payment method you want until it becomes a filled blue circle (an example the Credit Card method is selected below).
- 9) Click on the **Next** button.



Cosmic Apps Store

Order Details

**Contact Information**

<p><b>First Name</b>  <input type="text" value="Your"/></p> <p><b>Last Name</b>  <input type="text" value="Name"/></p> <p><b>Company</b>  <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>Phone</b>  <input type="text" value="+61 403 656 222"/></p>	<p><b>Email Address</b>  <input type="text" value="youremail@domain.com"/></p> <p><small>Double check that you've entered your email address correctly. We will send order information to it.</small></p>
--	---

**Mailing Address**

<p><b>Country</b>  <input type="text" value="Australia"/></p> <p><b>Address</b>  <input type="text" value="Your street"/>  <input type="text" value="Your suburb"/></p>	<p><b>City</b>  <input type="text" value="Your City"/></p> <p><b>State / Territory</b>  <input type="text" value="New South Wales"/></p> <p><b>Postal Code</b>  <input type="text" value="3198"/></p>
---	---

Payment Method

 Credit Card

 PayPal Account

 Pay with Amazon

Wire Transfer

Next 

 We use industry-standard encryption to protect the confidentiality of your personal information. This purchase and product fulfillment are through [FastSpring](http://www.fastspring.com), a trusted reseller for <http://www.astrogold.io>

10)The final order page is displayed (see below).

- 11) You can change whose name is on the license by typing it in underneath the name displayed under "License Name".
- 12) If you have a coupon enter it into the Coupon textbox, then click on **Update Coupon**.
- 13) Enter the payment details for the payment method you chose.
- 14) Check all is correct - if it isn't click on the **Make Changes** button if there is one, and make corrections (you can change the report type, order details etc by doing this).
- 15) Click on the **Complete Order** button.



### Cosmic Apps Store

**i** We have estimated your order total as \$336.07 AUD based on recent exchange rates. Your actual payment will be submitted as USD214.50

### License Options

#### License Name

Your Name

### Your Order

Professional Predictive Report

USD 195.00

Subtotal USD 195.00  
GST (10%) USD 19.50  
[Update ABN](#)   
Total USD 214.50

[Make Changes](#) [Update Coupon](#)

### Your Payment

#### Credit Card Details

#### Card Number



#### Card Expiration

Month  / Year

#### Card Security Code

#### Billing Address

- 16) If your purchase is processed successfully a screen similar to the following will be displayed (see below).
- 17) You can click on the **blue link** to automatically register the report in Astro Gold.

Secure Ordering by **FastSpring**

## Cosmic Apps Store

**i** Coupon successfully applied! You saved: \$351.34 AUD / USD 224.25

### Thank You For Your Order

Order ID: **AST240508-5589-90125**

**i** Charges will appear on your bill as:

<b>Professional Predictive Report</b>	<del>USD 195.00</del>	USD 0.00
<b>Subtotal</b>		USD 0.00
<b>GST (0%)</b>		USD 0.00
<b>Total</b>		USD 0.00

### Your Professional Report License

Dear Your Name,

Thank-you for purchasing Professional Predictive Report for use in Astro Gold for macOS!

Please click on the link below, which should automatically open the Astro Gold app and register your report with the details above.

[Click on this link to register this report in Astro Gold](#)

If the above fails to open the app and register your purchase, then you can highlight the line below then use Cmd+C to copy it, and then paste it into the app using the **Paste License** button in the Professional Reports window of Astro Gold.

**com.ajnowledge.astrogold.REPPRE.lic://SG9vcCBBcmt3cmInaHQ=/GAWQE-FCUXW-KBP4G-8BPNP-ASUXY-XGXNN-4HPF3-97R9C-CUANR-UNE9D-CF8PT-4PMDM-MJRMX-2SG6G-H5L8Q-A**

Note that you will also receive a record of these license details in an email, along with instructions on how to use them to register your report in the Astro Gold app, should you need to do it at a later time, on a different computer, or to re-register the report after an app removal and re-installation.

- 18) You will also receive an email at the address you gave, with your license serial number in it. If necessary you can copy and paste that serial number into Astro Gold manually:

- a. Open the email and **copy** the serial number in it.
- b. Open **Professional Reports**.
- c. Click the **Report Type** you have a serial number for.
- d. Click on the **Paste License** button.
- e. **Paste** the serial number into the textbox.

### 7.9.1 Predictive Report

The Predictive Report uses aspect orbs of 1° applying (entering) and 1° separating (leaving).

The aspects used are:

- Conjunction (0°)
- Opposition (180°)
- Trine (120°)
- Square (90°)

## 8 Wheel Editor

The Wheel Editor allows you to modify/create the style and layout of your astrological chart wheel designs. You can edit existing chart wheel designs or create new ones. You can change the style (visual details) of your chart wheels, or their layout by adding/reordering their rings - which amongst other things can contain sign rulers, decans, terms, triplicities and lunar mansions.

And you don't have to worry about making mistakes because Astro Gold's own built-in chart wheel designs always remain available - are fixed and not editable, even by accident. So you will always have those to use no matter what.

If you edit one of AstroGold's built-in chart wheel designs, when you select that wheel design to be used in a chart in the [Viewing Area](#) your changes will be visible.

However if you make edits to a built-in chart wheel design that you later do not want anymore, but then find that you cannot reverse these changes in the Wheel Editor, you are not stuck with these changes. All you need to do is open the Wheel Editor then "delete" that built-in wheel design. Then that built-in wheel design will become available again in the exact layout and style it was in at shipping time. See [deleting Wheels](#) for how to do this.

To proceed with designing your own wheels see:

[Opening the Wheel Editor](#)

[Opening a Wheel Design](#)

[Wheel Rings and Circles](#)

[Saving, creating New & deleting Wheels](#)

### 8.1 Opening the Wheel Editor

**>> You can open the Wheel Editor in the following ways:**

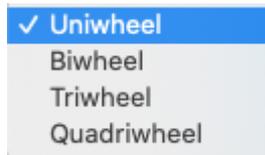
1. On the **View** menu select **Wheel Editor**
2. When a Wheel is displayed in the [Viewing Area](#) right click on a blank area to bring up the context menu
  - a) Select **Wheel Style**
  - b) Down the bottom select **Wheel Editor**
3. When a Dial is displayed in the Viewing Area right click on a blank area to bring up the context menu
  - a) Select **Dial Style**
  - b) Down the bottom select **Wheel Editor**

4. On the **Astro Gold** menu click on **Preferences** (or click on the Preferences icon  in the **Toolbar**)
  - a) In the first column listing the wheel styles, click the **Wheel Editor icon**  next to the column heading "Wheel Style".
    - This will open the Wheel Editor.

## 8.2 Opening a Wheel Design

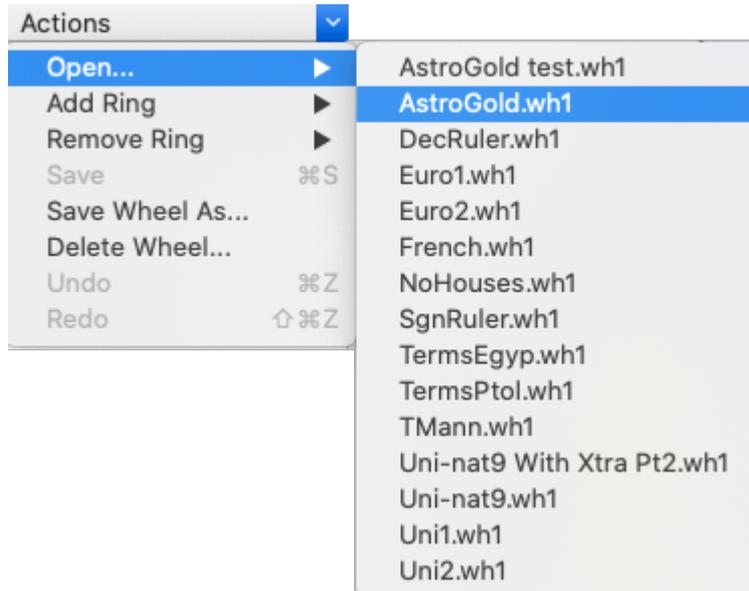
### >> Opening a Wheel Design to edit or copy it

1. Once the [Wheel Editor is opened](#) the first thing to do is to specify what kind of *wheel design* you want to open. To do this dropdown the **Type** menu, which is at the top left of the Editor, and select the number of charts (from 1 to 4) the wheel design is capable of displaying by choosing from one of the following options in the menu: uni=1, bi=2, tri=3, quadri=4 charts.

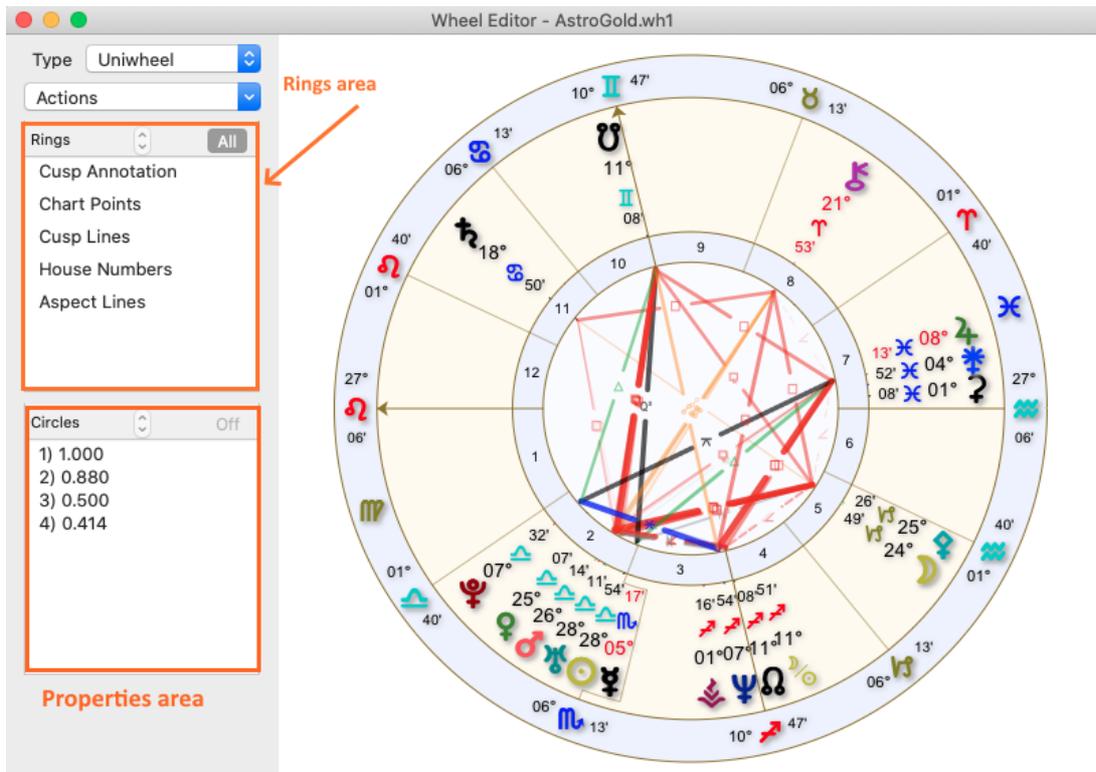


You can edit an existing wheel design, and save the changes you make ... or optionally save these changes as a new wheel design. Either way, the first step is to open an existing wheel file which will load the wheel design it contains into the Wheel Editor.

2. Click on **Actions**, and a menu will drop down.
  - a) Select **Open** and a list of all existing chart wheels will be displayed (of the type selected in step 1).



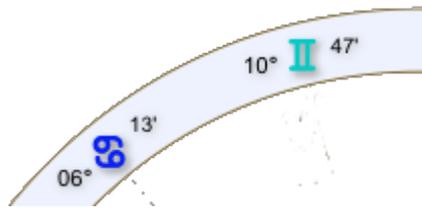
- b) Select a chart wheel file, which will open that wheel design and display it in the Wheel Editor (as shown below)



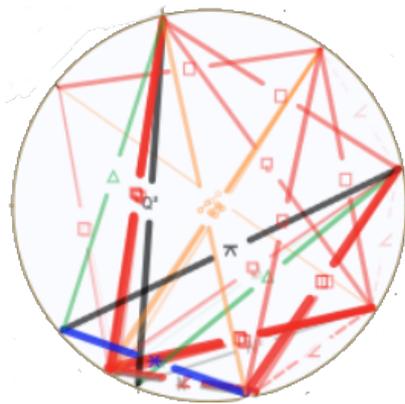
## 8.3 Wheel Rings and Circles

### Rings

An astrological wheel is simply made up of a variable number of rings. A ring is a band of space between two concentric circles, in which information can be displayed. A section of a typical astrological wheel ring is shown below. The information this ring is displaying is "Cusp Annotation".



The only exception to this is the ring that graphically displays the chart's aspects. This ring is always positioned in the very center of the wheel (is the innermost ring) and therefore is able to be fully defined by a single circle rather than two - thus the single circle that defines this ring is always the last and innermost circle. The information this ring displays is "Aspect Lines".



When you first open a wheel design file (has **.wh\*** extension type) in the Wheel Editor, all the rings that make up the wheel are shown (along with their contents) in the wheel displayed in the Wheel Editor.

*Additionally*, as shown in the [Wheel Editor](#) graphic, there is:

- an area on the left of the displayed wheel called the Rings area - with the title "Rings" - displaying the name of each of the wheel's rings.
- below the Rings area a Properties area - initially titled "Circles" - is in the bottom left of the window.

## Circles

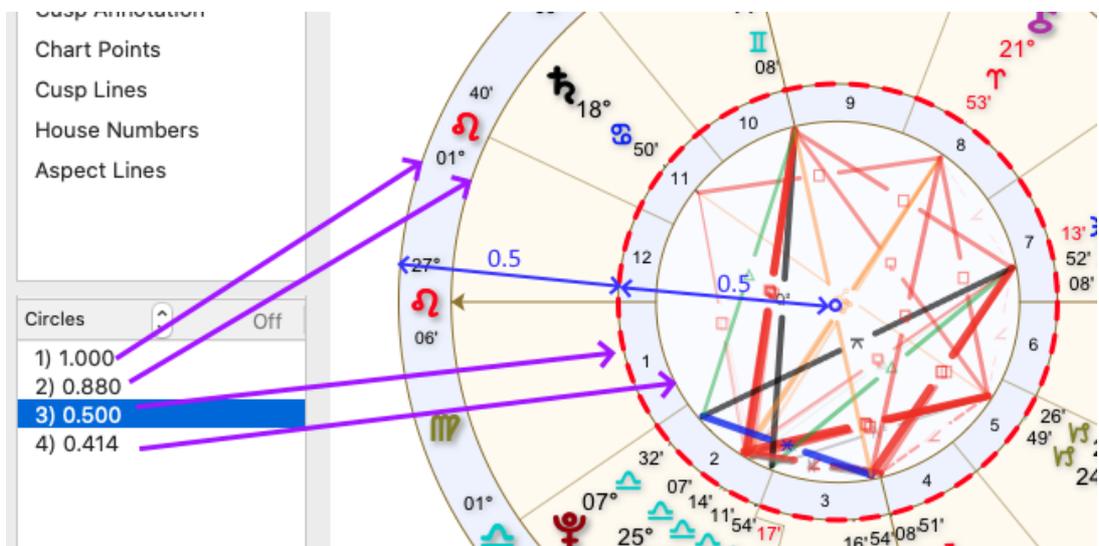
The Properties area shows the "proportionate radius" of each circle in the wheel, relative to a radius of 1.0 - which is always the (symbolic) radius of the first and outermost circle used to build the wheel. If this information isn't showing click on the **All** button in the Rings area.

So the first circle is the outermost circle with a radius value of 1.0, and the second circle is the second to outermost circle etc.

To illustrate the circles more you can highlight them. You can click on each circle in the *Properties* area, and when you do, that circle in the wheel will be highlighted in a bold dashed red circle.

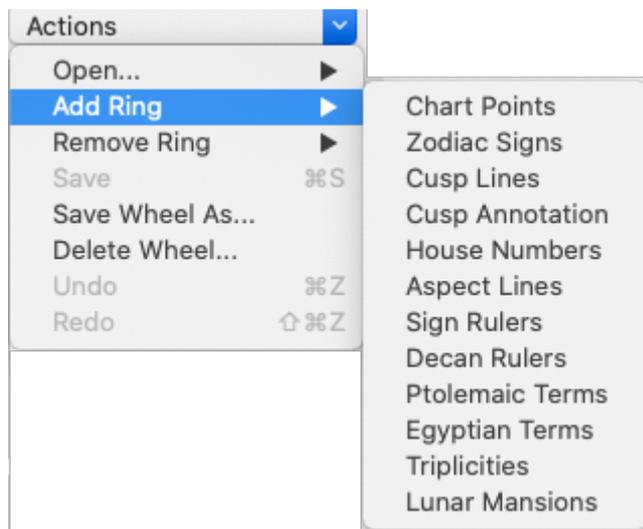
Below, circle 3 in the Properties list is highlighted, and it represents the ring 3rd in from the outermost ring (which is always circle number 1). Therefore correspondingly in the wheel the 3rd circle in from the outermost circle is also highlighted. To remove the bold dashed red highlighting round the circle in the wheel click on the **Off** button in the top right of the Properties area.

Circle 3 has a radius of 0.5. What that means is that the third circle is exactly half way between the very center of the wheel and the first outermost circle (0.5 is half of 1.0).



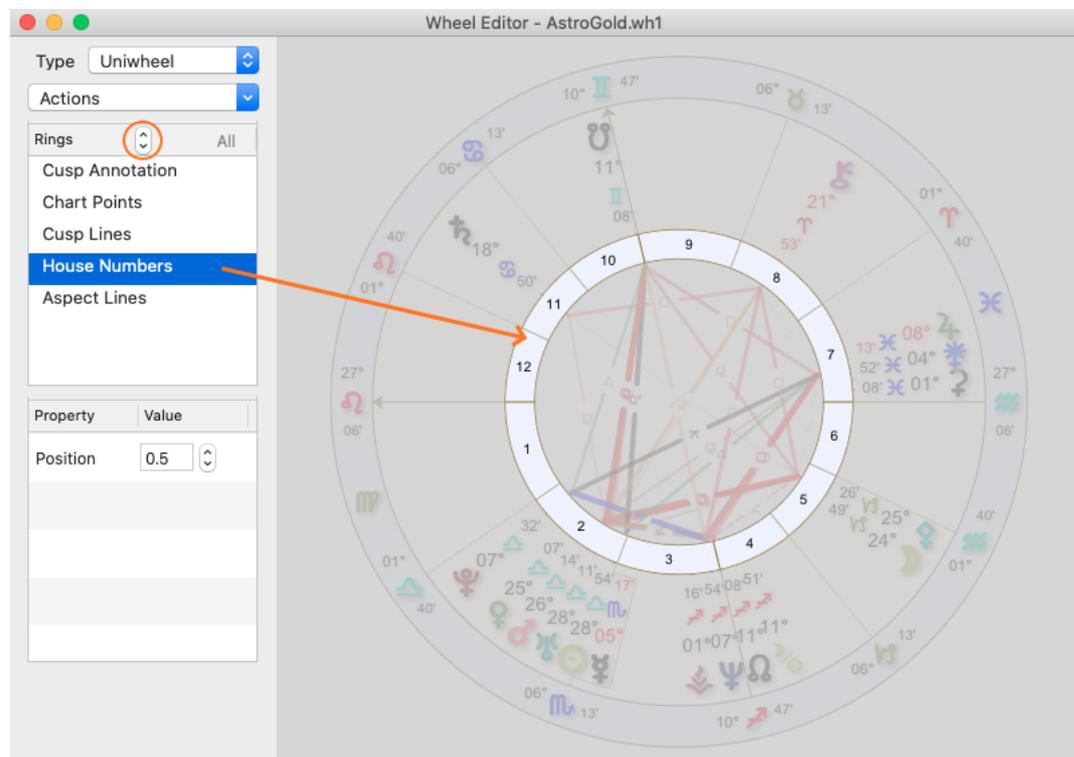
### >> How to Add and Remove rings in a wheel

1. Click on **Actions** and a menu will dropdown
2. Depending on what you want to do, click on **Add Ring** or **Remove Ring**
3. Click on the ring you want to add or remove



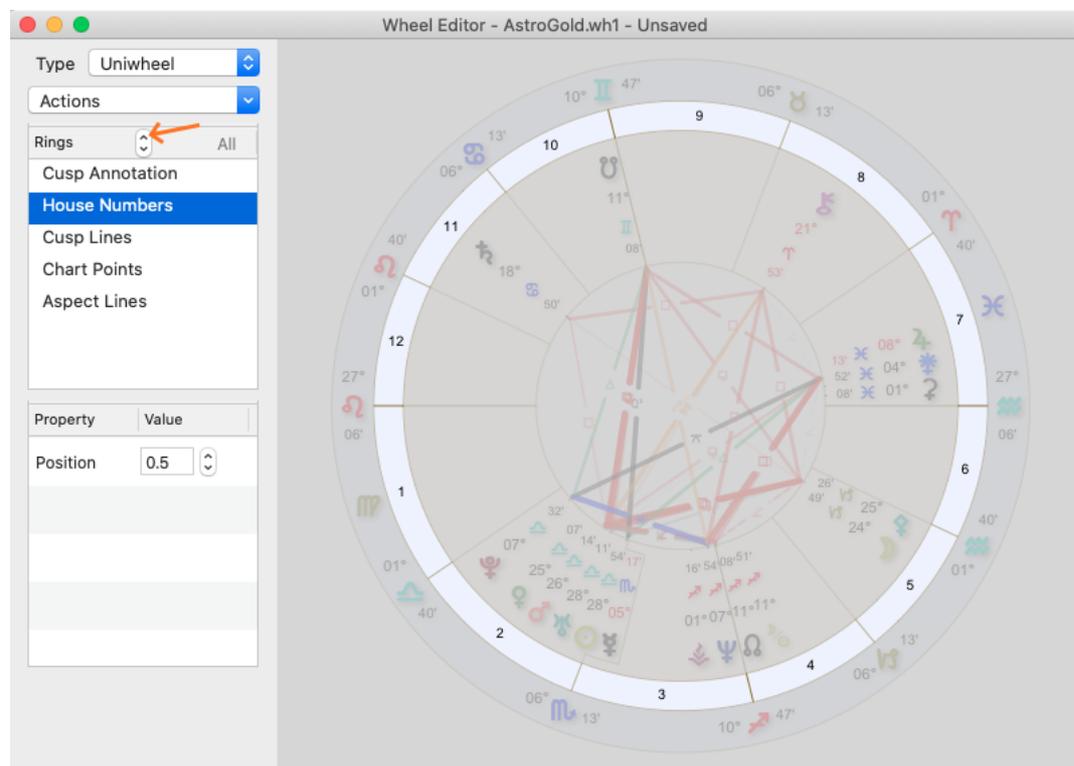
### >> How to see where each ring is displayed in the wheel

1. Click on a ring in the Rings area and all other rings in the displayed wheel will be shaded so the ring you clicked on stands out.
2. As you click on each ring in the Rings area it will become clear what that ring looks like in the wheel. In the graphic below "House Numbers" is clicked and that is what stands out in the displayed wheel.



## >> How to alter the Layout (order) of the Rings in a wheel

1. Click on a ring in the Rings area, e.g. in the above graphic "House Numbers" is clicked.
2. Click on either the **up arrow** or the **down arrow** in the arrow control  to the right of the Rings title in the Rings area (**circled in orange** in the graphic above, **pointed to** by an **orange arrow** in the graphic below). This will move the ring up or down in the order of rings, either closer to the outside or closer to the inside of the wheel. The exception to this is the Aspect Lines ring, which always is the innermost ring in any chart.
3. In the graphic above, if the **up arrow** in the arrow control was clicked once, the highlighted ring (House Numbers) would move outwards in the wheel, with a now changed order within all the wheel rings, as shown below.



## >> Changing the size of Rings in a wheel

1. Click on the **All** button in the **Rings** area to display the circles in the Properties area.
2. *Decide* which ring you want to change the size of.

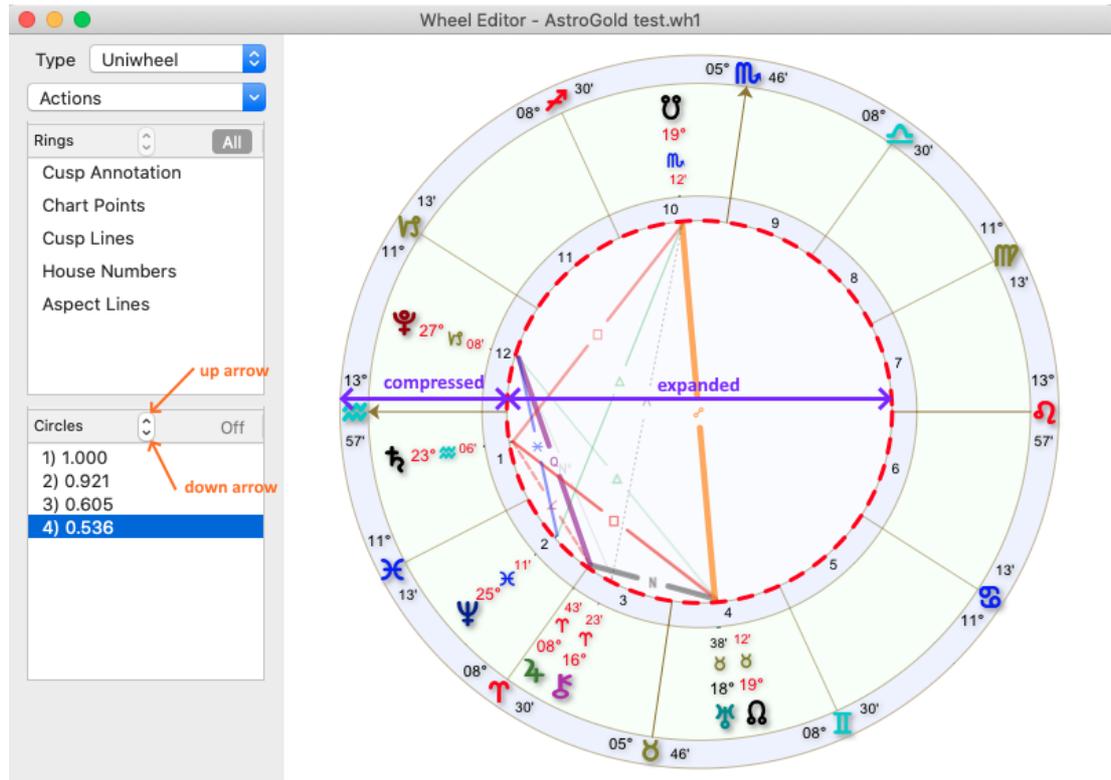
### In the Properties area

3. *Identify* the circle(s) that define the ring. That is, the circles that create the outer and inner borders of the ring. You can click on any circle which will highlight where it is in the wheel, and thus see which ring it is a part of.

4. *Decide* how you want to change the size of the ring:
  - a) By making its outer circle larger or smaller => click on the **outer** circle of the ring.
  - b) By making its inner circle larger or smaller => click on the **inner** circle of the ring.
5. Click on either the **up arrow** or the **down arrow** in the arrow control  to the right of the Circles title.
  - a) Clicking on the up arrow will make the circle larger - and as you do you'll see the radius of the circle increase.
    - i. If this is the *outer* circle of the ring you are changing it will *increase* the size of the ring (while simultaneously decreasing the size of any ring outside it)
    - ii. If this is the *inner* circle of the ring you are changing it will *decrease* the ring size (while simultaneously increasing the size of any ring inside it)
  - b) Clicking on the down arrow will make the circle smaller - and as you do you'll see the radius of the circle decrease.
    - i. If this is the *outer* circle of the ring you are changing it will *decrease* the ring size (while simultaneously increasing the size of any ring outside it)
    - ii. If this is the *inner* circle of the ring you are changing it will *increase* the ring size (while simultaneously decreasing the size of any ring inside it)

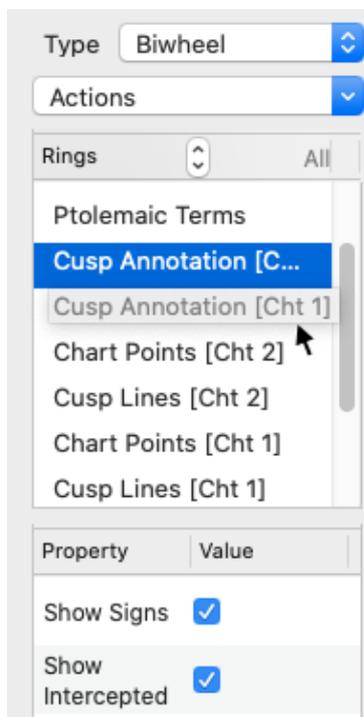
Below is an example of one possible change that could be made to the AstroGold uniwheel design - enlarging the area for aspect lines. The procedure for doing this was:

1. Click on **Circle 2**, then click repeatedly on the up arrow until the "Chart Annotation" ring is narrowed as much as possible while still leaving room for the glyphs.
  2. Click on **Circle 3**, then click repeatedly on the up arrow until the "Chart Points" ring is narrowed as much as possible while still leaving room for the glyphs, degrees and minutes.
  3. Click on **Circle 4**, then click repeatedly on the up arrow until the "House Numbers" ring is narrowed as much as possible while still leaving room for the numbers.
- The ring that Circle 4 (highlighted below) is the outer circle of (in other words the innermost ring - "Aspect Lines"), will have a much greater area available for itself.



## >> Changing the properties of Rings in a wheel

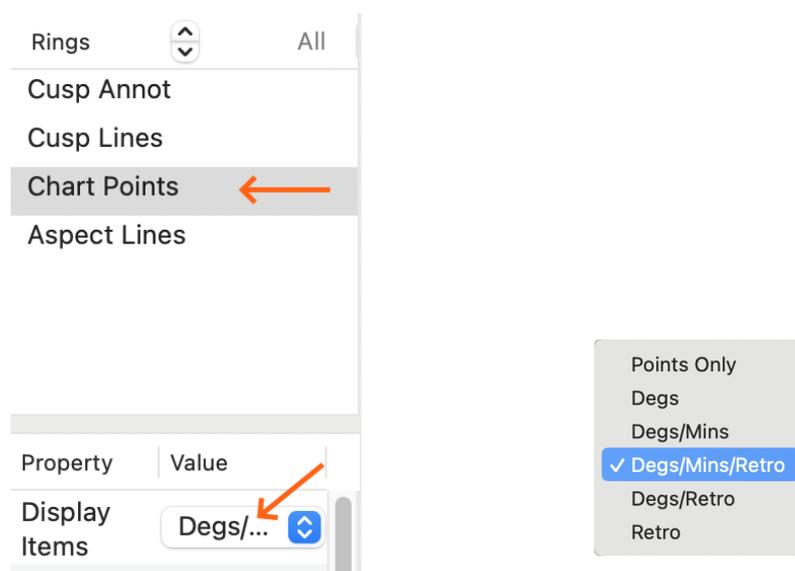
1. In the Rings area **click on the ring** you want to set properties for. This will highlight the ring in the wheel, and display the properties for the ring in the Properties area.
2. Most of the properties are self explanatory. When changing the property value you can immediately see the effect of the change in the displayed wheel.
3. In the Rings area if you cannot see the full ring description hover the mouse over the ring and within a few seconds the description will be displayed in a tool tip.



### Retrograde Symbols

To get the retrograde symbol  $E_{\text{q}}$  to appear in the chart:

- 1) In the Rings area, in the list click on **Chart Points**.
- 2) In the Properties area, click on the dropdown list in the Value column, to the right of the "Display Items" property
- 3) Select **Degs/Mins/retro**.



**NOTE:** You will need to do this for every ring that contains chart points that you want to display the retrograde symbol in.

For example, for a biWheel, in the Rings area you'll need to select Chart Points (Cht 1) and edit its Display Items property, then also select Chart Points (Cht 2) and edit *its* Display Items property, etc.

### >> Undoing or Redoing your changes

1. Click on **Actions**.
2. To *undo* your last change click on **Undo** (or press ⌘Z anytime)
3. To redo the last change you undid, click on **Redo** (or press ⌘Z anytime)

## 8.4 Saving, creating New & deleting Wheels

In the Wheel Editor ...

### >> Saving your changes

1. Click on **Actions**.
  2. Click on **Save**.
- OR just press ⌘S

### >> Creating a new Wheel Design

1. Click on **Actions**.
2. Click on **Save Wheel As**.
3. Enter a **name** for the new wheel.
4. Click on the **Save As** button in the bottom right.

This is how to copy an existing wheel after changing it first, or without changing it at all - either way you take an existing wheel design and save it as a new wheel design.

### >> Deleting a Wheel Design

1. Click on **Actions**.
2. Click on **Delete Wheel**.
3. Click on the wheel you want to delete.
4. Click on the **Delete** button in the bottom right.

## 9 Preferences



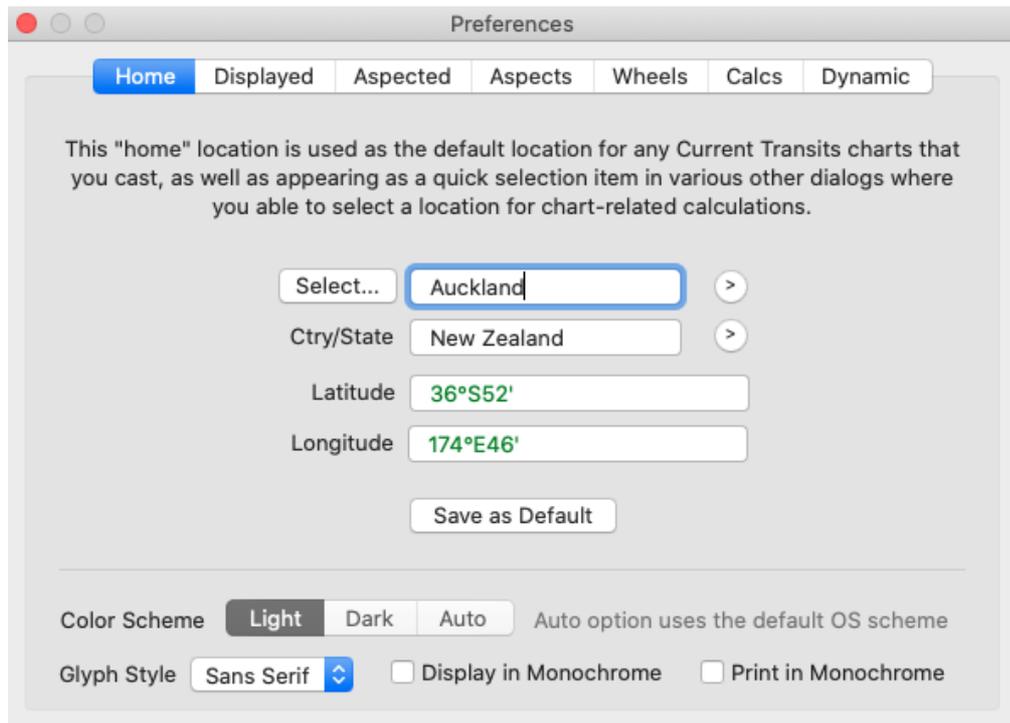
Click on the **Preferences** icon  in the Toolbar, or in the **Astro Gold** menu click on **Preferences**, to open the "Preferences" dialog box.

There you will see tabs for the different settings you can change according to your preferences.

### 9.1 Home (location)

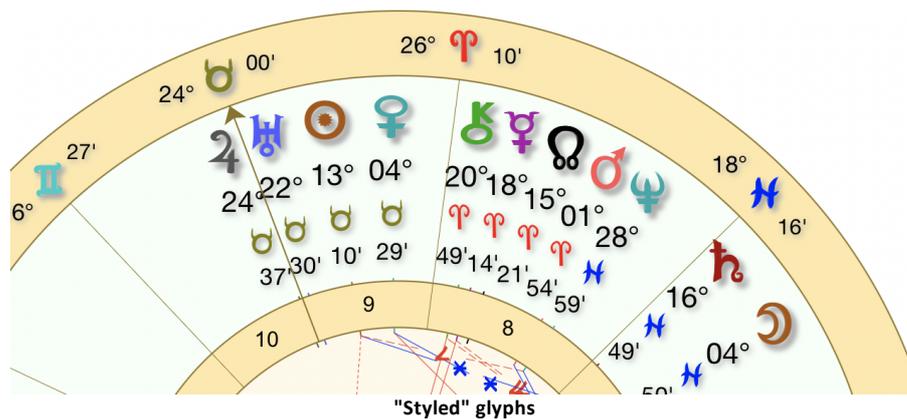
The location entered here is the one used as the basis for any "*Here and Now*" transits charts that are created, as well as the default location for various other types of charts, and generally you would enter your home location details.

1. Entering the Ctry/State and Place is the same here as it is when creating or editing a chart - just type in the fields, and if it can find that Location in the Atlas Astro Gold will automatically update the Latitude and Longitude.
2. You can also click on the  icon at the right of either field which opens the "Select Atlas Entry" dialog box. In this dialog you can select a country/state or place off a list, or alternatively search for what you want, by typing a full or partial country name into the Search field, for example "Aust" would jump to Australia, Austria etc. See [here](#) for details and illustrations on how to do this.
3. Once you have entered the location click on **Save As Default** to be able to use this location everywhere a chart defaults to Home.



Preferences Dialog box

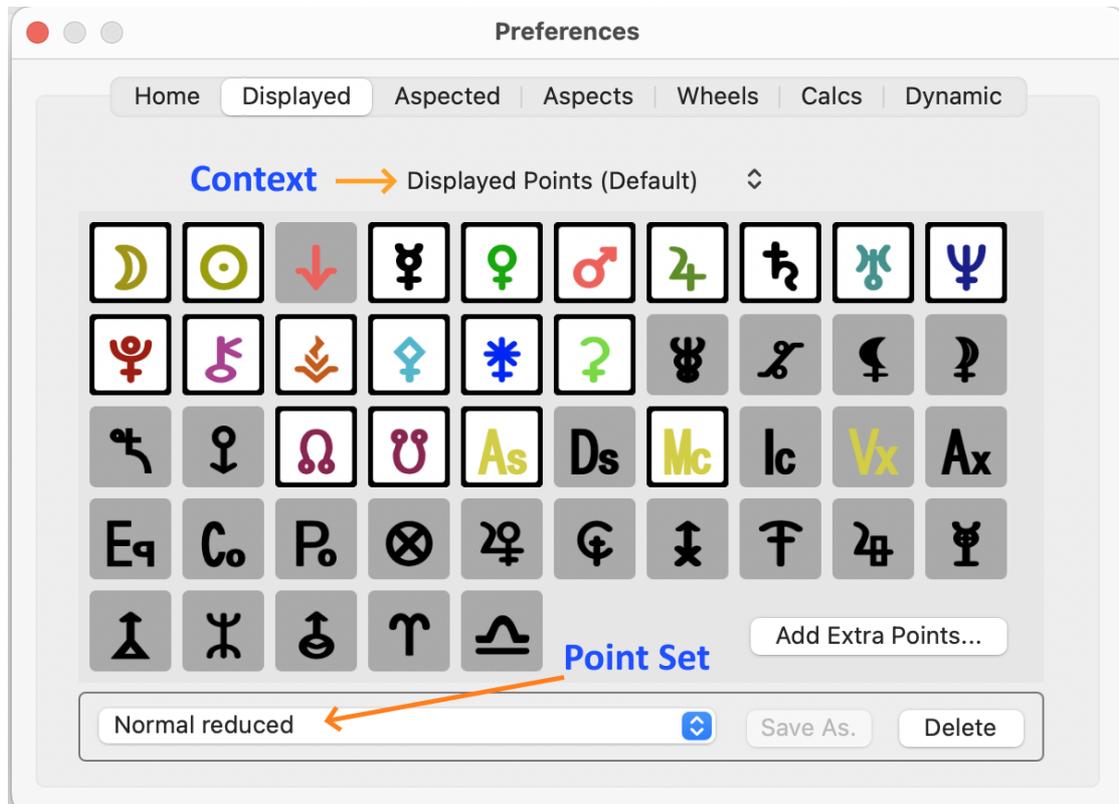
4. You can select the app background color scheme - Light, Dark or Auto. It is Light by default. See [here](#) for more info
5. You can also choose the style of chart glyphs - the default is *Sans Serif*, but by clicking on the "Glyph Style" **dropdown box** that can be changed to *Styled*



6. View/Print in Monochrome ... monochrome means in "black and white".

## 9.2 Displayed Points

Displayed (chart points) is where the chart points can be selected for showing in charts and reports. Continuously clicking on each point turns it alternately off (darker) or on (lighter). The Lilith available is the Black Moon Lilith (see [Calculation Methods](#)).



Preferences - Displayed Points

### Main Points

You can view the glyphs for the main points available for selection directly in the Preferences window. If you hover the mouse over each glyph its name will pop up.

These main points are, in order, from left to right, starting at the top row:

Moon	Sun	Vulcan (hypothetical)	Mercury	Venus	Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus	Neptune
<b>Pluto</b> (planet/dwarf planet)	<b>Chiron</b> (asteroid/comet)	Vesta (asteroid)	Pallas (asteroid)	Juno (asteroid)	Ceres (asteroid)	Hygeia (asteroid)	Astraea (asteroid)	Black Moon Lilith	White Moon
Sedna (asteroid)	Eris (dwarf planet)	<b>Lunar North Node</b>	<b>Lunar South Node</b>	<b>Ascendant</b>	<b>Descendant</b>	<b>Midheaven</b>	<b>Imum Coeli</b>	Vertex	Equatorial Ascendant
CoAscendant	Polar Ascendant	Part of Fortune	Cupido (hypothetical)	Hades (hypothetical)	Zeus (hypothetical)	Kronus (hypothetical)	Apollon (hypothetical)	Admetos (hypothetical)	Vulcanus (hypothetical)
Poseidon (hypothetical)	TransPluto (hypothetical)	Aries Point	Libra Point						

**NOTE:** Hypothetical planets (except Vulcan) are also called TransNeptunian planets and are used in Uranian astrology. Additional dwarf planets and asteroids can be selected via [Extra Points](#).

## Contexts

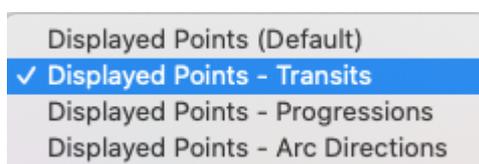
Displayed points are used in several different situations or contexts.

The main contexts are:

- Default - for Natal charts (and all other charts not falling into the categories below eg. Return charts)
- Transits - for Transit charts and dynamic Transits
- Progressions
- Arc Directions

For each one of these contexts a pre-saved set of displayed points (Point Set - see below) can be specified to always be used in that context.

To choose the context click on the dropdown icon  to the right of the Context Title, situated above the points. When you do this a dropdown menu will be displayed with the above four options listed, with a tick next to the currently selected context.



## Follow Default

When any of the specialist Contexts (i.e. Transits, Progressions, Arc Directions) is selected a checkbox labelled "Follow Default" appears to the right of the Context dropdown icon.

- If this is ticked when a *specialist context* is selected it means that the Displayed Points for that context will be temporarily copied from those of the default Displayed Points (the first item on the list).
- When it is subsequently unticked the Displayed Points for that specialist context will revert back to what they were originally for that specialist context.

## Point Sets

Points currently turned on in the "Displayed" window can be saved as a "Point Set" for instant retrieval in the future. You do this by clicking on the **Save As** button and giving the Point Set a name that describes that set of points. If the "Save As" button is greyed out, it means the displayed points currently turned on are already saved as a set.

Once that is done the Point Set will appear in the in the **list** of "Point Sets" at the bottom of the dialog screen. When this list is dropped down, the full list is displayed, and you can then re-choose that (or any other Point Set) by clicking on its name in this list.

To delete any Point Set you have saved, select it in that list first (which will first change the currently selected "Displayed Points" to those of that Point Set) then click on the **Delete** button. This will delete the Point Set from the list, but the selection of points it contained, and now displayed on the screen, will stay exactly as it is - that is, the points that are turned on are now the the currently active "Displayed Points" for the Context selected.

You can also see in the screenshot above, that the specified Point Set to display for contexts where transits are involved, either in a chart or listing, is the Point Set called "Outers/Slow", consisting of Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto, Chiron and the lunar Nodes.

So for each context (Default/Transits/Progressions/Arc Directions), when that context is selected, you can change what points will be displayed in that context (unless manually overridden - see below) by changing the Point Set at the bottom of the dialog box.

Astro Gold comes supplied with five Sets of pre-saved Displayed Points:

- Inners/Fast
- Outers/Slow
- Planets & Asteroids (+Nod/Asc/MC)
- Planets & Chiron (+Nod/Asc/MC)
- Transits

Finally, whenever you want you can always bypass the Point Set specified for a Context, by manually turning individual points on or off (continuously clicking on them toggles them on/off), and the changes will be immediately reflected in any displayed chart or data for that context, regardless of whether you save these displayed points as a new Point Set or not.

When you do this, the Point Set textbox at the bottom will be blank (unless the points you have manually turned on happen to have been previously saved as a Set).

### Extra Points

For any of the Contexts, not only can you specify what Point Set you want to be displayed, you can also hand pick extra points to also be included as well.

The types of extra points that can be used are:

- Midpoints
- Minor bodies e.g. Centaurs, Dwarf planets and Asteroids.

The Jessica Adams Roman asteroids available

Aesculapia	
Apollo	
Bacchus	
Ceres	
Chiron	
Cupido	
Diana	
Fortuna	
Hygeia	
Juno	
Minerva	
Ops	
Panacea	
Proserpina	
Psyche	
Salacia	
Vesta	
Vulcano	

Jessica Adams Roman asteroids

ALL asteroids available (includes the Jessica Adams asteroids)

Pt	Name	Number
	Abundantia	151
	Aesculapia	1027
	Albion	15760
	America	916
	Apollo	1862
	Apophis	99942
	Arachne	407
	Asbolus	8405
	Bacchus	2063
	Chaos	19521
	Chariklo	10199
	Circe	34
	Cupido	763
	Diana	78
	Echo	60
	Eros	433
	Fortuna	19
	Gonggong	225088
	Haumea	136108
	Hekate	100
	Hephaistos	2212
	Heracles	5143
	Hermes	69230
	Icarus	1566
	Isis	42
	Ixion	28978
	Leleakuhonua	541132
	Lilith*	1181
	Lucifer	1930
	Makemake	136472
	Minerva	93
	Nemesis	128
	Nessus	7066
	Ops	2736
	Orcus	90482
	Pan	4450
	Panacea	2878
	Pandora	55
	Persephone	399
	Pholus	5145
	Proserpina	26
	Psyche	16

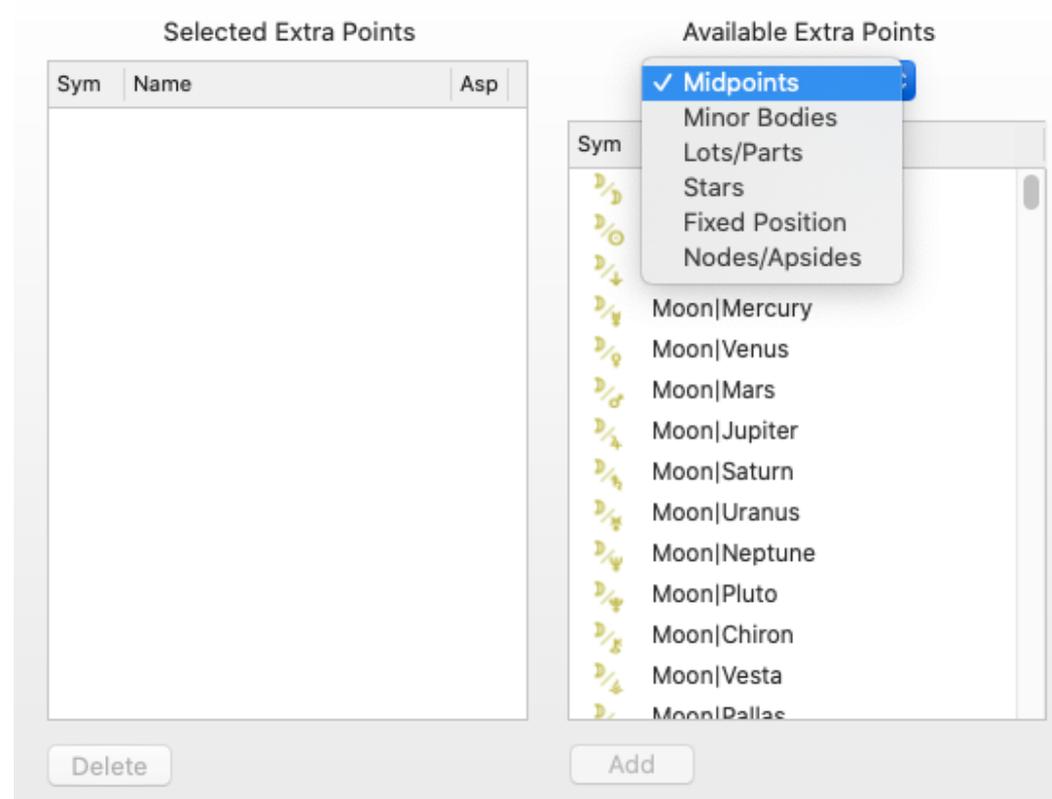
**NOTE:**

- a) The Dwarf planets are Ceres, Pluto, Haumea, Makemake, and Eris.
- b) If you have downloaded the available [additional minor points](#), then as well you will be able to choose from an extra 71 Asteroids (Martha Lang Westcott's) and 42 Centaurs & Dwarf Planets (Zane Stein's).

- Arabic lots/parts
- Stars
- Fixed Zodiacal points
- Planetary Nodes / Apsides (planet distance from Earth or the Sun) - annotated with the planet glyph and ♁/♂ or a P / A superscript.

**>> To select Extra Points to be displayed**

1. Click on the **Add Extra Points** button. The following window is displayed.



2. In the field just under "Available Extra Points" on the top right of the window, click on the  to the right of the field so its dropdown list is displayed (like in the above picture).
3. Select which **type** of Extra Points to display in the "Available Extra Points" list.

4. Click on an **extra point** you would like include for the selected Context, then click on the **Add** button. (Alternatively you can just double-click on the extra point and it will be added straight away).
5. To remove an extra point from the list of "Selected Extra Points" click on the **extra point** in that list, then click on the **Delete** button.
6. Finally, for each point in the list of "Selected Extra Points", if you want it also to receive aspects, click the checkbox to its right in the column titled **Asp** until there is a tick in it. If you don't want it to receive aspects click in the checkbox until there is **no tick** in it.
7. When you are finished with this window, press the **ESC** key on the keyboard. This will return you to the Preferences window.
8. You will now need to save this Point Set (which now includes the Extra Points you have selected). Click on the **Save As** button, enter a name for the Point Set, then click on the **OK** button.

Some of the minor bodies are known as [Dwarf Planets](#).

### 9.2.1 Dwarf Planets

In recent years humanity's knowledge of the universe has grown exponentially as we discovered that our Solar System went out much, much further than just the orbits of Neptune and Pluto. For astrologers, this has meant that a great number of additional bodies have been added to their toolbox, and arguably the most important of these are those that have joined Pluto in the classification "Dwarf Planets".

There are at least seven of these Dwarf Planets that have been named so far, all discovered by Michael Brown, and users of Astro Gold can look at them in charts. Here are the names of these seven and a brief description of each:

**Eris** (access in Main Points)

Named after the Greek goddess of strife and discord. She describes issues of quarrels, rivals, revenge, and jealousy; but also, the more positive qualities of energy, resourcefulness, and the desire to work for self-improvement.

**Haumea** (access in Main Points)

Hawaiian goddess of fertility & childbirth, mother of fire goddess Pele. Unity of opposites; seeking the larger order in apparent randomness; the drive towards ultimate peace and harmony; feminine healing and creative energy.

**Ixion** (access in Extra Bodies)

Grandfather to most of the Centaurs. The transgressor, rule breaker, going beyond social morality of the moment; rage against God; the refusal to accept limitations on your goals.

**Makemake** (access in Extra Bodies)

Creation god from the people of Easter Island. Doing something for one's 'tribe', or because of the connection; narrowness of focus which makes one thorough, but it can be at the expense of other areas.

**Quaoar** (access in Extra Bodies)

Creation god of the Tongva people. The creation of a new system without precedent; being creative in making new rules, building new structures, rather than simply following what already exists.

**Sedna** (access in Extra Bodies)

Named after the Inuit goddess of the sea who resides in the Arctic underworld and rules over all marine life. Where you have the potential to feel powerless; and yet, she also shows you where you can overcome these feelings and play your part in taking care of the planet and humanity.

**Varuna** (access in Extra Bodies)

Hindu god of the oceans. Reverence for a higher power; what one wants forever to be remembered for one's legacy; urge for law and order that is more perfect than humanity's version.

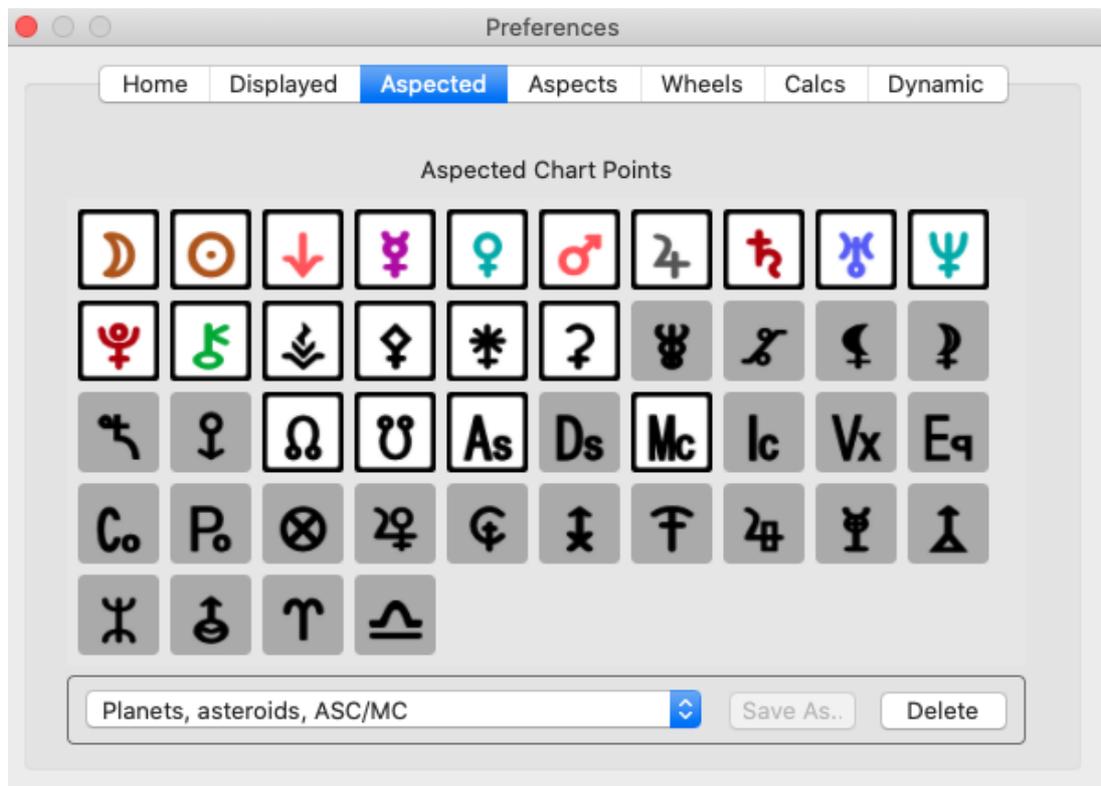
*Source:* Zane B. Stein

### 9.3 Aspected Points

Aspected (chart points) allows the selection of which chart points have aspect lines shown in the central circle of a wheel, as well as whether or not they appear in aspect reports. Clicking on each point turns it off (darker) or on (lighter).

All the points currently turned on can be saved as one Set, that you can quickly retrieve for use at a later time, by clicking on the **Save As** button and giving the Set a name that describes that set of points. Once that is done the Set will appear in the list at the bottom of the dialog screen. When you click in that **list** of Sets of "Aspected Chart Points" at the bottom of the dialog screen, the full list is displayed, and you can then re-choose that (or any other Set) by clicking on it's name in this list.

To delete any Set you have saved, select it in that list first (which will first change the currently selected "Aspected Chart Points" to those of that Set) then click on the **Delete** button. This will delete the Set from the list, but the selection of aspected points it contained, and now displayed in the window, will stay exactly as it is - that is the points that are turned on are now the active "Aspected Chart Points" for all charts.



Preferences - Aspected Points

Astro Gold comes supplied with 2 pre-created sets of "Aspected Chart Points" - "No Angles" and "All". However in the above picture a new set has been created and saved called "Planets, asteroids, ASC/MC".

Of course, as mentioned at the very beginning, regardless of what set is current, whenever you want you can always manually change the current "Aspected Chart Points" by turning individual points on or off (continuously clicking on them toggles them on/off), and the changes will be immediately reflected in any displayed chart or data, regardless of whether you save these aspected points as a new Set or not.

## 9.4 Aspects

Astro Gold is supplied with 13 different groupings of aspects, which are called "Aspect Sets". Each different groupings of aspects, i.e. each "Aspect Set", can be comprised of a different collection of aspects to that of any other "Aspect Set".

However all the aspects of an "Aspect Set" must comprise aspects of only a certain aspect "Type". The aspect "Type" determines how the orbs of the aspects (and sometimes the aspect itself) are applied. So as well as the different aspects contained in an "Aspect Set", the particular "Type" that the aspects of the Set all are also contributes to distinguishing an "Aspect Set" from others at a fundamental level.

There are 7 different aspect "Types":

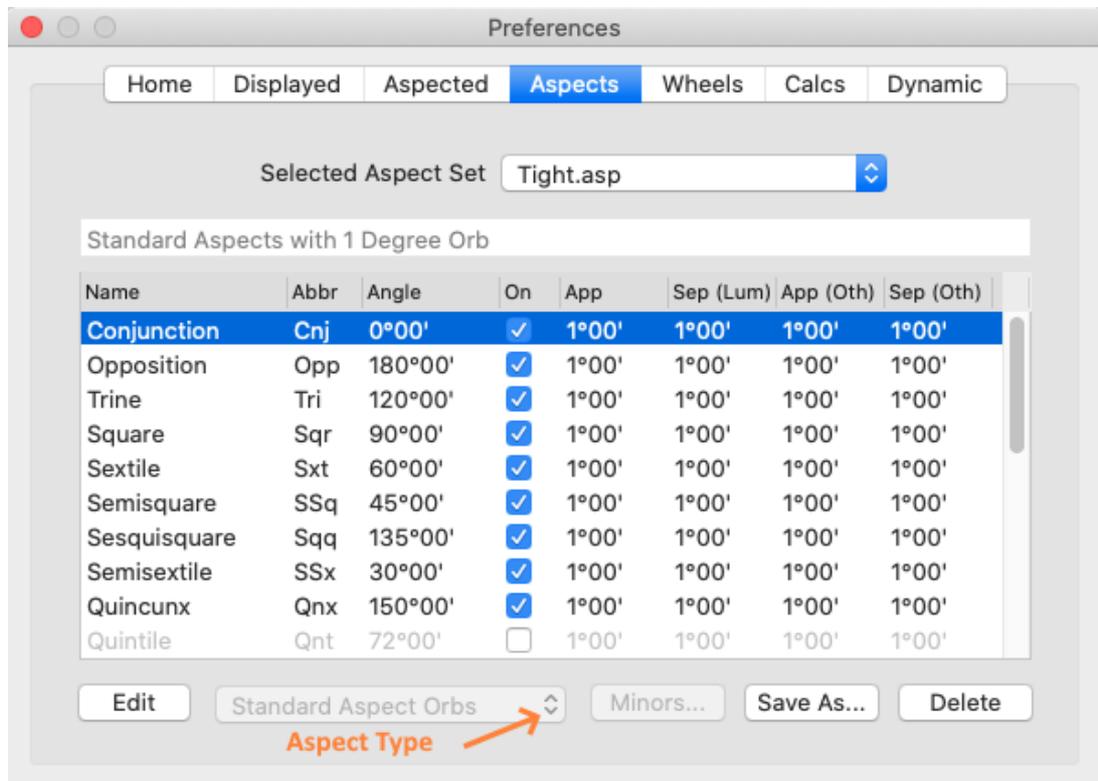
- "Standard Aspect Orbs" - orbs are determined on a per aspect basis

- "Standard + By Sign" - as above but any aspect which is not in aspect "by sign" is excluded.
- "Orb Ratios (Huber)" - orbs are determined according to the Huber method on both a per aspect basis, as well as on a per-planet basis.  
The planetary orb ratios are set as follows: Moon/Sun = 1, Mercury/Venus/Jupiter = 7/9, Mars, Saturn = 6/9, Uranus/Neptune/Pluto = 5/9, All Others = 1/2.
- "Orb Ratios + By Sign" - as above but any aspect which is not in aspect "by sign" is excluded.
- "Moieties (Al Biruni)" - orbs are determined according to Al Biruni on both a per aspect basis, as well as on a per-planet basis.  
The planetary orb ratios are set as follows: Sun = 1, Moon = 6/8.5, Mercury/Venus/Mars = 3.5/8.5, Jupiter/Saturn = 4.5/8.5, Uranus/Neptune/Pluto = 5/8.5, Nodes = 1/8.5, Others = 3/8.5.
- "Moieties + By Sign" - as above but any aspect which is not in aspect "by sign" is excluded.
- "By Sign Only" - any aspect which is not in aspect "by sign" is excluded. Any aspect which is in aspect by sign is included, regardless of orb.

Each aspect within any "Aspect Set" can have fine-grained orb settings just for that particular aspect in that "Aspect Set". So all in all, you can configure the different "Aspect Sets" for a great variety of different purposes. You can also create your own customized "Aspect Sets" (see below).

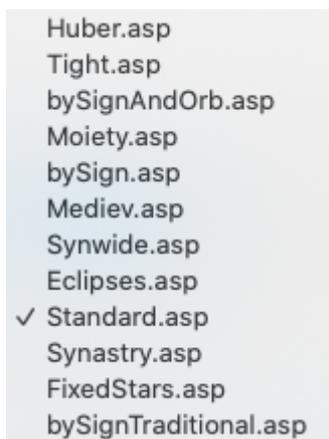
See [here](#) for more info on the "Aspect Sets" that ship with Astro Gold.

>> To select an Aspect Set to use



Preferences - Aspects

1. Click in the **Selected Aspect Set** list (see above), which will drop the list down to display all the "Aspect Sets" available (see below). Click on an "Aspect Set" and it will become the active Set used from that point on in Astro Gold for all charts and data.



>> To edit the Aspect Set Name and Type, and add/remove Minor aspects

1. Continuously clicking on the **Edit** button toggles the ability to do this on or off.

- When editing mode is on, you can edit the "Aspect Set" description in the textbox below "Selected Aspect Set".
- To select the aspect "Type" for the "Aspect Set", click in the **Type** list and the list will drop down (see below), and you can select the aspect Type you want from the list.



- To add or remove Minor aspects to the aspects list click on the **Minors** button, and a list of minor aspects will drop down, from which you can add or remove any of them.

These are the minor aspects with their degrees, and their letter glyphs when displayed in Astro Gold.

Minor Aspect	Degrees	Glyph
Quindecile	165	q
GoldenRatio	137.50	G
Squine	105	I
Squile	75	L
Semioctile	22.5	O
Seminovile	20	n
Vigintile	18	V
Semiduodecile	15	d

### >> To save a copy of the Aspect Set

- Click on the **Save As** button.
- Enter a new file name and click on the **Save** button. At any point you can further edit the aspects and type of this "Aspect Set".

### >> To delete the Aspect Set

- Click on the **Delete** button. This will delete the currently displayed "Aspect Set".

### >> Editing the Orbs of an Aspect Set, and also turning an aspect On or Off

- Each aspect's **orbs** can be edited **in place** at any time.

- Each aspect has its own individual orb. But if required it can have two orbs - one each for either of the two major kinds of aspected point - Luminary or Other ("Luminary" is the Sun or Moon, "other" is all the rest - Mercury, Venus, Mars etc.)

Which (if required) can lead to these two different orbs for a Luminary or an Other aspected point ... being further divided again into different orbs for when the aspect is applying and for when it is separating.

So for any single aspect it is possible to vary its orbs to accommodate four possible situations in which it may occur:

*Applying OR Separating:* to a "Luminary" aspected point (2 different orbs)

AND

*Applying OR Separating:* to an "Other" aspected point (2 different orbs)

- Additionally for each "Aspect Set" each individual aspect within the Set can be manually switched on or off, by repeatedly clicking in the **On** column, without losing it's orb settings.

### 9.4.1 Aspect Set Descriptions

When a Chart is displayed a pre-defined or temporary set of aspects is always used as part of the display. AstroGold comes with many pre-defined Aspect Sets, although only one can be in use at any one time.

#### >> To see which Aspect Set is currently in use...

1. Click the **Preferences** icon in the Toolbar
2. Click on **Aspects** - this will display the "Aspect Set" tab, with the currently selected Aspect Set displayed.

### Aspect Set Descriptions (as per factory settings)

#### Huber

In the Huber system of drawing an astrology chart, "the aspects form a complete pattern that represents the structure of the individual consciousness. This includes a central life motivation ... this is the deepest level in man and barely, if at all, accessible to the unaware, even though the whole life is governed by this motivating life energy".

The Huber style of chart drawing draws in aspect lines using three basic colors. Red is for dynamic aspects, blue for calm aspects, and green for learning aspects. Or to loosely compare to the modalities of signs: cardinal, fixed and mutable.

- Conjunction, Opposition, Square = red
- Trine, Sextile = blue
- Quincunx, Semisextile = green

#### *Aspect Patterns*

The Huber system utilizes aspect patterns called "learning triangles". These are made up of three points and/or groupings of points, where the sides of the resulting triangle (aspect figure) are made up of one red, one blue and one green line. Moving clockwise around the triangle, the order in which the colored aspect lines are arranged is also significant, red-green-blue being seen as more favorable than for example red-blue-green (in terms of how problems are approached).

**Tight**

Standard aspects with 1° orbs.

**BySignAndOrb**

This aspect set is based on the notion that when two bodies are in aspect by sign, and are also in aspect by orb, the aspect takes on extra importance, making it more significant. So Sun at 1° Aries is square Moon at 25° Cancer, but it is much more significant if Sun at 1 Aries square Moon at 5 Cancer (a square aspect by sign only), thus in orb. So like the BySign aspect set, this method does not use 'out of sign' aspects at all. All the major aspects are used.

**Moiety**

The principle of moieties is to determine the orb of an aspect by adding half of the orb of each planet involved. (This is identical to averaging the orb for each planet involved in an aspect.) For example, if Pluto has an orb of 6° and The Sun has an orb of 12°, then the moiety is 9°, so they are in aspect with each other only when they are within 9° of each other. Conjunction, Opposition, Trine, Square, Sextile and Parallel & ContraParallel.

**BySign**

This aspect set doesn't use user defined orbs, it determines aspects only according to which signs each planet is placed in. For example, if one planet is in Aries, and another in Cancer, then they are in Square aspect, regardless of which degree of their signs they are in, because 0° Cancer is 90° (a square) from 0° Aries which established the general principle that Cancer is square to Aries. All the major aspects are used.

**Mediev**

Only uses Conjunction, Opposition, Trine, Square, Sextile and Parallel & Contraparallel.

**Synwide**

Same as Synastry aspect set but with wider orbs

**Eclipses**

Aspects configured specifically for using with eclipses

**Standard**

A general purpose set of aspects.

**Synastry**

Major aspects plus 5th, 7th and 9th Harmonics

**Fixed Stars**

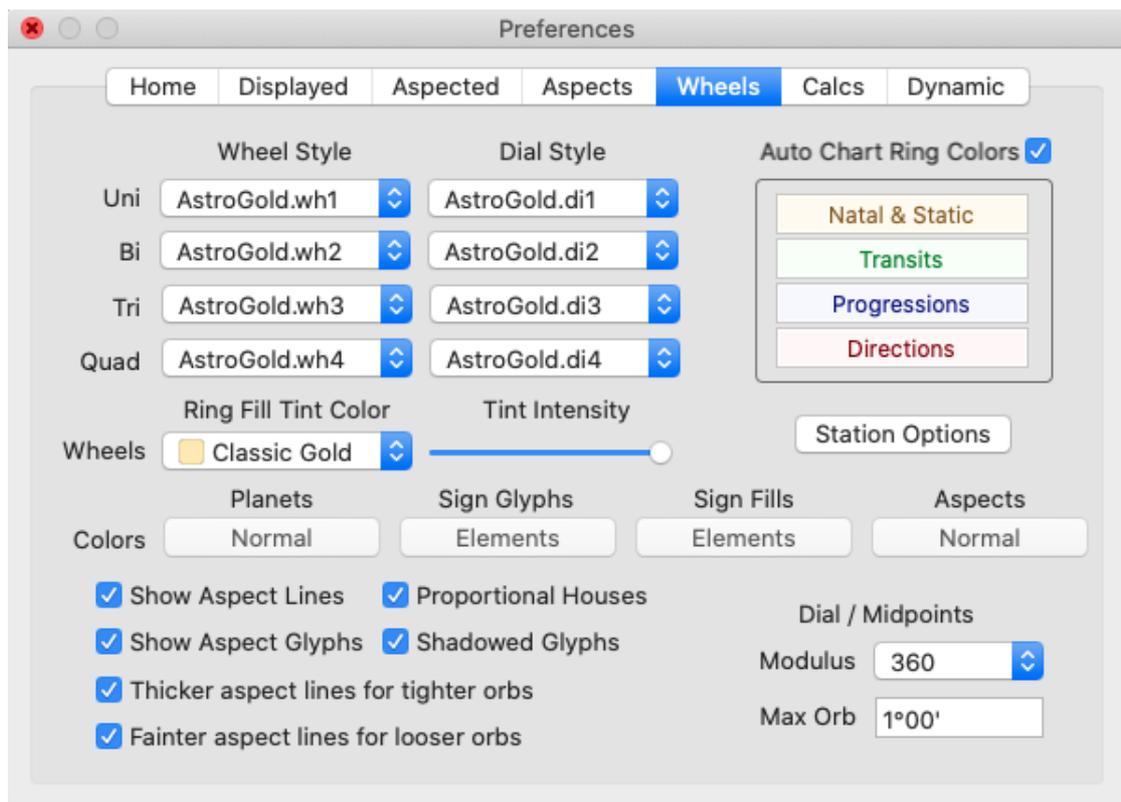
Just Conjunction and Opposition with small orbs.

### BySignTraditional

Same as the BySign aspect set, but only Conjunction, Sextile, Square, Trine, and Opposition are used.

See [Preferences](#) for more details.

## 9.5 Wheels



Preferences - Wheels

### Wheel and Dial Styles

In terms of general display options this contains a selection of wheel and dial styles for Single, biWheel/biDial, triWheel/triDial and quadriWheel/quadriDial charts. As you can see in the graphic below, Astro Gold comes with various different wheel and dial styles for you to choose from, regardless of whether it's a single wheel or dial, or a quadri wheel or dial, or something in between. Just select the style you want from the dropdown lists by clicking on the , then clicking on the item you want.

#### Wheel function/purpose

The wheels are named in a fairly self explanatory way to describe what they are designed for, or to do. Further explanation for some of the wheels is ...

- DecRulers.wh1: shows the Decanate rulers
- SignRulers.wh1: shows the Sign rulers
- TermPtol.wh1: shows Ptolemaic Term rulers\*

TermEgyp.wh1: shows Egyptian Term rulers\*

Click on [Terms](#) for more info.

### Retrograde Planets

The default wheel styles omit retrograde symbols and instead show degrees and minutes in red to indicate retrograde status. This is helpful in allowing us to display the planet, degree and sign glyphs at a larger size, which makes them easier to read on smaller screen sizes.

However, some wheel options also exist to allow the **E<sub>q</sub>** symbol to be displayed while necessarily also adjusting down the sizes of the planet degree and sign glyphs accordingly. Wheels displaying the **E<sub>q</sub>** symbol that ship with Astro Gold are:

- Euro1.wh1
- Euro2.wh1
- NoHouses.wh1 (no house numbers are visible)
- TMann.wh1
- Uni1.wh1
- Uni2.wh1

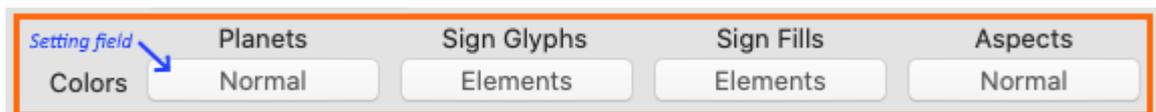
Or you can use the [Wheel Editor](#) to create a new wheel design, or adapt an existing one, so that it does include the **E<sub>q</sub>** symbol in its chart rings.

### Wheel Ring Fill Tints and Colors



Choose the color tint and color intensity used for coloring in the wheel rings in the **Ring Fill Tint Color** dropdown list. The pop-up menu offering wheel tint color options includes a small color sample preview next to the menu item. You can specify if this color is used to tint all the wheel rings displayed, or only the very inner ring where the house numbers are displayed and the very outer ring where the signs are displayed - see [Auto Chart Ring Colors](#) below.

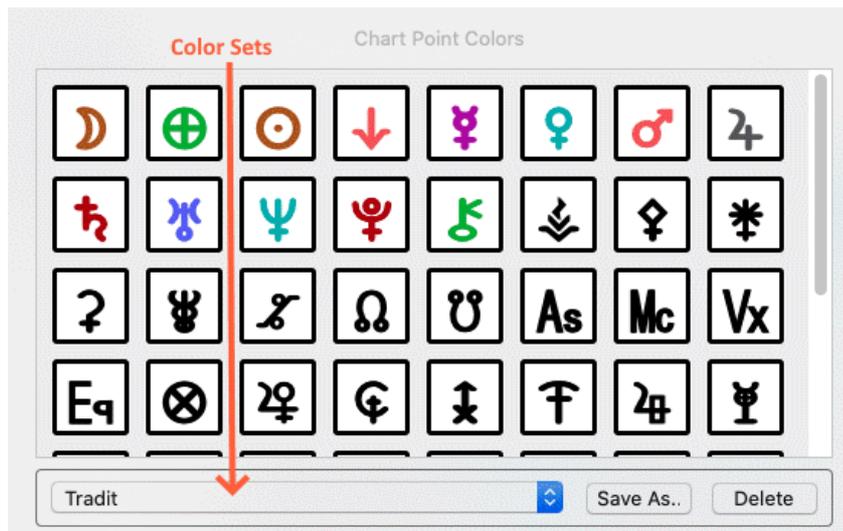
### Planet, Sign and Aspect Colors



You can also choose different planet, sign glyph and fill, and aspect colors. And you're not limited to just one lot of colors for each of these parts of an astrology chart. For each you can create a set of colors then save that set under a name you give it, and then reuse that set of colors for that part of the chart anytime you want.

To do this click in the setting field for the chart part (Planets, Sign Glyphs, Sign Fills, Aspects) you want to select colors for, e.g. Planets. When you do a dialog box with all those items (e.g. planets) pops up (the graphic below shows the dialog box that pops up when you click in the setting field for Planets).

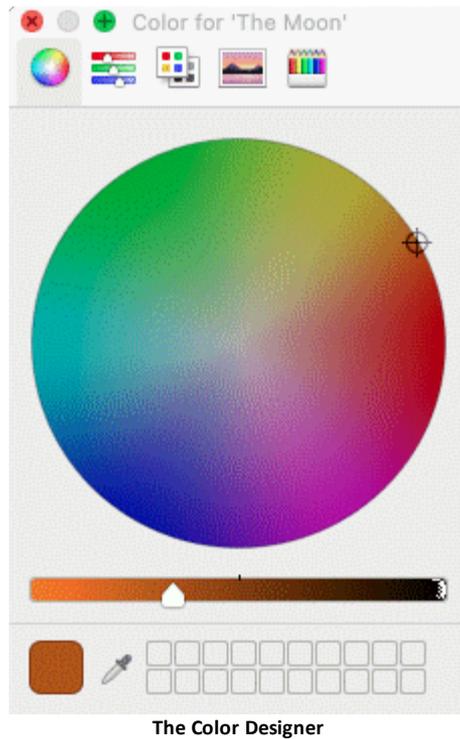
You can click in the Color Set dropdown list to select from all the available color sets one you want to use for choosing the colors from for the particular chart part (planets, syn glyphs etc) items you are setting colors for.



Planets Color Dialog

You are not limited to using the existing Color sets though, as you can design and make new color sets for chart parts (planets, sign glyphs, sign fills and aspects). You do this by designing the color for each chart part item (planet, sign, sign fill or aspect) in turn, and then saving that lot of colors as a set, called anything you want to call it, and then that set of colors is added to the other Color sets in the dropdown box, available for use with any chart part anytime.

To design a color for a chart part item (a planet, a sign glyph, a sign fill or an aspect) - in the dialog box displaying those items click on the particular item you want to choose a color for (e.g. in the "Planets" dialog box shown above click on, say, Jupiter). When you do the **Color Designer** will open so you can create the color you want for that particular item (e.g. Jupiter).



Designing the color is basically just a case of clicking on the color you want, then altering the lightness/darkness of the color using the slider at the bottom directly underneath the color circle.

Once you have created a color (i.e. it's showing in the large rectangle in the bottom left of the Color Designer) it will immediately be updated in the dialog box for the particular chart part item you are designing a color for, e.g. the Planet (Jupiter) you initially clicked on in the dialog box. If you want to save that color in the Color Designer so you can use it another time for any item, with the mouse drag it from the large rectangle in the bottom left of the Color Designer over to an unused cell in the two rows of storage cells to the right of the large rectangle in the bottom left of the Color Designer.

### Using the Color Designer's Color Tools



Across the top of the Color Designer are five color tools. From the left they are:

- color wheel
- color sliders
- color palettes
- image palettes
- pencils

Each of these presents you with a different way of designing the color you want, mostly by clicking on the color or pencil, or by moving sliders.

One last color tool is at the bottom of the Color Designer, called the Dropper . Click on this and the mouse cursor becomes a large circular magnifying glass with a dot in the middle, magnifying whatever on the screen is directly underneath it. You can move the mouse around the screen and as you do the colors directly underneath the mouse appear in the magnifying circle. When the dot in the middle of the circle is on the color you want to capture click the mouse button. That color will then be in the large rectangle in the bottom left of the Color Designer, and so will have colored the chart item you are working on with that color too. The Dropper will also have been closed.

**Note:** Sign Fills are only displayed on some Wheel/Dial styles.

## Station Options

Planets move in their orbits (line of travel) around the Sun at different speeds - the closer to the Sun the planet is the faster the planet moves, and the further away from the Sun the planet is the slower it moves in its orbit. Not only that, the closer to the Sun a planet is the shorter its orbit around the Sun is. So a planet closer to the Sun not only moves faster around the Sun but also has less distance to travel to complete a full orbit around the Sun. These two affects combined give rise to the phenomenon known as "retrograde" planetary motion.

Retrograde motion arises when from Earth a planet on its orbit around the Sun appears to stop moving forward through the zodiac in the sky and instead moves backwards through the zodiac. So say a planet was at 15° Libra then a week later was at 12° Libra - what has happened? Retrograde motion (apparent travel in reverse) occurs when a planet on its orbit, due to traveling faster on a shorter orbit (pathway) around the Sun overtakes a planet on an orbit further out from the Sun.

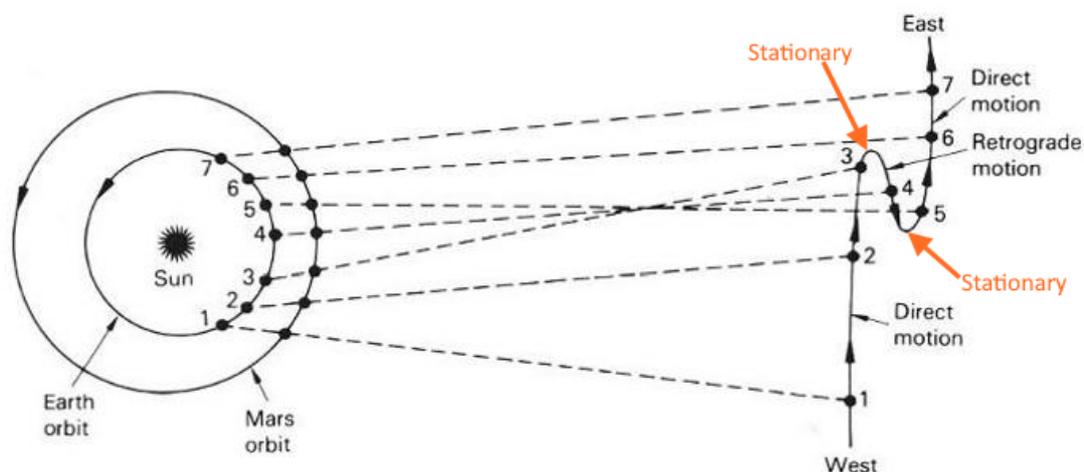
There are two situations regarding this. Firstly, with planets that orbit the Sun beyond the Earth, as the outer planet is being overtaken by Earth (on its "inner" track), the outer planet appears to slow down, then stop for a short while, then start moving backwards in the zodiac around its orbit.

Secondly, with planets whose orbits are between Earth and the Sun (inside Earth), as those planets start catching up to Earth they appear to slow down then stop moving, and then as they are approaching the same zodiac position as Earth they appear to be traveling backwards through the zodiac, then as they pass inside (overtake) Earth and pull away from Earth on their inside track (orbit) they appear to again slow down then stop then resume moving forwards through the zodiac again.

Using the first situation (involving say Earth and Mars) as an example, with Earth traveling faster than Mars around its shorter orbit than Mars travels around its own (longer) more outer orbit, how the the retrograde motion of Mars arises and then discontinues can be clearly seen in the graphic below.

The gap (or point in time) between when a planet's apparent motion going forward through the zodiac (direct motion) and then going backwards (retrograding) through the zodiac is called "stationary motion". And the same is the case when a planet's apparent

motion going backwards (retrograding) through the zodiac and then going forwards (direct) through the zodiac is also called "stationary motion". These two points are labeled in orange in the graphic below.



Clicking on the **Station Options** button opens a dialog box where you can set the way that these "stations" (periods of no planetary motion) are "defined". The actual period of non movement is one thing but astrologers also sometimes like to also include some of the "slowing down" phase along with the actual non moving phase in the definition of "this planet is stationary". Also since the period of time that planets are non moving varies greatly depending on the speed of the planet in its orbit, it can also be handy to have the option of using a relatively uniform way of measuring the actual non moving period, regardless of the planet's speed.

- **Within hours of exactness** will standardize all planets to that amount of non-moving time.
- Within **orb of exactness** for each planet will vary in exact proportion all the planets' speeds vary.
- **Below a specified speed** will partially standardize all planets, but they will still vary slightly depending on their relative normal direct motion speed. The smaller the setting the less variation, and vice versa. A setting of 0 will equate to the exact actual non-moving period of each planet. In that case the closer the planet to the Sun the shorter the stationary period will be.
- **Below % of average speed** will give similar amounts of stationary time for the planets but always with some variations, so this is a good general relative standardization of the stationary ("non-moving") time period for all the planets.

Station Options

Enable Station Calculations

Station Calculation Options

<input type="radio"/> Within hours of exactness	<input style="border: 1px solid #00aaff;" type="text" value="24"/>	hrs
<input type="radio"/> Within orb of exactness	<input type="text" value="0°02'"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Below specified speed	<input type="text" value="0°01'"/>	/ day
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Below % of avg speed	<input type="text" value="3"/>	%

When enabled, stationary points are marked with an 'S' in those wheel styles which allow a retrograde symbol, and 'SD' or 'SR' in relevant listing columns.

Once you have entered your preferences for how Stations are to be defined Astro Gold will consider a planet as being stationary ("non moving") according to these settings. Not all wheel styles are designed to show retrograde motion so this will not apply when those wheel styles are in use.

### Remaining Wheel Options

The remaining options below are alternatively turned on (ticked) or off (blank) by continuously clicking on them. These options are applied individually in whatever combination you prefer.

- "Auto Chart Ring Colors": when this is switched on, in the "Selected Charts" pane the chart details for the various charts (inner, middle or outer) will be in a different color (that shown below for auto chart ring colors) depending on what type of chart is selected for that ring of the wheel, plus the same color will be used to tint the rings in a wheel which are displaying the type of chart designated to have that color in astro chart ring colors. The auto chart ring colors are permanent and cannot be changed by the user.
- "Show Aspect Lines": are the lines drawn between planets in the middle of the chart, showing the angle between the planets. You can switch these on or off.
- "Show Aspect Glyphs: if aspect lines are switched on then a glyph depicting the aspect the line represents is drawn near the middle of the aspect line when this is switched on.
- "Proportional Houses" allow house division lines to expand beyond their normal symmetrical shape, if that's necessary to fit a large number of planets into the drawn house area.
- "Shadowed Glyphs" means a shadow is drawn around planet and sign glyphs.

- "Thicker aspect lines for tighter orbs": increases line thickness up to a multiple of 10 for closest orbs.
- "Fainter aspect lines for looser orbs": decreases opacity down to 20% for loosest orbs.
- For dials and midpoints you can also specify the dial degrees (45/90/360) and max orb to be allowed when determining midpoints using the dial.

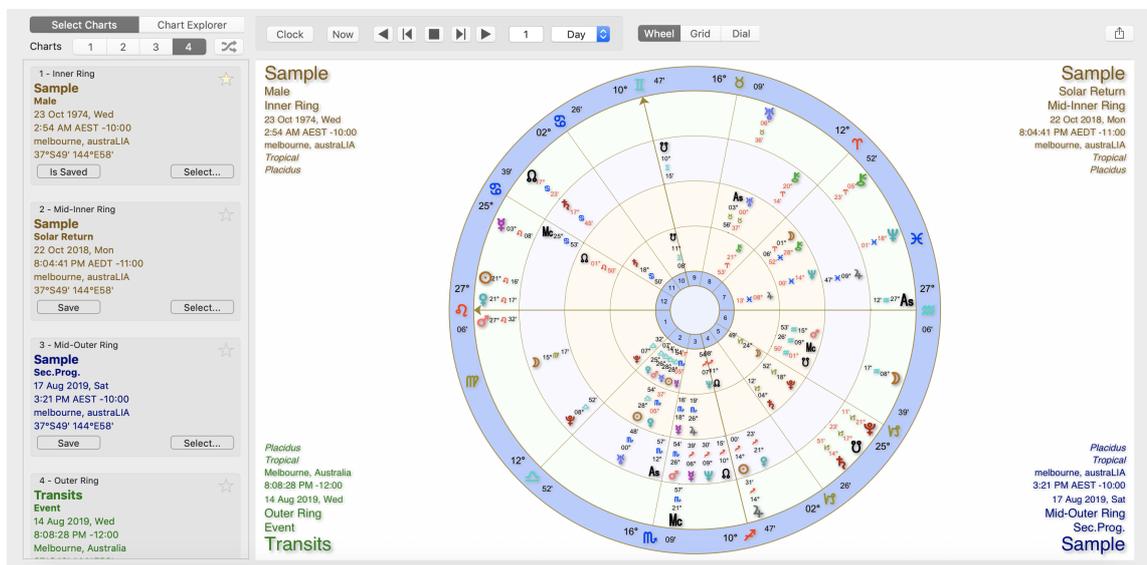
## Example

Below shows the rings of a quadriWheel with mixed tinting, derived from the "Auto Chart Ring Colors" above, which are switched on.

The inner ring chart is a natal chart, and while the mid-inner ring chart isn't a natal chart it's a static (non dynamic) type of chart. Both these are designated to have a gold color for text and for ring tinting.

The mid-outer ring chart has a progressions chart which has blue as the designated color for text and for ring tinting, and the outer chart is a transits chart which has green as designated color for text and for ring tinting.

The very innermost ring of the quadriWheel that has the house numbers in it, and the very outermost ring that has the zodiac signs and degrees in it, are both always the color designated by the Ring Fill Tint Color (which as you can see below is Blue).



Preferences - Wheels. Mixed ring tinting.

When "Auto Chart Ring Colors" is switched off (by clicking on the **blue tick**) then the color for the text everywhere on the screen reverts to the color specified for that part of the chart (see above at the beginning of the Wheels topic). In wheels the very innermost house ring and very outermost zodiac ring default to the "Ring Fill Tint Color". All the other chart rings have no background color, are white.

### 9.5.1 Terms

The word "Terms" (also known as "Bounds") comes from the Latin word "termini" (which means *limits, confines*).

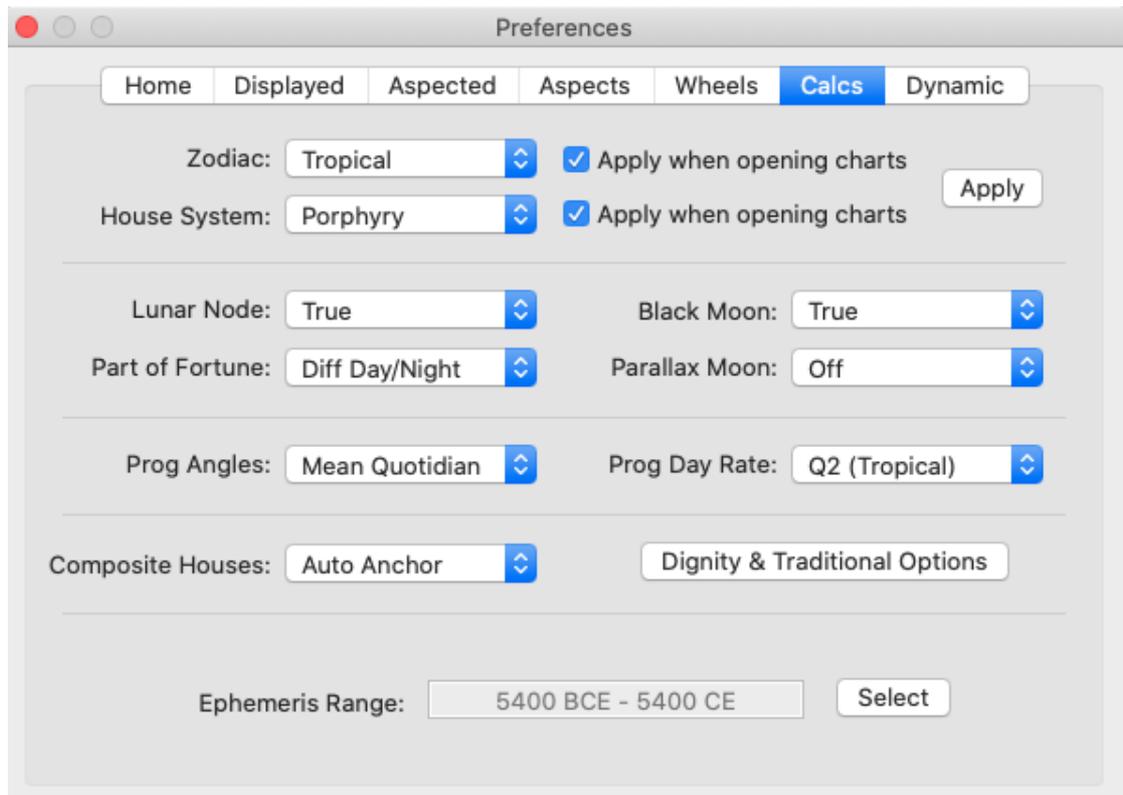
Every sign is divided into 5 unequal sections called terms (or bounds), each term being ruled by one of the traditional "non-light" planets i.e Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter and Saturn.

The section of a sign - the "Terms" in other words - that a planet in that sign is also in, determines which of the above planets is its "Terms ruler". There are three systems of Terms: the Egyptian, the Chaldean and a very ancient one Ptolemy discovered, and thus it is called the Ptolemaic system. They have different ways of dividing up the degrees of each sign into Terms. Astro Gold has wheel styles for the Egyptian and the Ptolemaic systems.

The Terms ruler has an influence over planets in it, and a planet in its own Terms is strengthened, while a planet in the Terms of another is colored by (acts "in terms of") that planet. So for example within the sign it's in Venus in its own Terms is enhanced but in the terms of Saturn in that sign has it's normal benefit reduced, and in the Terms of Mars has less power to manifest it's normal benefit. Saturn in the Terms of Venus would be softened, not so harsh and less likely to manifest malevolence.

## 9.6 Calculations

Allows selection of zodiac type, house system and various other items related to chart calculation.



Preferences - Calcs

**NOTE:** Initial settings are to use the *True* Lunar Node and *True* Black Moon (as opposed to using Mean positions for both of them), and the *Standard* system for Firdaria calculations.

The zodiac type, house system, lunar node type, and various other items related to chart calculation are all shipped with default values that are commonly used to get good astrological results, and unless you have a preference for a setting to be a particular value there is no need to change these. However Astro Gold is very flexible and if you wish you can change a great many of the variables involved in calculating charts.

### >> To change from the tropical zodiac to one of the many sidereal zodiacs (or vice versa)...

1. Click in the **Preferences** icon in the Toolbar to display the "Preferences" dialog box.
2. Click on **Calcs** - this will display the "Chart Calculations" tab, where the current zodiac setting will be displayed e.g. "Tropical".
3. Click in the dropdown textbox labeled **Zodiac** - this will list the Zodiacs.
4. Click on the **Zodiac** in the list you want - this will select that zodiac.

#### Zodiacs available

- Tropical

- Fagan Allen
- Lahiri
- DeLuce
- Raman
- UshaShashi
- Krishnamurti
- Djwhal Khul
- Draconic
- SVP 0°00'

**NOTE:** When you change and then apply a new default zodiac type (as above) and return or dynamic subsidiary charts (transits, progressions or directions) are already open which would need to have a recalculated time for the newly selected zodiac type, you are prompted with a message indicating that the relevant chart(s) will not have their zodiac type changed. It is then up to you to decide whether you wish to calculate a new subsidiary chart for the new default zodiac type.

### >> To change the house system used in charts

1. Click in the **Preferences** icon in the Toolbar to display the "Preferences" dialog box.
2. Click on **Calcs** - this will display the "Chart Calculations" tab, where the current huuse setting will be displayed e.g. "Placidus".
3. Click in the dropdown textbox labeled **House System** - this will list the House systems.
4. Click on the **House System** in the list you want - this will select that house system.

#### House Systems available

- Campanus
- Koch
- Meridian
- Morinus
- Placidus
- Porphyry
- Regiomontanus
- Topocentric
- Equal
- Zero Aries
- Solar Sign
- Sun on 1st
- Moon on 1st
- Mercury on 1st
- Venus on 1st
- Mars on 1st
- Jupiter on 1st

- Saturn on 1st
- Uranus on 1st
- Neptune on 1st
- Pluto on 1st
- Node on 1st
- Vertex on 7th
- EP on 1st
- MC on 10th
- Whole Sign
- Bhava
- Alcabitius
- PF on 1st
- ASC in 1st

### **Progression Day Rate**

Quotidian is the name used in secondary progressions for the rate of progression of the planets. The most commonly used rate is called Q2 and it is based on the ratio of 1 tropical day for a year (1 : 365.24219879). That is, for each tropical year of real time assign the planets the movement they would have in 1 tropical day during that year.

An alternate rate is called Q1 or Bija correction and is based on the ratio of 1 sidereal day for a year (1 : 366.2563992). So the rate is an alternative that refers to the sidereal year rather than the tropical year.

Since the default rate is Q2 it is not mentioned in the chart label for progressed charts when that is used. However if Q1 is selected as the rate then it is shown in the chart label e.g. Sec.Prog.Q1.

### **Dignity and Traditional Options**

Here you can set the types you want to be the default for Terms, Triplicities, Mutual Receptions and Firdaria in dignity scoring.

### **Composite Houses**

In the calculation of composite midpoint charts normally the house cusps of the chart are simply the midpoints of the same house cusps in the two base charts. Unless the cusps of the base charts are almost opposite each other, then the resulting composite house cusps can sometimes be ordered incorrectly using normal calculation methods (short arcs).

This can be counteracted in one of two ways:

- Anchor on the calculated 1st house cusp - and adjust the other composite cusps as necessary to be in the correct order to that
- Anchor on the calculated 10th house cusp - and adjust the other composite cusps as necessary to be in the correct order to that

- Auto Anchor - compare the calculated composite 1st and 10th house cusps to see which is which is the most "correct", and use that, adjusting the other composite cusps as necessary to be in the correct order to that.

### Ephemeris Range

There are several ephemeris range options which can be selected, all involving a certain amount of disk space, listed below:

- Standard - 1200 BCE to 3000 CE (the *DEFAULT*) - all planets and fixed stars, plus asteroids.
- Extended - 5400 BCE - 5400 CE (21 MB to download) - all planets and fixed stars, plus asteroids.
- Maximum - 10,000 BCE - 10,000 CE (50 MB to download) - all planets and fixed stars.

If you reduce the range, ephemeris files previously downloaded for the pre-existing range are deleted to free up disk space. If for any reason when downloading additional ephemeris files (which occurs when increasing the size of the range used) the download is interrupted, just re-choose the range option in Astro Gold and the download will start again from scratch.

**NOTE:** When Astro Gold is first installed the ephemeris range setting is Standard.

## 9.7 Dynamic Events

Dynamic Listings and Time Graphs are reports of dynamic events occurring for a chart over a period of time, e.g. transits, progressions etc.

Dynamic Listings are generated by using one or more Dynamic Jobs. Astro Gold ships with eight kinds of Dynamic Jobs. A Dynamic Job contains all the instructions, settings and parameters to determine which dynamic events to generate in a Dynamic Listing.

This tab in Preferences allows the selection and editing of preset Dynamic Jobs. Note that the dynamic listing start date and duration which are set in a Dynamic Job are there as a default to make report generation quick, but they can always be overridden when actually generating a Dynamic Listing. Other items that may be set are the transiting points, radix points and aspects included in the report, as well as a few optional extra event types which may be included or not in the reports.

Below the "Dynamic" tab in the Preferences dialog is selected, displaying the Dynamic Jobs that ship with Astro Gold.

### >> To re-order Dynamic Jobs in the list

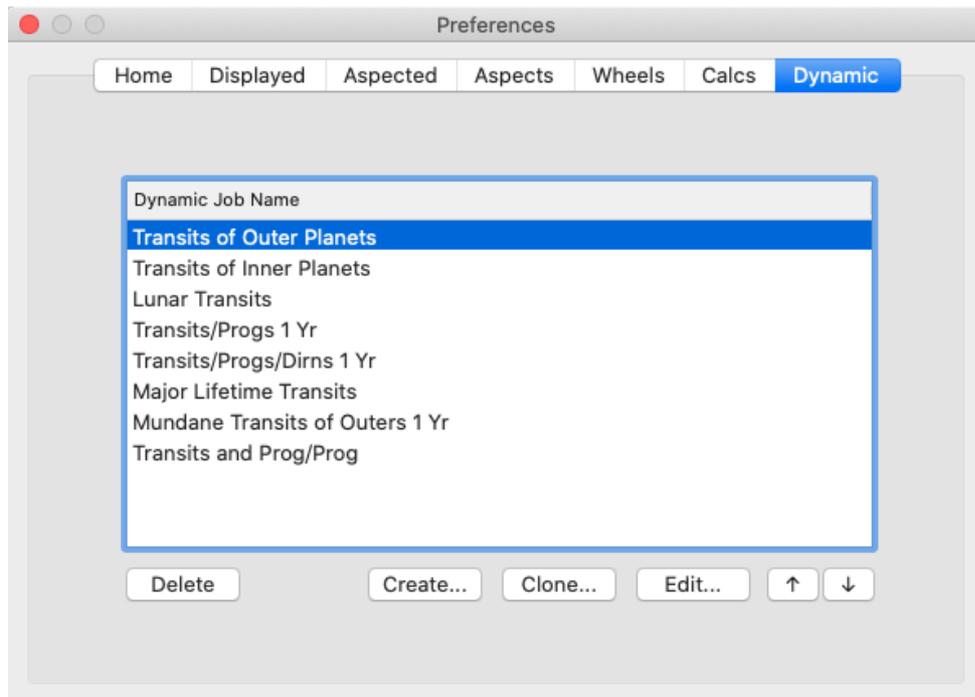
1. Select the Dynamic Job you want to reposition in the list, and either
  - a. click one or more times on either the **Up** or **Down arrow key** button under the list

**OR**

  - b. drag the Job to where you want it to be in the list

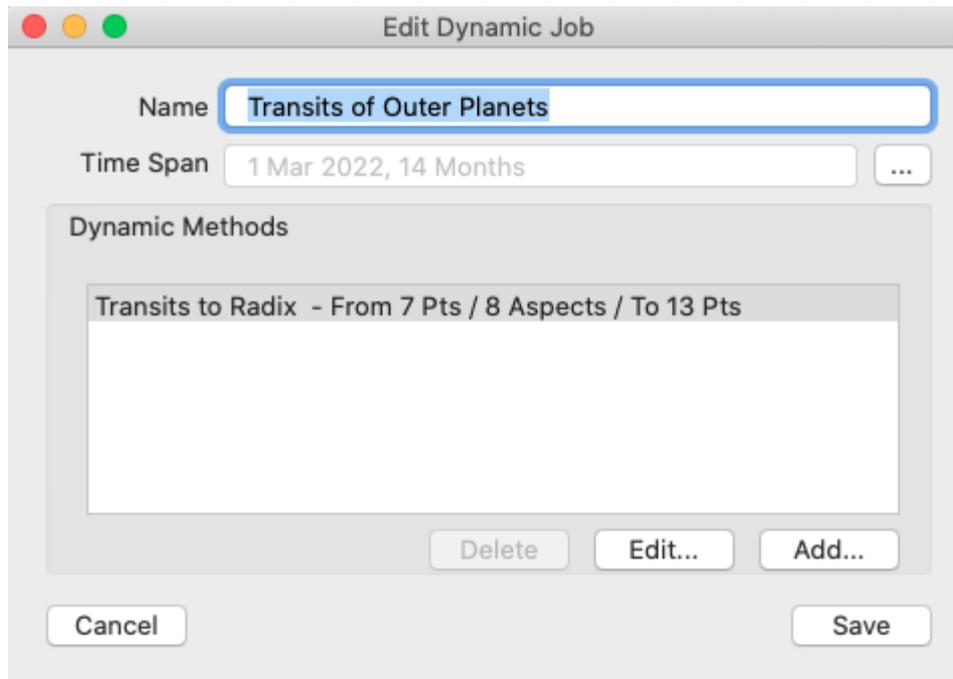
## >> To edit, delete or create a new Dynamic Job

1. Click the **Preferences** icon in the toolbar to display the "Preferences" dialog box.
2. Click on the **Dynamic** tab which will display a list of Dynamic Jobs.



Preferences - Dynamic

3. Clicking on a **Dynamic Job** selects (highlights) it and then you can...
  - Edit the selected Dynamic Job by clicking on the **Edit...** button. This will open the "Edit Dynamic Job" dialog box where all the main components of the job can be edited.



Preferences - Dynamic

Components that can be edited are:

1. "Name"
2. Time Span. Click on the ... at the right hand end of the "Time Span" textbox. This opens the dialog below.

#### Setting the Listing Start Date

Unless modified the Base date is the starting date. By default that is *now* ("Current Date").

To change that click in the Base Date dropdown list and select from **Chart Date** or **Fixed Date**. If you choose "Fixed Date" then a textbox appears to the right of the Base Date where you can enter a specific date as the Base Date.

If you want the Base Date to be the starting date click in the "Go To Start Of" dropdown list and select **Day**. Otherwise, if you select "Month", "Quarter" or "Year" then the start date will be at the *beginning* of the month, quarter or year that the Base Date falls in.

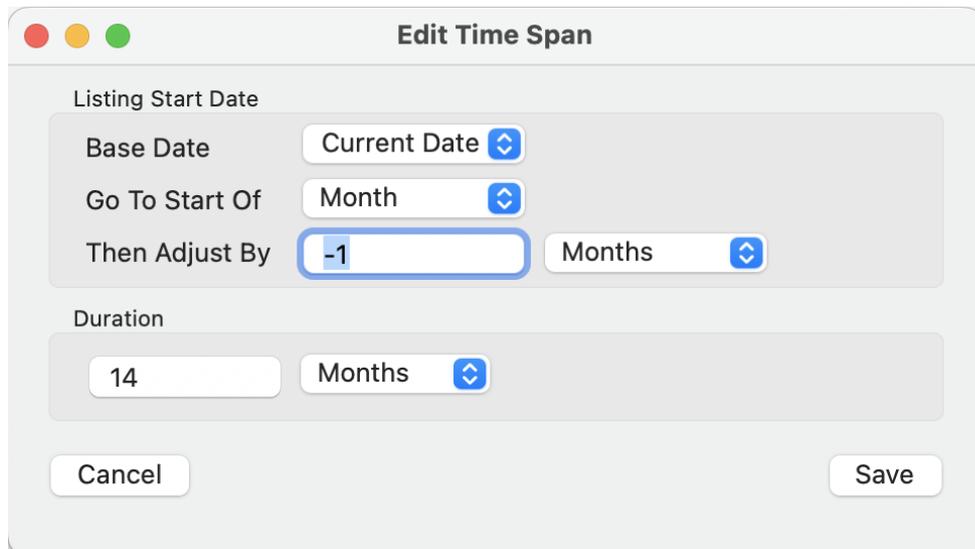
If you want the final start date to remain at the Base Date, in the "Then Adjust By" textbox enter a **0**, and you have finished setting the start date.

Otherwise enter the **positive or negative number** of years, quarters, months or days to adjust the Base Date by in the "Then Adjust By" textbox, and finally select the "Years", "Quarters", "Months" or "Days" in the dropdown list to the right of that.

#### Setting the Duration

Enter the **number** of years, months or days in the textbox under Duration, and select "Years", "Months" or "Days" from the dropdown list to the right of that

Click on **Save** to use this start date. Click on **Cancel** if you want to leave the start date settings as they originally were.



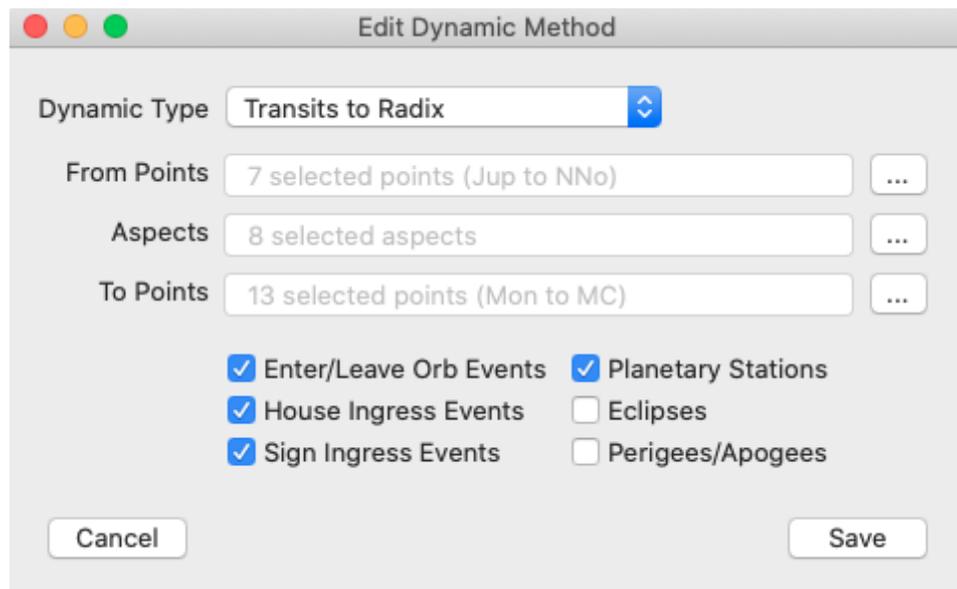
Preferences - Dynamic: Start Date & Duration

**NOTE:** the timespan for dynamic events can be up to 1000 years duration.

3. The last remaining component of a Dynamic Job is the "Dynamic Methods" it employs.

It must have at least one dynamic method, but can have several. All of the events represented by each particular dynamic method will be searched for and displayed in the end report, whether that's a Dynamic Listing, Time Map or on the Graphic Ephemeris.

To edit an existing "Dynamic Method" select it first then click on the **Edit...** button, or to add a new one to a Job click on the **Add...** button. Either way, the "Edit Dynamic Method" dialog box is displayed.



A "Dynamic Method" is itself composed of the following items:

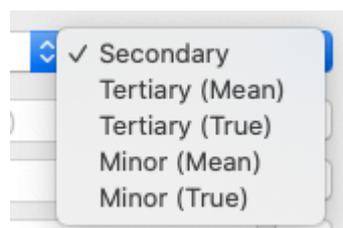
a) "Dynamic Type"



Choose from...

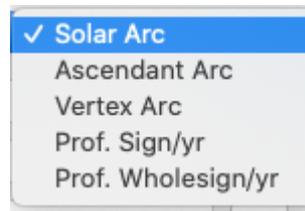
- Transits to Radix (the radix chart is the Base chart, usually a Natal or Event chart, but can also be other types of chart e.g. a Return chart etc)
- Progressions to Radix

=> then click on the **Progression Type** dropdown menu to the right and select the type



- Directions to Radix

=> then click on the **Direction Type** dropdown menu to the right and select the type. Prof. stands for Profections, look here in [Astro Sheets](#) for more info on them.



- Transits to Transits
- Progressions to Progressions

=> then (as above) click on the **Progression Type** dropdown menu to the right and select the type

- Transits to Progressions

=> then (as above) click on the **Progression Type** dropdown menu to the right and select the type

- Transits to Directions

=> then (as above) click on the **Direction Type** dropdown menu to the right and select the type

- b) "From Points" (transiting/progressing/directed).
- c) "Aspects" (manually select the aspects to use. The set of aspects created here is a different set to the main Aspect set created in Preferences).
- d) "To Points". Radix points only can be selected, so only applies when a radix chart is receiving the dynamic influence (you can include Extra Points as well, see below for info regarding this).
- e) "Enter/Leave Orb Events" (when ticked specifies ... for the aspect use an entering & leaving orb, or not ticked then just show exact aspect hits)
- f) "House Ingress Events" (show when a planet or point changes houses)
- g) "Sign Ingress Events" (show when a planet or point changes signs)
- h) "Planetary Stations" (show when a planet or point changes direction from direct motion to retrograde motion, or vice versa)
- i) Eclipses (can be included as events searched for when the Dynamic Type starts with Transits to... )
- j) Perigees/Apogees (when the faster moving planet is closest to or furthestest away from the planet it is orbiting)

### "From Points", and "To Points" *Extra Points*

When you are selecting "From" and "To" Points for a Dynamic Method, as well as the usual range of planets and points you can include Extra Points (e.g. midpoints, stars etc). See [Displayed Points](#) for info on what is available.

Included in Extra Points available for a Dynamic Listing are *Apsides (apogees/perigees)*. These are local minima and maxima of distance and typically occur twice per year each for outer planets, and more irregularly for inner planets. For these types of events, in the dynamic listings, the Pos1 column shows the zodiacal longitude at which the event happens, and the Pos2 column shows the distance of the event in Astronomical Units (AU). Also note that these are generally different distances than shown in the minimum and maximum geocentric orbit data for apsidal events (as pop-up info when clicking on an entry in the Apsides/Nodes List Astro Sheet), because these are local perigee/apogee events rather than the long timescale min/max theoretically possible shown in the Astro Sheet list.

To change all these items either enter a value, click on the  and select the item off the dropdown list, or click to the right of the item on the "..." to change the value(s), or simply click on the item.

For more information on Points, Aspects and four of the items of a Dynamic Method (e to h) see below.

When you are finished editing the Job components and their items click on the **Save** button in the bottom right of the screen, or (to abort all changes) the **Cancel** button in the bottom left of the screen. This will return you to the "Preferences" dialog.

- Delete the selected Dynamic Job by clicking on the **Delete** button.
- Create a new Job by clicking on the **Create** or **Clone** button (when the "Clone" button is clicked a new Dynamic Job is created which is a replica of the Job currently highlighted in the list). The "Edit Dynamic Job" dialog box is opened. You can then alter any or all of the components and their items of that Job to make the new Job unique. Even if you alter nothing else it is a good idea to at least give the new job a different name, in order to avoid having two Dynamic Jobs with exactly the same name which might be confusing later on.

## Dynamic Listings - Editing the Dynamic Type, Points, Aspects and Extra Events

### **Dynamic Event Type**

In summary ... a Dynamic Listing uses a pre-created "Dynamic Job" to generate the event data for the dynamic list.

In turn a Dynamic job has "Dynamic Methods" that must be executed by the job. There are no limits to how many methods a "Dynamic Job" can have.

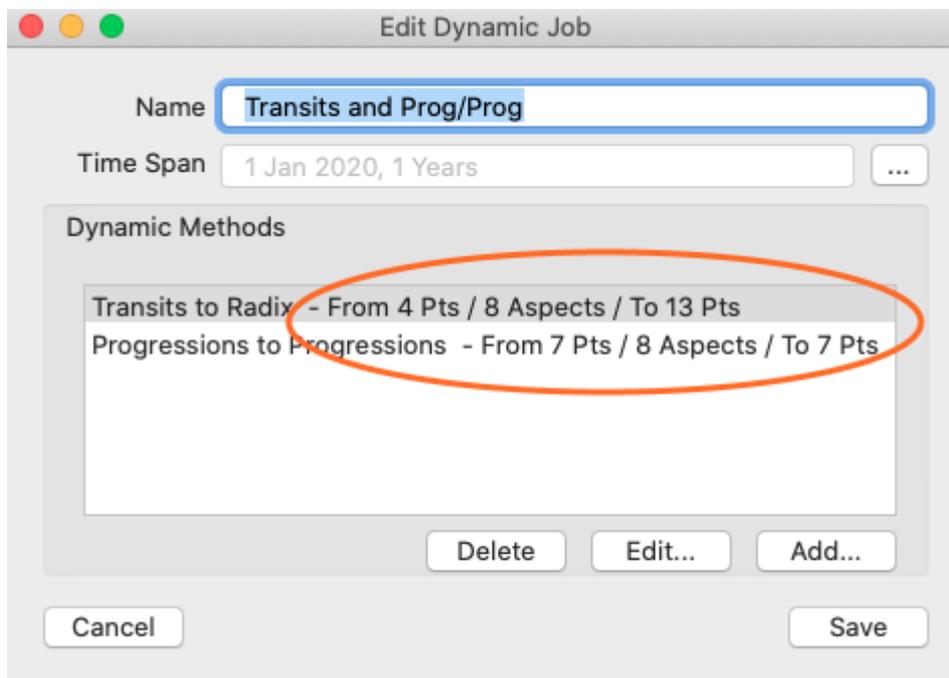
Each "Dynamic Method" corresponds to a fundamental type of dynamic event, which is specified by the method's "Dynamic Event Type". It is the "Dynamic EventType" that determines what events the "Dynamic Method" needs to search for.

You must therefore have at least one "Dynamic Method" so a Dynamic Job knows (via the method's "Dynamic Event Type") what types of events to search for, and can therefore display something.

However if you want you can set up many "Dynamic Methods" that, between them, use all the different possible "Dynamic Types". Then the resulting "Dynamic Listing" would potentially have a great variety of different dynamic astrological events in it. Or a "Dynamic Job" could just use one "Dynamic Method" (which always has only a single "Dynamic Type") and thus produce a correspondingly very simple kind of listing e.g. one that just has mundane transits in it.

## Points

You can see at a glance how many From and To points are used for a "Dynamic Job" - it's written alongside each dynamic method's title in a Job's list of "Dynamic Methods".



As well, when you are actually editing a "Dynamic Method" it is written in the "From Points" and "To Points" textboxes - see the graphic below on the right.

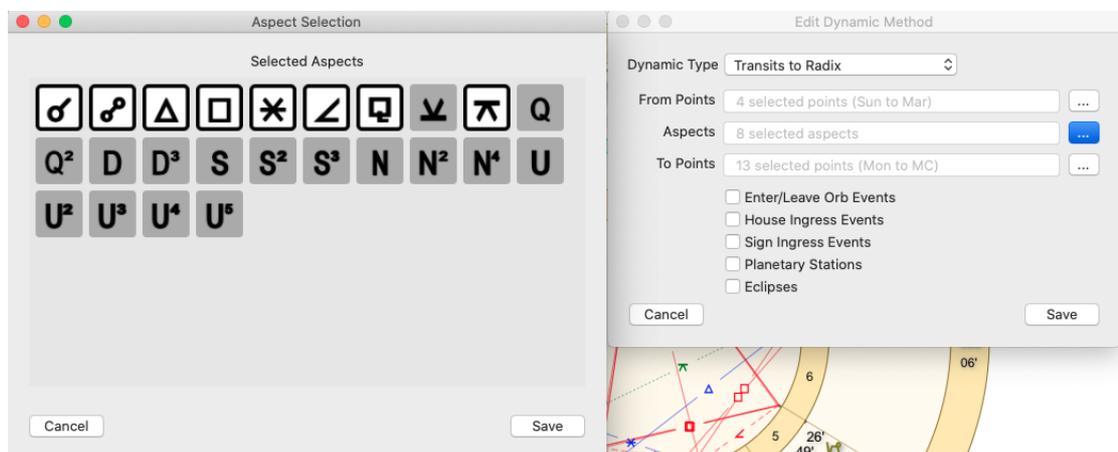
To change which points are used for a "Dynamic Method" click the "..." to the right of the **From Points** or **To Points** textbox, which will open the "Point Selection" dialog box (see the graphic below on the left) . To change any of these simply click on them to turn them

ON (light) or OFF (dark). Below shows editing the "From Points", and it's exactly the same to edit the "To Points".

## Aspects

You can see at a glance how many aspects are used for a "Dynamic Job" - it's also written alongside each dynamic method's title in a Job's list of "Dynamic Methods" - *see the graphic above*.

As well, when you are actually editing a "Dynamic Method" it is written in the "Aspects" textbox. To change which aspects are used for a "Dynamic Method" click the "..." to the right of the textbox which will open the "Aspect Selection" dialog box. To change any of these simply click on them to turn them ON (light) or OFF (dark).



## Extra Events

These last five Dynamic listing items allow you to fine tune the kind of events that are generated in the "Dynamic Listing".

Click in the checkbox to switch them ON (ticked) or OFF (blank).

1. Enter/Leave Orb Events can be switched ON or OFF to control whether only exact transits are shown or not. If it is switched OFF only exact transits are shown. If it is turned ON then each transit will be given an entering and leaving orb of 2 degrees – which is not changeable by the user. This will result in extra events appearing in the list marking when the transit is at it's entering orb, and at it's leaving orb, as well as when it is exact. This will mean a minimum of two events per transit (entering and leaving), but often three events (entering, exact and leaving) and in some cases where a transiting planet retrogrades back over ground it's already covered while in transit, additional events (some or all of entering, exact and leaving) will be displayed to correspond with that additional retrograde and subsequent direct movement.

2. House Ingress Events: if switched ON shows when planets move into a neighboring house in the radix chart, if switched OFF that is not shown in the list.

An ingress is shown by by the "->H" symbol in the listing.

3. Sign Ingress Events: if switched ON shows when planets move into a neighboring sign, if switched OFF that is not shown in the list.

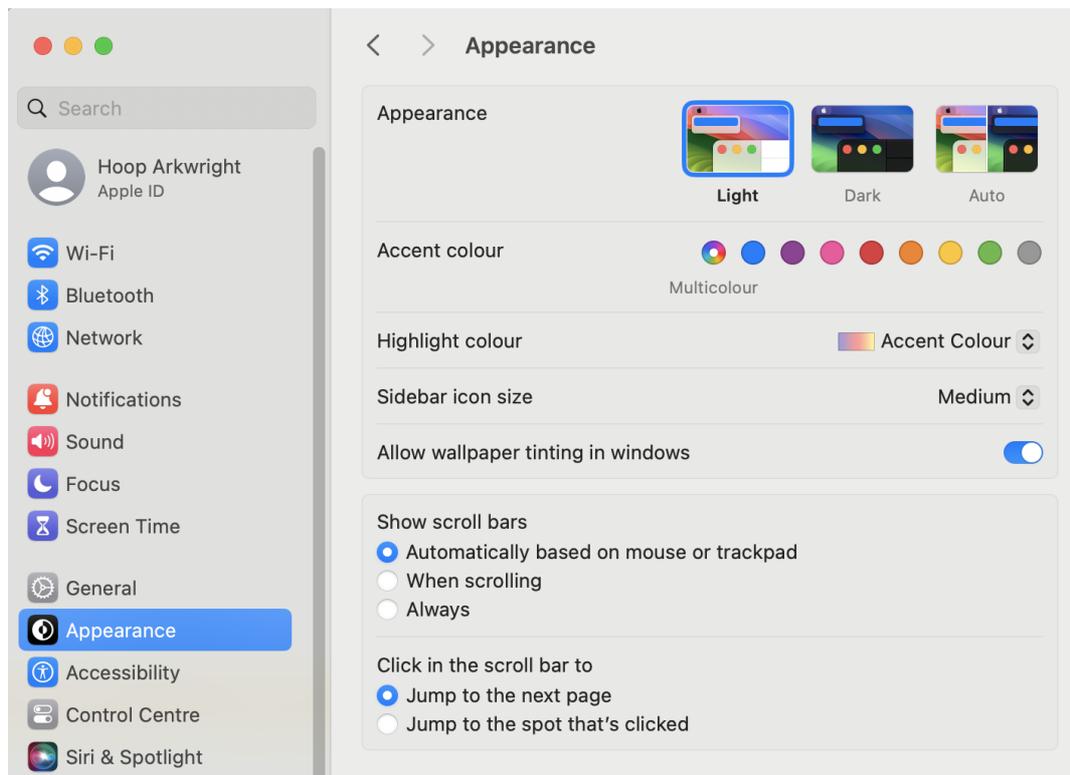
An ingress is shown by by the "->S" symbol in the listing.

4. Planetary Stations if switched ON shows when planets come to a standstill (station) when changing from direct motion to retrograde motion, and vice versa. If switched OFF this is not shown.

5. Eclipses: if switched ON shows when an eclipse occurs in the list of your dynamic events, if switched OFF that is not shown in the list.

## 9.8 Screen Light / Dark settings

Mac computers can be set with a light theme or a dark theme, in the "System Settings" dialog via the **Appearance** tab.



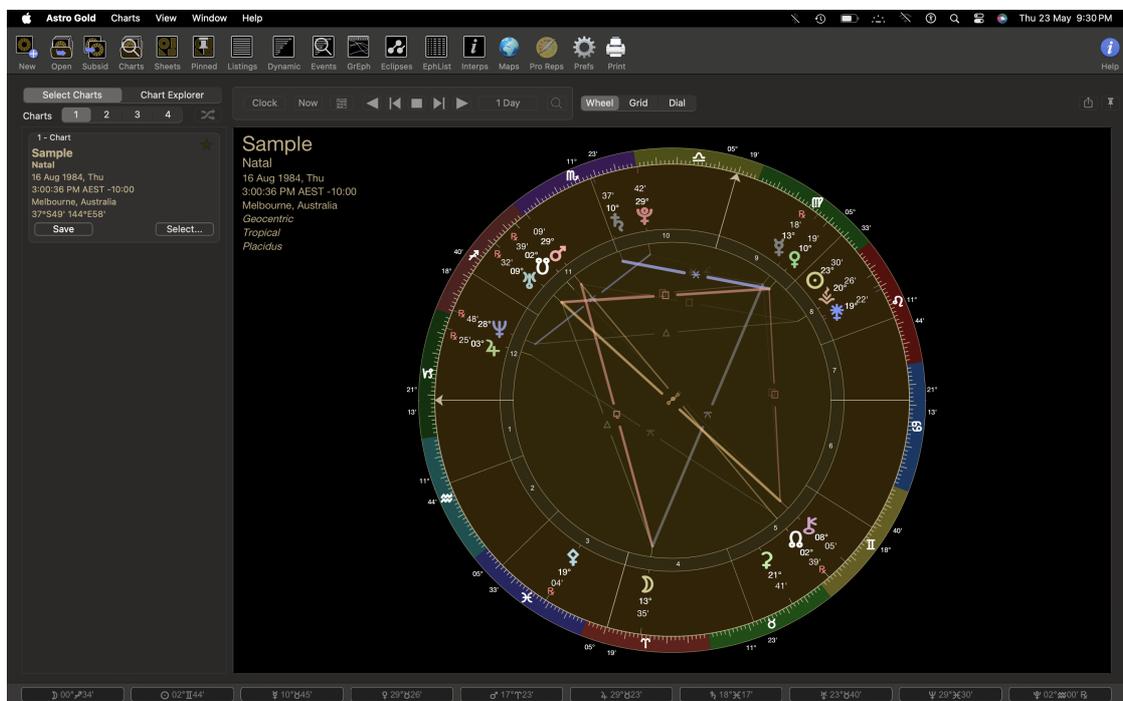
As you can see there is also a third setting, called Auto, where the Mac will automatically adjust the appearance of buttons, menus and windows throughout the day. So if you turn on this Auto setting, as night approaches the dark theme takes over, and as the morning approaches the screen is taken over by the light theme.

In "Preferences" on the **Home** tab, Astro Gold also has a choice between Light and Dark color scheme, and an Auto setting. If the Auto option is chosen, Astro Gold will choose the theme Mac's light/dark theme.

Color Scheme  Light  Dark  Auto Auto option uses the default OS scheme

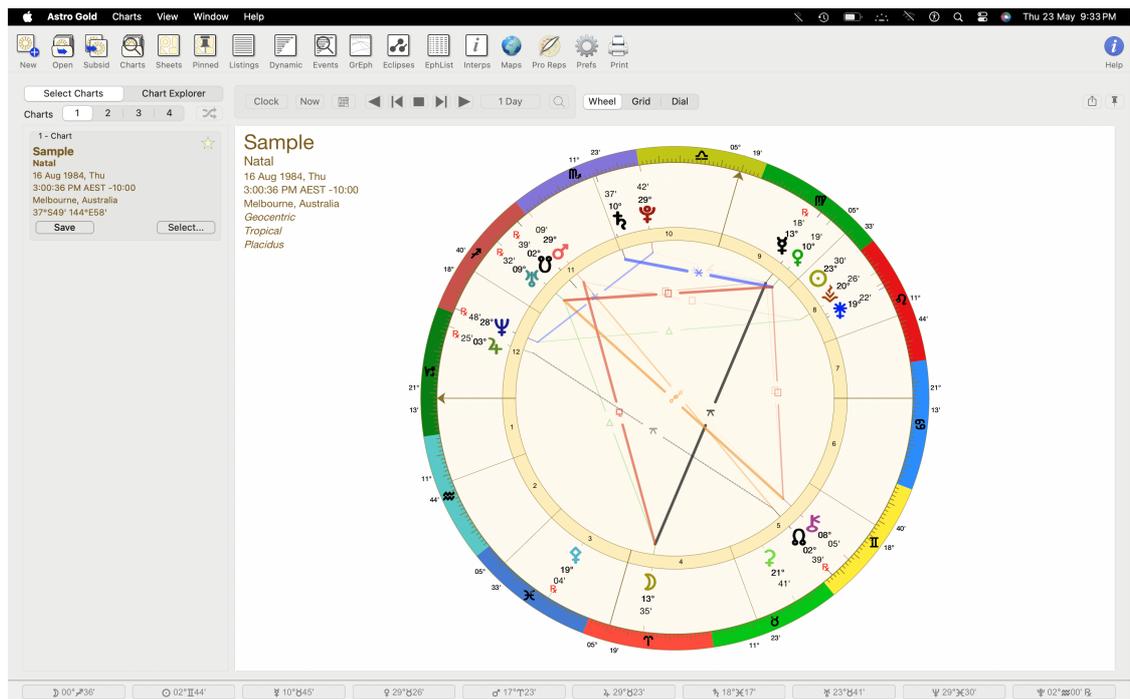
If you set both your Mac and Astro Gold to the Automatic setting, whenever the Mac adjusts to dark or light theme, Astro Gold will automatically take on the same theme.

For example, let's say it is night time and you have the Mac set to the Auto setting. You also have Astro Gold set to Auto. When you open Astro Gold, it will open with the dark theme.



You are working all night, and before you realize it, the Sun is rising. (Or, you left your Mac on when you went to bed for the night.)

The Mac will now automatically change over to the light theme. And Astro Gold will change over as well.



### 9.8.1 Information & Support

General information, support and links for AstroGold can be accessed by clicking on the **Help** menu.

You can also visit the Facebook page: [Astro Gold Professional Astrology Tools | Facebook](#)

## 10 Reference Information

These topics form the Reference section. Here you will find various topics of a data or technical nature that you can refer to as the need arises.

### 10.1 Astro Gold System Files

Most of Astro Gold's system files are kept in the following folder:

**~/Library/Application Support/com.ajnoware.Astro-Gold**

This folder is known as the "app support folder". To get to it:

- 1) Open **Finder**
- 2) Click on the **Go** menu
- 3) Press the **Option** key down and hold it down. In the list of "Go" menu items this will cause a new item to appear between the existing "Home" and "Computer" items - called "Library".
- 4) Click on the **Library** menu item. This will open a Finder window. Release the "Option" key.
- 5) In the Finder window click on the **Application Support** folder to open it.
- 6) In the Application Support folder click on the subfolder called **com.ajnoware.Astro-Gold** to open it.

### 10.2 Keyboard Shortcuts

<b>Keys</b>	<b>Action</b>
Command+W	Closes the topmost window
Command+RightArrow	Swaps the chart positions
Command+Option+C	Clears all user data from the screen and lists
Esc	Closes the following windows when they have the focus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Astro Sheets</li><li>• Pinned Sheets</li></ul>

- Pinned Sheets Manager
- Listings
- Dynamic Listings
- Event Search
- Eclipses
- Graphic Ephemeris
- Interpretations
- Astro Locality Maps

### 10.3 Moving Astro Gold to another Mac

If you have Astro Gold on a Mac computer, and want to transfer your app to another (second) Mac -say you purchased a new Mac- you will want all of your personal settings and charts transferred over too.

Mac makes this easy to transfer everything (apps, their data, and their settings) with something Apple calls "Migration Assistant". If you follow Apple's instructions (which you can find on their website here [Move your content to a new Mac - Apple Support](#)) you will find that Astro Gold on the second Mac has everything just the way you want it.

But supposing that you installed Astro Gold on the second Mac manually, and didn't use "Migration Assistant". You will discover that none of your settings are on the second computer. In addition, if you saved your charts on the first Mac on the Mac itself, instead of on the iCloud Drive, none of the charts will be on the second Mac either.

The good news is that there is a way for you to copy most (not all) of your settings, and all of your chart files, manually.

#### >> How to transfer your settings to another Mac

Most of Astro Gold's settings are found in this folder: **~/Library/Application Support/com.ajaware.Astro-Gold**

1. Copy this folder on the old computer onto a USB drive
2. Copy the *contents* of that folder on the USB drive into the same folder on the second Mac => you will then have most of your settings transferred.
3. However there will still be a few settings that you will have to set manually:
  - via **Preferences** in the Astro Gold menu or on the Toolbar
    - a) *such as* your home location in "Home"
    - a) default wheel styles in "Wheels", and
    - a) calculations options in "Calcs"

## >> How to transfer your charts to another Mac

Unless you have been saving your charts on your first computer to some other folder than the default, you will find them in this folder: **~/Documents/Astro Gold**

1. Copy this folder on the first computer onto a USB drive
2. Copy the *contents* of that folder on the USB drive into the same folder on the second Mac => you will now have all of your charts on the second Mac.

## 10.4 Technical Details

These topics contain technical information about various definitions, operations and workings of Astro Gold and Astrology.

This User Guide is for Astro Gold for MacOS, version 6.1 (Build 391).

### 10.4.1 Requirements

Astro Gold is a 64-bit application.

Astro Gold version 5.6.3 will run on any Mac running MacOS 10.11.

Astro Gold version 5.6.4 and higher will run on any Mac running MacOS 10.13 or higher.

### 10.4.2 Calculation Methods

- Astro Gold uses the Swiss Ephemeris for state of the art precision in astronomical calculations - ephemeris range 1200 BC to 2400 AD. However built-in ephemerides for chart points Astraea (5) and Hygiea (10) have been extended to cover the range 3000BCE to 3000CE. Current Swiss Ephemeris version: 2.10.03
- All Astro Gold apps use the highly respected ACS Atlas, with 250,000+ locations from around the world, and comprehensive world time zone history. (You can use this Atlas to set your home location to make current transits relevant to where you reside.) Current version 23 - Timezones last updated 2nd Dec 2022.
- Vulcan is a hypothetical planet, and there is no officially accepted ephemeris for the calculation of its position. Astro Gold uses the orbiting version of L.H.Weston.
- The Black Moon Lilith is the empty focal point of the Moon's orbit around the earth, which is also the apogee of the Moon's orbit. It is the true (osculating) apogee that is used in Astro Gold.

### Local Mean Time (LMT)

- LMT is calculated directly from the longitude of the location. Specifically the LMT timezone is 1.0 hrs for each 15 degrees of longitude from Greenwich.

- LMT means local MEAN time - hence it cannot in any way be based on true solar position.
- LAT means local APPARENT time - this means the timezone is based on the exact time that the true (= apparent) solar position is directly overhead for any specific location and day.
- The exact difference in timezone between LMT and LAT for a given location and day is equal to the "Equation of Time" for that location and time.

# Index

## - " -

"Book of Instruction in Art of Astrology" 141

"Life Time Astrology" 140

## - - -

->H and ->S symbols 273

## - 1 -

1 Chart 39

## - 2 -

2 Charts 39

## - 3 -

3 Charts 39

## - 4 -

4 Charts 39

## - 6 -

64 bit 279

## - A -

A.T.Mann 140

Abundantia 242

Accidental 215

ACS Atlas 279

Action button

position on screen 10

printing astro locality map, astro sheets,  
graphic ephemeris 128

save, copy, print or share astro locality maps  
206

saving content to PDF files 129

share, export or print astro sheets 135

Adolescent Astrology Report 217

Aesculapia 242

Age Harmonic 34

Age+1 Harmonic 34

Al Biruni 147

aspect type 247

Albion 242

Altitude

for a point 181

of point 138

America 242

Anchor

composite house cusps 264

on 10th house cusp 264

on 1st house cusp 264

Animated chart 113

Animation

relocation on the astro locality map 196

Antiscia

chart 34

Apollo 242

Apophis 242

App Support Folder 277

Application interface 10

Apsides

aspects 149

list 149

use in Dynamic Listings 271

Arabic Lots/Parts

aspects 147

displaying 242

list 147

Arachne 242

Arc directions

displaying 239

Asbolus 242

Aspect 155

changing settings for 247

changing while viewing a chart 82, 90

copying/deleting sets 247

creating/editing sets 247

for chart point 111

grid with points & basic asteroids 138

in astro locality map 196

in dynamic listing 271

lines - thicker, fainter depending on orb 253

main 96

minor 247

nearest in a chart 138

orbs 247

patterns 138

search for transiting 123, 125

selecting a set to use 247

show aspect lines in wheels 228

- Aspect 155
  - switching on or off 247
  - synastry 150
  - types 247
  - used in dynamic job 271
  - with asteroids & extra bodies 145
  - with nodes and apsides 149
  - with stars 148
- Aspect Set
  - factory descriptions 251
  - in use 251
- Aspected Points
  - in charts 246
  - in dynamic listings 265
- Asteroids
  - available in extra points to display 242
  - conjunctions to displayed points 147
  - displaying in the main points available 239
  - downloading additional 145
  - save full list as a PDF file 145
  - view 145
- Astro Gold
  - iOS 44
  - menu 15
- Astro Locality Map
  - chart stepper 196
  - displaying a chart wheel on top of 196
  - local space wheel 196
  - map style 196
  - save, copy, print or share 206
  - showing dynamic events in a map 196
  - zoom in and out 196
- Astro Sheets
  - chart used for 135
  - interpretations 135
  - multi columns 136
  - opening 135
  - pinned sheets & chart windows 152
  - printing/saving full content of scrolling lists 136
  - sharing/exporting 135
  - sorting items in lists 136
  - using the menu 136
- Astro Sheets Manager
  - adding and removing favorites 153
  - opening and closing pinned sheets & chart windows 153
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - Fixed Stars
  - star aspects 148
  - star parans 148
  - stars list 148
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - General
  - aspect patterns 138
  - beginner/client 138
  - grid 138
  - house cusps and aspect to 138
  - points list 138
  - syzygys & eclipses 138
  - wheel 138
  - wheel basics: elements, modalities etc 138
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - Lots/Parts
  - arabic lot aspects 147
  - arabic lots list 147
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - Midpoints
  - midpoint trees 144
  - midpoints list 144
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - Minor Bodies
  - asteroid aspects 145
  - asteroids list 145
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - Nodes/Apsides
  - nodes/apsides aspects 149
  - nodes/apsides list 149
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - Predictive
  - lifetime arcs 140
  - progressed lunar phases 140
  - sun sign wheels 140
- AstroSheets - 1 Chart - Traditional
  - dignataries / horary 141
  - dignataries / sect 141
  - essential dignities 141
  - firdaria 141
  - house dignities 141
  - lunar mansions 141
  - planetary sect 141
  - profections 141
  - zodiacal releasings 141
- AstroSheets - 2 Charts
  - biGrid 150
  - biWheel 150
  - dual wheels 150
  - synastry 150
- AstroSheets - 3 Charts
  - three wheels 150
  - tri wheel 150
- AstroSheets - 4 Charts
  - four wheels 151
  - quadri wheel 151
- Atlas
  - duplicate names 22
  - search for place 22
  - state abbreviations 22
  - timezone 22
  - use state abbreviation 22
- Auto Anchor 264

Auto Chart Ring Colors 253  
 Automated  
   subsidiary chart creation 35  
 Azimuth  
   for a point 181  
   of point 138

## - B -

Bacchus 242  
 Background screen color 237  
 Bar  
   transits 120  
 BC dates 156  
 Beginner info 138  
 Bija rate 261  
 Birth Chart report 217  
 Birthday (Solar Return) Report 217  
 biWheels 82, 90, 253  
   for synastry 150  
 Black & White charts 237  
 Black Moon 261  
   Lilith 262, 279  
 Black moon type 261  
 Bonatti's list of Commodities 147  
 Books  
   Book of Instruction in Art of Astrology 141  
   Life Time Astrology 140  
 Bounds 261  
 Button  
   action: position on screen 10  
   action: printing astro locality map, astro sheets,  
   graphic ephemeris 128  
   action: save, copy, print or share astro locality  
   maps 206  
   action: share, export or print astro sheets  
   135  
   pin 152

## - C -

Calculation range  
   extending for minor bodies used (asteroids etc)  
   145  
 Calculations  
   ACS Atlas 279  
   black moon type 261  
   default house system to use 261  
   default zodiac to use 261  
   Equation of Time 279  
   firdaria type 261  
   LAT 279

LMT 279  
 lunar node type 261  
 mutual reception 261  
 parallax moon 261  
 part of fortune type 261  
 progressed angle type 261  
 Swiss Ephemeris 279  
 term type 261  
 triplicity type 261  
 Calendar  
   displaying dynamic events 162  
   displaying exported dynamic events 165  
   emailing a calendar (.ics) file to someone  
   169  
   enabling iCloud calendars 163  
 Campanus 263  
 Catalina 279  
 Categories  
   of astro sheets 135  
 Centaurs & Dwarves  
   downloading 145  
 Ceres Return 32  
 Chaldean 261  
 Chaos 242  
 Chariklo 242  
 Chart  
   additional info 134  
   animating 113  
   antiscia 34  
   aspect 82, 90, 155  
   aspect glyph settings 253  
   aspect line settings 253  
   aspected points 246  
   automated subsidiary chart creation 35  
   calculations 261  
   combined 33  
   comments 28  
   composite 19, 29, 33  
   copying 58  
   creating transits chart 20  
   creating/saving/opening/editing 19  
   current transits 19  
   date 21  
   deleting 42  
   designing chart wheels 226  
   details 40  
   dial 82, 90, 109  
   directed 19  
   display type 120  
   displayed points 239  
   eclipses 138  
   editing 19, 29

## Chart

- emailing 44
- essential dignities 155
- exchanging 44
- Explorer 111
- exporting 44
- favorite (...designating) 17
- favorite (...selecting) 26
- file 37
- finding based on Name only 62
- finding based on simple or complex criteria 65
- folders 37
- for a client 138
- found from a search - sorting/saving/opening 80
- glyph style 237
- grid 82, 90
- harmonic 19, 34
- house expansion 253
- importing 44
- inner 39
- lo 52
- location 22
- lunar phase 29
- lunar return interpretations 186
- menu 17
- midpoint interpretations 186
- monochrome 237
- multi 40
- natal interpretations 186
- new natal or event chart 20
- opening 26
- outer 39
- pinning 88, 152
- planet/point declination 111
- planet/point latitude 111
- planet/point longitude 111
- planet/point return 29
- planet/point right ascension 111
- points list 138
- printing 128
- progressed 19, 29
- progressed interpretations 186
- radix 269
- recently used 26
- relationship 29, 33
- relocating 35
- remove selected chart 18
- return, ingress 32
- ring colors 253
- saving 24
- search; building a single-condition criterion 75
- search; building multi-condition criteria 76
- search; creating astro detail conditions 72
- search; creating chart detail conditions 69
- search; positive & negative conditions 75
- selected for Astro Sheets 135
- selection options 19
- send/add 44
- single chart 39
- solar arc 31
- Solar Fire 47
- solar return interpretations 186
- specifying files to search in 78
- specifying number to work with 10, 120
- storing on iCloud 44
- subsidiary 29
- sun sign wheels 140
- swapping positions 41
- synastry interpretations 186
- syzygys 138
- transferring between Mac computers 278
- transiting interpretations 186
- type 40
- updating to present 116
- viewing 82, 90, 109
- wheel 82, 90
- with basic info 138
- Chart - settings 237
- Chart Details area 10, 19, 39
- Chart Explorer 120
  - aspect 111
  - details 111
  - dynamic 111
  - mode 111
- Chart File
  - creating new 28
  - opening 28
- Chart positions 277
- Chart Selection
  - options 10, 13
  - options - displayed points 118
- Chart Stepper 196
- Chart Stepping facility 117
- Chart Type
  - lo 52
- Charts menu 128
- Child Report 217
- Chiron Return 32
- Chris Brennan 147
- Circe 242
- Clock 113

- Clock 113
    - step increments 117
  - Color
    - designing 255
    - sets 255
  - Color Scheme
    - background 253
  - Colors
    - aspects 253
    - designer tools 253
    - making your own 253
    - planets 253
    - sign fills 253
    - sign glyphs 253
    - wheel rings 253
  - Combined 29
    - chart - composite midpoint 33
    - chart - davison relationship 33
  - Comments 19
  - Commodities 147
  - Compliments
    - for Professional Reports 217
  - Composite 29
    - chart 33
    - house anchoring 264
  - Context menu
    - custom displayed points 118
  - Contra-Antiscia 34
  - Copy
    - any screen 13
    - astro locality map 196
    - charts 58
    - wheel designs 236
  - Copyright
    - for interpretations 186
  - Country 22
  - Create
    - graphic file 135
  - CSV file
    - for an ephemeris listing 181
  - Cupido 242
  - Current
    - transits 116
  - Cursor Relation Mode 196
  - CycloCartoGraphy 196
- D -**
- Dark
    - screen color 237
  - Date
    - BCE 156
      - for chart 21
      - gregorian 19
      - julian 19
    - Debilities 215
    - Decans 215, 253
      - changing type used 84
      - traditional rulers 84
    - Decans (faces) 226
    - Declination
      - aspects from transiting points 111
      - for a point 181
      - for chart point 111
      - of point 138
    - DecRuler 84
    - Default
      - house system to use 261
      - location 237
      - zodiac to use 261
    - Delete
      - chart 42
      - wheel design 236
    - DeLuce 261
    - Designing
      - colors 253
    - Detriment 141
    - Dial
      - biDial 109
      - displaying 109
      - modulus 82
      - modulus setting 253
      - orb used 253
      - quadriDial 109
      - settings for viewing 109
      - triDial 109
      - uniDial 109
      - view 120
    - Dial Pointer
      - changing while viewing chart 109
    - Dial Style 253
      - changing while viewing chart 109
    - Diana 242
    - Dignities 215
      - horary 141
      - M.R. Type 261
      - sects 141
    - Dignity
      - mutual reception type 261
      - term type 261
      - triplicity type 261
    - Direct
      - motion in dynamic jobs 271

- Direct
    - planets 257
    - point/planet 138
  - Directions 31
    - in a dynamic method 265
    - over time 156
  - Display Controls 10, 113, 116, 117
  - Displayed Points
    - arabic lots/parts 239
    - arc directions 239
    - asteroids 239
    - changing while viewing a chart 82, 90, 109
    - custom 239
    - dwarf planets 239, 245
    - extra points 239
    - fixed points 239
    - follow default 240
    - for transits 239
    - hypothetical (transneptunian) planets 239
    - midpoints 239
    - minor bodies 239
    - point sets 239
    - progressions 239
    - setting defaults 239
    - stars 239
    - use temporary Set 118
  - Distance
    - for a point 181
  - Djwhal Khul 261
  - Dodecatemoria 34
  - Dorian Gieseler Greenbaum 147
  - Downloading
    - additional asteroids 145
    - centaurs & dwarves 145
  - Draconic 261
  - Drag
    - chart detail blocks into new positions 41
  - Dropper
    - capturing screen colors 253
  - Dwarf Planets 245
    - displaying 239
  - Dynamic
    - >H and ->S symbols 273
    - dynamic methods 266
    - editing settings for listings & time graphs 265
    - enabling iCloud calendars to export events to 163
    - events in a calendar 162
    - events timespan 265
    - how to send events to a calendar 165
    - jobs - creating/editing/deleting 266
    - jobs - how they work 271
    - listing: aspected points 269
    - method - using 265
    - methods - creating 271
    - printing a Listing/Report 128
    - report settings - extra events 273
    - type - changing 271
  - Dynamic Listing
    - deleting events 156
    - display format 158
    - divider lines 156
    - event location 156
    - exporting as PDF 162
    - generate 158
    - generating multiple listings simultaneously 156
    - interpretations 156
    - multiple list windows 157
    - omitting section breaks 159
    - printing 156, 162
    - save to PDF 156
    - send to Calendar 156
    - sending to a calendar 162
    - sorting the events 159
    - standard listing format 156
    - timegraph format 156
    - using the UT timezone 156
- E -**
- Echo 242
  - Eclipse
    - lines on astro locality map 196
  - Eclipses 138
    - calculation time 179
    - in a dynamic method 265
  - Ecliptic 196
  - Editing
    - charts 29
    - dynamic events settings 265
  - Egyptian 261
  - Egyptian Mythological Asteroids 145
  - Elements 138, 139
  - Emailing charts 44, 47
  - Ephemeris 279
    - setting the year range 261
  - Ephemeris Listing
    - altitude 181
    - azimuth 181
    - declination 181
    - distance 181
    - generating 181
    - julian day (UT) 181

Ephemeris Listing  
 latitude 181  
 longitude 181  
 right ascension 181  
 sidereal time 181  
 Equal 263  
 Equal house system 34  
 Equator 196  
 Egyptian 253  
 Eris 245  
 Eros 242  
 Esc  
 closes windows 277  
 Essential Dignities 141, 155  
 rules/scores 215  
 Event Search  
 extended 125  
 simple 123  
 summary 122  
 Events  
 exporting to a calendar 165  
 Exact Phase 179  
 Exaltation 215  
 Exalted 141  
 Explorer chart 111  
 Exporting  
 astro sheets 135  
 charts 44  
 iCloud 44  
 Extra  
 events in dynamic listings 273  
 Extra Points  
 available to display 242

## - F -

Face 141, 253  
 Facebook 276  
 Faces 215  
 Faces (decans) 226  
 Fagan Allen 261  
 Fall 141  
 Family Astrology Report 217  
 Favorite  
 charts (...designating) 17  
 charts (...selecting) 26  
 sheets 152  
 Feature Summary 5  
 Files  
 .dat 52  
 .SFcht 47  
 Astro Gold iOS 44  
 Astro Gold system 277  
 finding charts in 62, 65, 78  
 Io 52  
 location 44  
 sharing 44  
 Solar Fire 47  
 storing charts in 37  
 storing charts on iCloud 44  
 that can be imported 44  
 Finding  
 charts 62, 65  
 Firdaria 142  
 type 261  
 Fixed Harmonic 34  
 Fixed points in the zodiac  
 displaying 242  
 Fixed Zodiacal points  
 displaying 239  
 Folder  
 Astro Gold system files 277  
 searching in for charts 62, 65, 78  
 Folders 37  
 Follow default 240  
 Fortuna 242  
 Fullscreen mode 10

## - G -

GA 24  
 GE 24  
 Geodetic Equivalent of longitude 214  
 Geodetic Equivalents 214  
 Georgia 24  
 Getting Started 13  
 Glyph Style  
 for charts 237  
 Glyphs  
 colors of for signs 253  
 of the extra points available (minor bodies & asteroids) 242  
 of the main chart points available 239  
 show for aspects 253  
 Gonggong 242  
 Graphic Ephemeris  
 generate ephemeris 169  
 printing 128  
 technical details 169  
 tutorial 177  
 using the UT timezone 169  
 Graphics file - create from astro info 135  
 Gregorian calendar 19

Grid 82, 109  
 printing 128  
 view 120

## - H -

Harmonics 98  
 chart 34  
 Haumea 242, 245  
 Hekate 242  
 Hellenistic 147  
 Help 276  
 menu 15  
 Hephaistos 242  
 Heracles 242  
 Hermes 242  
 Home Location 237  
 Horary 141  
 House  
 default system to use 261  
 expansion/proportional 253  
 ingress in dynamic jobs 271  
 modes 139  
 search for transits to cusps 123, 125  
 House Dignities 141  
 House System  
 Alcabitius 263  
 ASC in 1st 263  
 Bhava 263  
 Campanus 263  
 EP on 1st house cusp 263  
 Equal 263  
 Jupiter on 1st house cusp 263  
 Koch 263  
 Mars on 1st house cusp 263  
 MC on 10th house cusp 263  
 Mercury on 1st house cusp 263  
 Meridian 263  
 Moon on 1st house cusp 263  
 Morinus 263  
 Neptune on 1st house cusp 263  
 Node on 1st house cusp 263  
 PF on 1st house cusp 263  
 Placidus 263  
 Pluto on 1st house cusp 263  
 Porphyry 263  
 Regiomontanus 263  
 Saturn on 1st house cusp 263  
 Solar Sign 263  
 Sun on 1st house cusp 263  
 Topocentric 263

Uranus on 1st house cusp 263  
 Venus on 1st house cusp 263  
 Vertex on 7th house cusp 263  
 Whole Sign 263  
 Zero Aries 263

Huber  
 aspects 247  
 Hypothetical  
 planet 279  
 Hypothetical planets  
 displaying 239

## - I -

Icarus 242  
 iCloud  
 enabling calendars 163  
 setting up 44  
 Solar Fire 51  
 storing charts 44  
 using to transfer chart files between computers  
 and devices 51  
 Icon  
 pin 152  
 Image  
 graphics 135  
 Importing  
 charts 44  
 iCloud 44  
 lo charts 52  
 shortcut 47  
 Solar Fire charts 47  
 In Mundo 196  
 Ingress  
 search for times 123, 125  
 Inner Chart 39  
 Int files 195  
 Interpretations  
 \*.int files 195  
 cannot print 128  
 copyright text 186  
 create a new line 195  
 display rules 186  
 dynamic listing 156  
 for astro sheet items 135  
 lunar return 186  
 midpoint 186  
 natal 186  
 points included 186  
 pop-up aspects 186  
 progressions 186  
 solar return 186

- Interpretations
    - synastry 186
    - time graph 156
    - transits 186
    - viewing 188
  - Interpretations Editor 194
  - io charts
    - chart types 52
    - start importing 52
  - iPhone, iPad 44
  - Isis 242
  - iTunes 44
  - Ixion 242, 245
- J -**
- Jobs
    - dynamic 265
  - Johannes Lockwood 186
  - Joy User 141
  - Julian calendar 19
  - Julian Day (UT)
    - for a point 181
  - Juno Return 32
  - Jupiter Return 32
- K -**
- Keyboard shortcuts 277
  - Koch 263
  - Krishnamurti 261
- L -**
- L. Edward Johndro 214
  - Lahiri 261
  - LAT 279
  - Latitude 111, 181
    - for a point 181
    - of planet 138
  - Leleakuhonua 242
  - LH Weston 279
  - Lifetime arcs 140
  - Light
    - screen color 237
  - Light/Dark theme
    - synch with computer's settings 274
  - Lilith 242, 279
  - Lilith\* 187
  - Lines
    - settings for aspect 253
    - wheel settings 253
  - Lines (on Asto Locality map)
    - aspect 196
    - culminating/anti-culminating/rising/setting 196
    - eclipse 196
    - ecliptic 196
    - equator 196
    - geodetic offset (0 Ar at Greenwich) 196
    - local space 196
    - MC/IC, ASC /DESC 196
    - parans 196, 202
    - planet/angle 196
    - signs on MC and/or ASC 196
    - tropics 196
  - Listing
    - dynamic 156
    - ephemeris 181
  - Listings
    - cannot print 128
  - Lists
    - arabic lots 147
    - midpoints 144
    - points 138
  - LMT 279
  - Local Apparent Time 279
  - Local Mean Time 279
  - Local Space
    - lines 196
    - wheel/chart 196
  - Location 237
    - quick selection 19
  - Lockwood
    - Johannes 186
  - Longitude 111
    - for a point 181
    - of point 138
  - Lots
    - displaying 242
    - in astro sheets 147
  - Lucifer 242
  - Lunar mansions 141, 226
  - Lunar Node
    - type 262
  - Lunar Phase
    - finding 29
    - progressed (astro sheet) 140
    - return 29, 32
  - Lunar phases
    - progressed 140
  - Lunar Return 29, 32
    - interpretations 186
  - Lunar Return Report 217

## Lunations

in a dynamic method 265

**- M -**

## Mac

background color 274

MacOS version 279

## Main Screen

chart details area 10

chart selection options 10

display controls 10

menu 10

selected charts mode 10

selected charts pane 10

selection panel 10

toolbar 10

viewing area 10

Makemake 242, 245

## Manage

pinned sheets and windows 152

## Manager

Pinned Astro Sheets 152

## Map

see Astro Locality, Lines, Relocation 196

Mars Return 32

Martha Lang Westcott 145

Martha Lang-Westcott's asteroids 145

Max Eclipse 179

## Medieval

aspect set 247

## Menu 10

Astro Gold 15, 265

Charts 17, 128

Help 15

View 120, 134

Mercury Return 32

Meridian 263

## Midpoint 97

astro sheet - list 144

astro sheet - trees 144

displaying 239, 242

finding in astro sheet 136

for an opposition 101

interpretations 186

modulus setting 253

orb used 253

## Midpoints

interpretations 192

Mimimized Sheets 152

Minerva 242

## Minor

aspects 247

## Minor bodies 245

aspects within chart 145

available in extra points to display 242

displaying in main points available 239

downloading additional (asteroids/centaurs & dwarves) 145

extending calculation range 145

## Minor Body

available in extra points to display 242

displaying in main points available 239

Mirror image 132

Modes, Modalities 138

## Modulus

in graphic ephemeris 169

## Moieties

aspect type 247

## Monochrome 237

charts 237

display 237

print 237

Morinus 263

## Motion

direct 257

of planet/point 138

retrograde 257

stationary 257

## Mouse

right-click alternative 90

Multi chart 40

interpretations 186

Multiple windows 157

## Mundane

transits 156

Muse Asteroids 145

Mutual Reception 215

include or mot 261

**- N -**

## Natal

interpretations 186

## Negative

chart search condition 75

Nemesis 242

Neptune Return 32

Nessus 242

## New

computer 278

natal or transits chart 20

## New line

- New line
    - in interpretations 195
  - Node
    - lunar type 262
  - Node on the 1st house cusp 261
  - Nodes (planetary)
    - aspects 149
    - list 149
  - North Node Return 32
  - Now 116
  - NS 19
- O -**
- Opening
    - astro sheets 135
    - chart file 28
    - charts 26
    - saved charts dialog 58
    - wheel editor 226
  - Ops 242
  - Options
    - for viewing screen 120
  - Orbital Information 149
  - Orbs
    - definition 161
    - in dynamic jobs 273
    - in relocation reports 206
    - transit listing 273
    - viewing/changing 247
  - Orcus 242
  - OS 19
  - Outer Chart 39
- P -**
- Pallas Return 32
  - Pan 242
  - Panacea 242
  - Pandora 242
  - Parallax Moon
    - on or off 261
  - Parans 202
    - stars 148
  - Part of Fortune
    - type 261
  - Parts 147
  - PDF
    - export dynamic events 162
  - PDF file
    - astro locality map 196
    - create mirror image 132
    - creating 128
    - for an ephemeris listing 181
    - from professional report 217
    - printing/saving full content of scrolling lists 136
    - save as 147
    - saving as 129
  - Peregrine 215
  - Persephone 242
  - Pet Report 217
  - Phoulus 242
  - Pin
    - astro sheets 152
    - charts 152
    - wheel, dial or grid 88
  - Pinned
    - Astro Sheets Manager 153
  - Pinned Astro Sheets Manager 152
  - Place
    - quick selection 19
    - search for 22
    - use state abbreviation 22
  - Placidus 263
  - Planet
    - declination 111
    - direct 257
    - hypothetical 279
    - latitude 111
    - longitude 111
    - retrograde 257
    - return chart 32
    - right ascension 111
    - searching for returns 123
    - stationary 257
  - Planet/Angle lines 196
  - Planetary Directions 196
  - Planetary Nodes / Apsides
    - displaying 242
  - Planetary Sect 141
  - Pluto Return 32
  - Point
    - altitude 138
    - aspected 246
    - azimuth 138
    - declination 111, 138, 155
    - detriment 141
    - displaying 239
    - exaltation 141
    - face 141
    - fall 141

## Point

- house 155
- interpretations are available for 186
- latitude 111, 138
- list 138
- longitude 111, 138, 155
- minor bodies & asteroids available in the extra points 242
- minor bodies & asteroids available in the main points 239
- right ascension 111, 138
- ruler 141
- search for transiting points reaching positions 123, 125
- sets 239
- term 141
- travel 138
- triplicity 141
- used in dynamic job 271

## Pointer

- changing for a multi chart dial 109

## Polarities 138, 139

## Pop-up 186

- additional info 134
- context menu for a chart 83

## Porphyry 263

## Portman 34

## Position

- of charts 41

## Positive

- chart search condition 75

## Predictive (Events) Report 217

## Predictive Report

- aspects used 225
- orbs used 225

## Preferences 237

- aspected point 246
- aspects 247
- calculations 261
- displayed points 239
- dynamic listing 265
- home location 237
- screen light-dark settings 274
- wheels 253

## Prime Meridian 214

## Printing

- an ephemeris listing 181
- astro locality map 128, 196
- astro sheets 128, 135
- chart 128
- dial 128
- dialog window 130

- dynamic listing 128
- graphic ephemeris 128
- grid 128
- mirror image 132
- PDFs with the full content of scrolling lists 136
- professional report 128
- selecting the printer 128
- the viewing area 128

## Profecions 142

## Professional Reports

- compliments 217
- predictive 225
- printing 128

## Progressions

- angle type 261
- day rate (Q1, Q2) 261
- displayed points 239
- graphically viewing 169
- in a dynamic method 265
- interpretations 186
- lunar phases 140
- over time 156
- progressed chart 29
- tropical or sidereal based 261
- updating 113

## Properties

- area in wheel editor 227

## Proportional

- houses 253

## Prosperpina 242

## Psyche 242

## Ptolemy 253, 261

**- Q -**

## Q1, Q2 261

## quadriWheels 82, 90, 109, 253

## Quaoar 242, 245

## Quick Start 13

**- R -**

## Radix 156

## Radix chart 269

## Raman 261

## Recently used charts 26

## Regiomontanus 263

## Relationship

- biWheel 82, 90, 109
- chart 33

- Relationship
    - interpretations 186
    - synastry grid 82, 109
  - Relationship Report 217
  - Relocated Chart 35
  - Relocation
    - animating 196
    - in astro locality map 196
    - orbs used 206
    - report 196
  - Report
    - astro sheets 135
    - dashboard info 135
    - directions 156
    - dynamic - technical details 271
    - dynamic events 156
    - listings 155
    - midpoints 192
    - professional 217
    - progressions 156
    - relationship 192
    - relocation 196
    - relocation - orbs used 206
    - Time Graph format 156
    - transits 156
  - Requirements 279
  - Resizing
    - the Astro Gold screen 10
  - Retrograde
    - add symbol to wheel design 235
    - motion in dynamic jobs 271
    - planets 257
    - point/planet 138
    - symbol in charts 253
  - Return
    - point 39
  - Return chart 29
  - Returns
    - creating a return chart 32
    - interpretations 186
    - lunar phase 32
    - searching for 125
    - searching for planetary 123
    - using event search to find 122
  - Right Ascension
    - for a point 181
    - for chart point 111
    - of point in astro sheet 138
  - Rings
    - area in wheel editor 227
    - wheel - auto coloring the rings 259
  - Ruler
    - of point 141
  - Rulers 226
  - Rulership 215
  - Rulerships
    - changing while viewing a chart 82, 90, 109
  - Rules
    - essential dignities 215
- S -**
- Salacia 242
  - Sappho 242
  - Saturn Return 32
  - Save
    - as a PDF file 147
    - mirror image 132
    - to a PDF file 129
    - wheel design 236
  - Saving
    - astro locality map 196
    - charts 24
    - graphics file 135
    - saved charts dialog 58
  - Scoring
    - elements, modes & polarities 151
    - essential dignities 215
  - Screen
    - copy to clipboard 13
    - resizing 10
  - Screen color 237
  - Search
    - for chart; creating astro detail conditions 72
    - for chart; creating chart detail conditions 69
    - for charts 62, 65
    - for charts - sorting/saving/opening found charts 80
    - for charts; positive & negative conditions 75
    - for events - extended 125
    - for events - simple 123
  - Sect 215
  - Sedna 245
  - Select Charts
    - count 19
    - dragging charts into a new order 41
  - Selected Charts
    - buttons 10
    - mode 10, 120
    - pane 10, 39
    - pane - removing charts 18
  - Selected Charts pane
    - quickly swapping chart positions 277
  - Selecting

- Selecting
  - options for charts 19
  - printer 128
  - the set of aspects to use 251
- Selecting Charts
  - select charts mode 19
- Selection Panel 10, 13, 19, 120
  - select charts mode 19
- Sepharial 214
- Set
  - of aspects 247
  - of aspects to use 251
  - of colors for planets, sign glyphs, sign fills, aspects 253
- Settings 237
  - changing while viewing a chart 82, 109
  - dynamic listings & time graphs 265
  - home location 237
  - houses 261
  - set light or dark theme 274
  - stationary motion 257
  - transferring between Mac computers 278
  - zodiac 261
- Seven Hermetic lots 147
- SgnRuler 84
- Share
  - astro locality map 196
  - astro sheets 135
  - dynamic events 162
  - Saving PDFs with the full content of scrolling lists 136
- Sheets
  - pinned sheets 152
- Shortcut Keys 277
- Sidereal
  - based progressions 261
- Sidereal Time
  - for a point 181
- Sign
  - decans (faces) 226
  - faces (decans) 226
  - ingress in dynamic jobs 271
  - lunar mansions 226
  - modes 139
  - rulers 226
  - terms 226
  - triplicities 226
- Sign Ruler
  - changing type used 84
- Siva 242
- Snapshot
  - of current transits to natal 82, 109
- Solar Arc Directions 31
  - graphically viewing 169
- Solar Fire 47
  - files 44
  - import/export chart files using iCloud Drive 51
- Solar Return 29, 32
  - interpretations 186
- Solar Sign
  - Alcabitius 263
  - ASC in 1st 263
  - Bhava 263
  - EP on 1st house cusp 263
  - Jupiter on 1st house cusp 263
  - Mars on 1st house cusp 263
  - MC on 10th house cusp 263
  - Mercury on 1st house cusp 263
  - Moon on 1st house cusp 263
  - Neptune on 1st house cusp 263
  - Node on 1st house cusp 263
  - PF on 1st house cusp 263
  - Pluto on 1st house cusp 263
  - Saturn on 1st house cusp 263
  - Sun on 1st house cusp 263
  - Uranus on 1st house cusp 263
  - Venus on 1st house cusp 263
  - Vertex on 7th house cusp 263
  - Whole Sign 263
- Sorting
  - astro sheet list items 136
  - the dynamic jobs list 265
- South Node Return 32
- Spirit
  - part/lot 242
- Star
  - aspects 148
  - Benhenian 148
  - brightest 148
  - displaying 242
  - ecliptic 148
  - Hermes 148
  - in displayed points 239
  - list 148
  - parans 148
- Stars
  - conjunctions to displayed points 149
- Stationary
  - planets 257
- Stations
  - in dynamic jobs 271
  - search for times 123, 125
- Stein

- Stein  
Zane 245
- Step  
calendar based 117  
fixed time interval based 117  
increments 117  
through time 117
- Storing  
charts on iCloud 44
- Subsidiary Chart 29  
automated creation 35
- Sun sign wheels 140
- Support 276
- SVP 0°00' 261
- Swap chart position 41
- Swiss Ephemeris 279
- Symbols  
of the extra points available (minor bodies & asteroids) 242  
of the main chart points available 239
- Synastry 150  
grid 82, 109  
interpretations 186
- System  
Astro Gold system files 277
- Syzygys 138
- T -**
- Tabulations/Lists 135
- Temperament: Astrology's Forgotten Key (2005) 147
- Term 141  
Egyptian 253  
meaning 261  
Ptolemy 253  
type in calculations 261
- Terms 226
- The Big Three Astrology Report 217
- Theme  
light/dark 274
- Time  
step interval 117
- Time Graph  
deleting events or blank divider lines 160  
resizing the window 160  
showing dates on the time graph 160  
showing exact events (optionally plus entering and leaving) 160
- Time Graphs 265
- TimeLord  
activation in the chart 142  
techniques 142
- Timespan  
for Dynamic events 265
- Timezone 24
- Toolbar 10
- Topocentric 263
- Trackpad 90
- Transfer  
charts and settings between Mac computers 278
- Transits 19  
by declination 111  
continuous on-screen updating 120  
current 116  
displayed points 239  
graphically viewing 169  
in a dynamic method 265  
interpretations 186  
lunar 156  
over time 156  
super quick snapshot of all 82, 109  
updating 113  
viewing in chart explorer 111
- Transneptunian (hypothetical) planets  
displayed 239
- Travel  
of point 138
- Trees  
midpoint 144
- Triplicities 226
- Triplicity 141, 215  
type 261
- triWheels 82, 90, 109, 253
- Tropical  
based progressions 261
- True positions 261
- Tutorial  
casting a new chart 13  
creating a graphic ephemeris 177
- Type  
aspect 247  
aspects in dynamic listings 265  
of chart 40
- U -**
- Urania 242
- Uranus Return 32
- User data  
quickly clearing displayed 15, 277
- UshaShashi 261
- Using

Using  
the selection panel 19

## - V -

Varuna 242, 245

Vedic D12 Dwadashamsha 34

Venus Return 32

Version 279

MacOS 279

Vesta Return 32

View

current mundane positions 120

dial 120

grid 120

menu 120, 134

multiple charts viewable onscreen at once  
152

options 120

wheel 120

Viewing Area 10

change displayed points 118

display controls 89

printing 128

Vocation Astrology Report 217

Vulcan 279

Vulcano 242

## - W -

Walter Gorn 214

Weightings

for elements, modes & polarities 151

Wheel

auto coloring the rings 259

biWheel 82, 90, 109

biWheel (in astro sheet) 150

changing options in situ 82

colors 253

dual (in astro sheet) 150

four 151

general settings 253

quadriWheel 82, 90, 109

quadriWheel (in astro sheet) 151

settings for bi/tri/quadri 253

showing terms, rulers etc 253

styles 253

three 150

triWheel 82, 90, 109

triWheel (in astro sheet) 150

uniWheel 82, 90, 109

view 120

Wheel Design Editor

add retrograde symbol 235

circles - highlighting 228

circles - make larger or smaller 228

circles - relative radius 228

copying a wheel design 227

copying wheels 236

deleting wheels 236

opening 226

opening a wheel design 227

properties area 228

reversing all changes to a built-in wheel design  
226

rings - adding, removing, position, resizing  
228

rings - properties 228

rings area 228

saving wheels 236

undoing changes 228

wheel design type 227

Wheel Style

changing while viewing a chart 82, 90, 109

Wheels

for sun signs 140

uni 138

Window

resizing 10

Windows

quickly closing topmost 277

Wuhan 242

## - Z -

Zane B. Stein's Centaurs and Dwarves 145

Zane Stein 145, 245

Zero Aries 263

Zodiac

for charts 261

Zodiacal

astro map calculation 196

Zodiacal Releasings 142

Zoom

in astro locality map 196

